
This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

GoogleTM books

<https://books.google.com>



NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 07592204 1

Handwritten signature: *W. D. Smith*

5/3/12 7/2
PRINCIPIA LATINA.—Part I

A

FIRST LATIN COURSE

COMPREHENDING

**GRAMMAR, DELECTUS, AND EXERCISE-BOOK,
WITH VOCABULARIES.**

For the Use of the Lower Forms in Public and Private Schools.

1813-1218
By WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.,

EDITOR OF THE CLASSICAL AND LATIN DICTIONARIES.

TWENTIETH EDITION, THOROUGHLY REVISED,

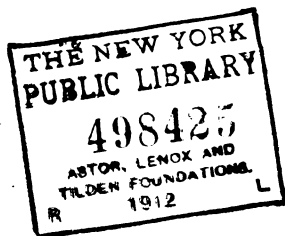
**WITH THE CASES ARRANGED BOTH AS IN THE ORDINARY GRAMMARS
AND AS IN THE PUBLIC SCHOOL PRIMER.**

Toronto:

CANADA PUBLISHING COMPANY

(LIMITED).

1879.



Entered according to the Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and seventy-six, by JAMES CAMPBELL & SON, in the office of the Minister of Agriculture.

JOHN WILSON
J. WILSON
J. WILSON

NOTICE TO THE EIGHTEENTH EDITION.

To meet the requirements of all Schools, the Cases of the Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns, are arranged in this Edition both as in the ordinary Grammars and as in the Public School Latin Primer, together with the corresponding Exercises. The first thirty-six pages at the beginning of the book are therefore repeated, the only difference between them being the arrangement of the Cases. In this way the work can be used with equal advantage by those who prefer either the old or the modern arrangement.

The 'Smaller Latin Grammar' retains the ordinary arrangement of the Cases.

W. S.

P R E F A C E.

THE following work is the first of a short series which I have undertaken with the view of facilitating the study of the Latin language. It is the result of many years' practical teaching, and seeks to combine the advantages of the older and more modern methods of instruction. While boys are sometimes compelled to commit to memory all the grammatical forms and syntactical rules without having their knowledge tested by any practical application in the construction of sentences, so that they frequently forget the former part of the Grammar by the time they have finished the latter, they are in other cases burdened by a large number of explanations and cautions, and by complicated rules for the formation of cases and other inflectional forms. The latter error is almost as grave as the former in the case of young boys, as they are thus taught analytically what ought to be first learned synthetically.

The main object of this work is to enable a beginner to fix the Declensions and Conjugations thoroughly in his memory, to learn their usage by constructing simple sentences as soon as he commences the study of the language, and to accumulate gradually a stock of useful words. It is divided into two parts:—

I. The first part contains the Grammatical forms, with exercises upon all the inflections, in which the simple rules of syntax are introduced, as they are required for the formation of sentences.

II. The second part contains an explanation of some of the more important idioms of the language, such as the construction of the Accusative Case and the Infinitive Mood, of the Ablative Absolute, of the Gerund and Gerundive, &c., exemplified by Exercises upon each construction. The Vocabularies to both parts are printed at the end of the second, and Alphabetical Indices of the Latin and English words in the Vocabularies are appended to them.

The work thus contains Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise-book, with Vocabularies, and consequently presents in one book all that the pupil will require for some time in his study of the language. It is confidently believed that a boy who has gone carefully through the work will have acquired a sound knowledge of the chief grammatical forms, and of the most important syntactical rules, and will thus be prepared to enter upon the systematic study of a larger Grammar with advantage and profit.

The last edition was thoroughly revised, and various improvements were introduced. The rules for the Pronunciation of Latin were drawn up by the Rev. Dr. Abbott, Head Master of the City of London School. In the revision I was indebted for much valuable assistance to Mr. T. D. Hall, the joint-author with me of the 'Student's Latin Grammar,' and of the 'English-Latin Dictionary.'

W. S.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, NUMERALS, AND PRONOUNS.

	PAGE
The Cases as arranged in the ordinary Grammars, with the corresponding Exercises	1-36
The Cases as arranged in the Public School Primer, with the corresponding Exercises	1-36
I. THE ALPHABET—PARTS OF SPEECH	1
II. PRONUNCIATION	2
III. SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS	3
IV. THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION	3
V. THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION	5
VI. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS	7
VII. THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION	11
VIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION	18
IX. THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION	20
X. THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION	21, 22
XI. SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS	22
XII. SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES	23, 24
XIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	24
XIV. THE NUMERALS	26, 27
XV. THE VERB SUM	29
XVI. COMPOUNDS OF SUM	31
XVII. THE PRONOUNS	32

VERBS.

XVIII. THE VERB	37
XIX. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE	38
XX. SECOND OR E	40
XXI. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U	42
XXII. FOURTH OR I	44
EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE	46
XXIII. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE	54
XXIV. SECOND OR E	56
XXV. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U	58

	PAGE
XXVI. FOURTH OR I	60
EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE	62
XXVII. THIRD CONJUGATION (WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES)	66
XXVIII. DEPONENT VERBS	68
XXIX. PREPOSITIONS	72
XXX. ADVERBS	74
XXXI. IRREGULAR VERBS :	
1. POSSUM	76
2. VOLO	77
3. NOLO	77
4. MALO	77
5. FERRO	80
6. EO	82
7. FIO	84
8. NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS	85
XXXII. IMPERSONAL VERBS	86

PART II.

SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

XXXIII. THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE COMPARATIVE	88
XXXIV. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	89
XXXV. THE ACCUSATIVE EXPRESSING DURATION OR EX- TENT OF TIME, DISTANCE, AND DIMENSION	90
XXXVI. CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS	91
XXXVII. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AND THE INFINITIVE	92
XXXVIII. DIRECT QUESTIONS	94
XXXIX. INDIRECT QUESTIONS	95
XL. ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	97
XLI. USE OF THE SUPINES	100
XLII. USE OF THE GERUND	100
XLIII. USE OF THE GERUNDIVE	101
A SHORT SYNTAX	104
Appendix—A. GREEK NOUNS	109
B. THE GENDERS OF NOUNS	110
C. PERFECTS AND SUPINES	112
D. DEFECTIVE VERBS	123
Vocabularies	125
INDEX I.—LATIN WORDS	144
INDEX II.—ENGLISH WORDS	156

PART I

GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

THE CASES ARRANGED AS IN THE ORDINARY GRAMMARS.

I.—THE ALPHABET. PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. *Alphabet*.—The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,

Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

The letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The remaining letters are Consonants.

The Diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use, and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

The diphthongs *ae, oe*, are pronounced as *ā*.

A Long Syllable has the mark (ˉ) over the vowel. A Short Syllable has the mark (˘) over the vowel.

2. *Parts of Speech*.—There are eight parts of speech in the Latin language.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, or Noun. | 3. Pronoun. | 6. Preposition. |
| 2. Adjective. | 4. Verb. | 7. Conjunction. |
| | 5. Adverb. | 8. Interjection. |

There is no article in the Latin language: hence the Latin *mensā* means not only *table*, but also *a table* and *the table*.

II.—PRONUNCIATION.

The letters in Latin were probably pronounced as follows:—

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

Latin	ā	=	English	<i>a</i> in <i>father</i> .
„	ǣ	=	„	<i>first a</i> in <i>away</i> , or <i>a</i> in <i>villa</i> .
„	ē	=	„	<i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i> .
„	æ	=	„	<i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i> .
„	œ	=	„	<i>ai</i> in <i>pain</i> .
„	ě	=	„	<i>e</i> in <i>men</i> .
„	ī	=	„	<i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> .
„	î	=	„	<i>i</i> in <i>pity</i> .
„	ō	=	„	<i>o</i> in <i>glory</i> .
„	ö	=	„	<i>o</i> in <i>top</i> .
„	ū	=	„	<i>u</i> in <i>rule</i> .
„	ũ	=	„	<i>u</i> in <i>full</i> .
„	au	=	„	<i>ow</i> in <i>power</i> .
„	eu	=	„	{ Latin <i>ě</i> followed quickly by Latin <i>ũ</i> (differs little from present pronunciation).
„	ei	=	„	
				{ Latin <i>ě</i> followed quickly by Latin <i>i</i> (differs little from <i>ai</i> in <i>plain</i>).

CONSONANTS.

Latin	<i>c, ch</i>	=	English	<i>k</i> .
„	<i>g</i>	=	„	<i>g</i> in <i>get</i> .
„	<i>s</i>	=	„	<i>s</i> in <i>sin</i> .
„	<i>t</i> (<i>ratio</i>)	=	{	<i>t</i> in <i>cat</i> , not <i>sh</i> , as in <i>nation</i> .
„	<i>j</i>	=	„	<i>y</i> in <i>yard</i> .
„	<i>v</i>	=	„	<i>v</i> .
„	<i>z, ph, th</i>	=	„	<i>z, ph, th</i> .

Latin *s* between two vowels = (sometimes) English *s* in *rose*, e.g. 'rosa.'

III.—SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

Nouns are declined by *Number* and *Case*.

There are two Numbers: *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are six Cases: *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, *Ablative*.

There are three Genders: *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

Nouns which may be either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*.

There are five Declensions, distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen. Sing.	ae	i	is	ūs	ēi
Gen. Plur.	Ā-rum	Ō-rum	{ -um ī-um }	Ū-um	Ē-rum

The *Stem* is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away.

The *Stems* of Nouns can be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in —

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
A	O	consonant or I	U	E

IV.—THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the First Declension ends in *ā*.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Mens-ā (<i>fem.</i>) a table	Mens-ae, tables
Gen.	Mens-ae, of a table	Mens-Ārum, of tables
Dat.	Mens-ae, to or for a table	Mens-is, to or for tables
Acc.	Mens-am, a table	Mens-ās, tables
Voc.	Mens-ā, O table	Mens-ae, O tables
Abl.	Mens-ā, by, with, or from a table.	Mens-is, by, with, or from tables.

NOTE.—*Filā*, a daughter; *dēā*, a goddess; *ēquā*, a mare; *āsinā*, a she-ass; and a few others, make the Dative and Ablative Plural in *ābūs*: *filābūs*, *dēābūs*, *ēquābūs*, *āsinābūs*, etc.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: as, *nautā*, a sailor.

The Vocabularies begin on p. 125.

RULE 1.—The Nominative Case denotes the SUBJECT. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in number and person : as, *puellā currīt, the girl runs ; puellae currunt, the girls run.*

RULE 2.—The Accusative Case denotes the OBJECT. Transitive verbs govern an Accusative case : as, *āquīlā ālās hābēt, the eagle has wings.* NOTE.—In Latin the verb is put last and the Accusative case before it.

Singular, 3 pers.

Currit, (*he, she, it*) runs.

Hābēt, (*he, she, it*) has.

Plural, 3 pers.

Currunt, (*they*) run.

Hābent, (*they*) have.

EXERCISE I.

1. *Filia currit.* 2. *Filiae currunt.* 3. *Regina coronam habet.*
4. *Puella coronam habet.* 5. *Filia pecuniam habet.* 6. *Femina pecuniam habet.* 7. *Roma portas habet.* 8. *Coloniae portas habent.*
9. *Puellae rosas habent.* 10. *Feminae rosas habent.* 11. *Columbae alas habent.* 12. *Insulae oras habent.*

1. The woman runs. 2. The women run. 3. The dove has wings. 4. The eagles have wings. 5. The colony has gates. 6. The island has coasts. 7. The girls have money. 8. The women have money. 9. The colony has women. 10. The island has colonies. 11. The woman has a crown. 12. The islands have roses.

RULE 3.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by the verb “To be,” they are put in the same case : as, *Britanniā est insulā, Britain is an island.* Use the Nominative case after the verb “To be.”

RULE 4.—The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive case when the one is dependent upon the other : as, *Britanniā est insulā Eurōpae, Britain is an island of Europe.*

Est, (*he*) is.

Sunt, (*they*) are.

EXERCISE II.

1. *Sicilia est insula.* 2. *Sicilia est insula Europae.* 3. *Roma est regina Italiae.* 4. *Incolae Italiae sunt poetae.* 5. *Incolae insularum sunt nautae.* 6. *Incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae.* 7. *Insula est patria nautarum.* 8. *Graccia est patria poetarum.* 9. *Amicitia est gloria vitae.* 10. *Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.*

1. Britain is the queen of islands. 2. Britain is the native-land of sailors. 3. Italy is the native-land of poets. 4. The inhabitants of Britain are sailors. 5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors. 6. The inhabitants of Gaul are husbandmen. 7. Britain is the native-land of glory. 8. Friendship is the crown of life. 9. The battle is the cause of glory. 10. The enmity of the sailors is the cause of the battle.

V.—THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension ends in ūs and ĕr, and of Neuter Nouns in um.

A. Masculine.

Sing.		1.	Plur.
Nom.	Dŏmĭn-ūs, a lord	Dŏmĭn-ĭ,	lords
Gen.	Dŏmĭn-ĭ, of a lord	Dŏmĭn-ŏrum,	of lords
Dat.	Dŏmĭn-ŏ, to or for a lord	Dŏmĭn-is,	to or for lords
Acc.	Dŏmĭn-um, a lord	Dŏmĭn-ŏs,	lords
Voc.	Dŏmĭn-ĕ, O lord	Dŏmĭn-ĭ,	O lords
Abl.	Dŏmĭn-ŏ, by, with, or from a lord.	Dŏmĭn-is,	by, with, or from lords.
2.			
Nom.	Măgistrĕr, a master	Măgistr-ĭ,	masters
Gen.	Măgistr-ĭ, of a master	Măgistr-ŏrum,	of masters
Dat.	Măgistr-ŏ, to or for a master	Măgistr-is,	to or for masters
Acc.	Măgistr-um, a master	Măgistr-ŏs,	masters
Voc.	Măgistrĕr, O master	Măgistr-ĭ,	O masters
Abl.	Măgistr-ŏ, by, with, or from a master.	Măgistr-is,	by, with, or from masters.
3.			
Nom.	Puĕr, a boy	Puĕr-ĭ,	boys
Gen.	Puĕr-ĭ, of a boy	Puĕr-ŏrum,	of boys
Dat.	Puĕr-ŏ, to or for a boy	Puĕr-is,	to or for boys
Acc.	Puĕr-um, a boy	Puĕr-ŏs,	boys
Voc.	Puĕr, O boy	Puĕr-ĭ,	O boys
Abl.	Puĕr-ŏ, by, with, or from a boy.	Puĕr-is,	by, with, or from boys.

NOTE.—Proper Names in ūs make ĭ in the Vocative, as, Mercūrĭūs, *Mercury*, Voc. Mercūrĭ. Also the Vocative Singular of filiūs, *a son*, is fili, and of genĭiūs, *a guardian deity*, is genĭ.

There is one Noun of the Second Declension ending in ĭr, namely, vĭr, *a man* (as distinguished from *a woman*). It is declined like puĕr :

Sing.		4.	Plur.
Nom.	Vĭr, a man,	Vĭr-ĭ,	men
Gen.	Vĭr-ĭ, of a man	Vĭr-ŏrum,	of men
Dat.	Vĭr-ŏ, to or for a man	Vĭr-is,	to or for men
Acc.	Vĭr-um, a man	Vĭr-ŏs,	men
Voc.	Vĭr, O man	Vĭr-ĭ,	O men
Abl.	Vĭr-ŏ, by, with, or from a man.	Vĭr-is,	by, with, or from men.

B. Neuter.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Regn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Regn-ā,	<i>kingdoms</i>
Gen.	Regn-i, <i>of a kingdom</i>	Regn-ōrum,	<i>of kingdoms</i>
Dat.	Regn-ō, <i>to or for a kingdom</i>	Regn-is,	<i>to or for kingdoms</i>
Acc.	Regn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Regn-ā,	<i>kingdoms</i>
Voc.	Regn-um, <i>O kingdom</i>	Regn-ā,	<i>O kingdoms</i>
Abl.	Regn-ō, <i>by, with, or from a kingdom.</i>	Regn-is,	<i>by, with, or from kingdoms.</i>

NOTE.—The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of all Neuter Nouns are the same.

GENDER.—Most Nouns in ūs are Masculine, but names of trees are Feminine; as, mālūs, *an apple-tree*.

Three Nouns of the Second Declension ending in ūs are Neuter: virūs, *poison*; vulgūs, *the multitude*; pēlāgūs, *the (open) sea*. They are used only in the Singular. (N.B. Vulgus is sometimes Masculine.)

ēt, and.

EXERCISE III.

Masculine Nouns in ūs.

1. Filius currit. 2. Servi currunt. 3. Dominus servos habet. 4. Filius domini servos habet. 5. Dominus servos et equos habet. 6. Filii dominorum equos et tauros habent. 7. Avus servos et equos habet. 8. Filius amici hortum habet. 9. Filii inimicorum gladios habent. 10. Rhodanus est fluvius Galliae. 11. Rhodanus et Rhenus sunt fluvii Galliae. 12. Hortus rosas habet.

1. The slave runs. 2. The sons run. 3. The grandfather has a slave. 4. The son of the grandfather has slaves. 5. The sons of the grandfather have slaves. 6. The sons of the lords are sailors. 7. The sons of the slaves are husbandmen. 8. The lord has slaves and horses. 9. The Rhone and the Rhine are rivers of Europe. 10. The friends of the grandfather are poets. 11. The enemies of the lord have swords. 12. The rivers of the island have banks.

RULE 5.—The Dative Case indicates the person who gains or receives anything: as, māgister cōlumbam pūērō dāt, *the master gives a dove to the boy*.

Dāt, (*he, she, it*) gives.

Dant, (*they*) give.

EXERCISE IV.

Masculine Nouns in ēr.

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Magister librum puero dat. 3. Filius libros habet. 4. Dominus servos et ministros habet. 5. Dominus agrum ministro dat. 6. Socer agros et ministros habet. 7. Socer agrum genero dat. 8. Magistri libros pueris dant. 9. Gener servum puero dat. 10. Puer librum ministro dat.

1. The boys have books. 2. The lord gives a field to the boys.

3. The fathers-in-law and the sons-in-law have fields. 4. The father-in-law gives servants to the son-in-law. 5. The friends have books. 6. The enemies have servants and fields. 7. The masters give gardens to the boys. 8. The master gives doves to the boys. 9. The grandfather gives fields to the master. 10. The fathers-in-law give fields and bulls to the sons-in-law.

EXERCISE V.

Neuter Nouns.

1. Amici sunt donum coeli. 2. Amicitia est donum Dei. 3. Dona avi sunt praemia diligentiae. 4. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla. 5. Magister argentum puero dat. 6. Discipuli sunt gaudium magistrorum. 7. Bellum est causa morborum. 8. Oppidum muros et portas habet. 9. Templum sunt gloria Graeciae. 10. Romani gladios et scuta habent.

1. Friends are the gift of God. 2. The boys and girls are the joy of the grandfather. 3. The grandfather gives gold and silver to the boys. 4. Greece and Sicily have temples. 5. The temples of Greece have gifts. 6. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples. 7. The metals are the cause of war. 8. The queen has lands and towns. 9. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants. 10. The lord gives shields and swords to the servants.

VI.—ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Adjectives in *ūs, ā, um, or ĕr, (ē)rā, (ē)rum*, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Nouns of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Nouns of the First Declension: *as, bōnūs, bōnā, bōnum, good; nīgēr, nigrā, nigrum, black; tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērum, tender.*

	Sing.			1.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	Bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā	
Gen.	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ī	Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum	
Dat.	Bōn-ō	bōn-ae	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs	
Acc.	Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um	Bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā	
Voc.	Bōn-ē	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā	
Abl.	Bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs	

	Sing.			2.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	Nīg-ēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā	
Gen.	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum	
Dat.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	
Acc.	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ā	
Voc.	Nīg-ēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā	
Abl.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	

	Sing.			3.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-I	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ā	
Gen.	Tēnēr-I	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-I	Tēnēr-ōrum	tēnēr-ārum	tēnēr-ōrum	
Dat.	Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ō	Tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	
Acc.	Tēnēr-um	tēnēr-am	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-ōs	tēnēr-ās	tēnēr-ā	
Voc.	Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-I	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ā	
Abl.	Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-ō	Tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	

4.

FEMININE ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH FEMININE NOUN, BOTH OF FIRST DECLENSION.

	Sing.	
Nom.	Parvā mensā,	<i>a small table</i>
Gen.	Parvae mensae,	<i>of a small table</i>
Dat.	Parvae mensae,	<i>to or for a small table</i>
Acc.	Parvam mensam,	<i>a small table</i>
Voc.	Parvā mensā,	<i>O small table</i>
Abl.	Parvā mensā,	<i>by, with, or from a small table.</i>
	Plur.	
Nom.	Parvae mensae,	<i>small tables</i>
Gen.	Parvarum mensarum,	<i>of small tables</i>
Dat.	Parvis mensis,	<i>to or for small tables</i>
Acc.	Parvas mensas,	<i>small tables</i>
Voc.	Parvae mensae,	<i>O small tables</i>
Abl.	Parvis mensis,	<i>by, with or from small tables.</i>

5.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVES DECLINED ALONG WITH MASCULINE NOUNS, BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

	Sing.	
Nom.	Bōnūs dōmīnūs,	<i>a good lord</i>
Gen.	Bōnī dōmīnī,	<i>of a good lord</i>
Dat.	Bōnō dōmīnō,	<i>to or for a good lord</i>
Acc.	Bōnum dōmīnum,	<i>a good lord</i>
Voc.	Bōnē dōmīnē,	<i>O good lord</i>
Abl.	Bōnō dōmīnō,	<i>by, with, or from a good lord</i>
	Plur.	
Nom.	Bōnī dōmīnī,	<i>good lords</i>
Gen.	Bōnōrum dōmīnōrum,	<i>of good lords</i>
Dat.	Bōnīs dōmīnīs,	<i>to or for good lords</i>
Acc.	Bōnōs dōmīnōs,	<i>good lords</i>
Voc.	Bōnī dōmīnī,	<i>O good lords</i>
Abl.	Bōnīs dōmīnīs,	<i>by, with, or from good lords</i>

(B.)

	Sing.	
Nom.	Bōnūs pŭēr,	<i>a good boy</i>
Gen.	Bōnī pŭērī,	<i>of a good boy</i>
Dat.	Bōnō pŭērō,	<i>to or for a good boy</i>
Acc.	Bōnum pŭērem,	<i>a good boy</i>
Voc.	Bōnē pŭēr,	<i>O good boy</i>
Abl.	Bōnō pŭērō,	<i>by, with, or from a good boy.</i>

<i>Nom.</i>	Bōnī pūērī,	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>good boys</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bōnōrum pūērōrum,		<i>of good boys</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bōnīs pūērīs,		<i>to or for good boys</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bōnōs pūērōs,		<i>good boys</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Bōnī pūērī,		<i>O good boys</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bōnīs pūērīs,		<i>by, with, or from good boys.</i>

6.

NEUTER ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH NEUTER NOUN,
BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

Sing.

<i>Nom.</i>	Magnum regnum,	<i>a great kingdom</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Magnī regnī,	<i>of a great kingdom</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Magnō regnō,	<i>to or for a great kingdom</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Magnum regnum,	<i>a great kingdom</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Magnum regnum,	<i>O great kingdom</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Magnō regnō,	<i>by, with, or from a great kingdom.</i>

Plur.

<i>Nom.</i>	Magnā regnā,	<i>great kingdoms</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Magnōrum regnōrum,	<i>of great kingdoms</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Magnīs regnīs,	<i>to or for great kingdoms</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Magnā regnā,	<i>great kingdoms</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Magnā regnā,	<i>O great kingdoms</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Magnīs regnīs,	<i>by, with, or from great kingdoms.</i>

(B.)

Sing. only.

<i>Nom.</i>	Magnum pēlāgūs,	<i>the great sea</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Magnī pēlāgī,	<i>of the great sea</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Magnō pēlāgō,	<i>to or for the great sea</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Magnum pēlāgūs,	<i>the great sea</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Magnum pēlāgūs,	<i>the great sea</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Magnō pēlāgō,	<i>by, with, or from the great sea.</i>

7.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVE OF SECOND DECLENSION DECLINED WITH
MASCULINE NOUN OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.

<i>Nom.</i>	Clārūs nautā,	<i>a famous sailor</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Clārī nautae,	<i>of a famous sailor</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Clārō nautae,	<i>to or for a famous sailor</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Clārūm nautam,	<i>a famous sailor</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Clārē nautā,	<i>O famous sailor</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Clārō nautā,	<i>by, with, or from a famous sailor.</i>

Plur.

<i>Nom.</i>	Clārī nautae,	<i>famous sailors</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Clārōrum nautārum,	<i>of famous sailors</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Clārīs nautīs,	<i>to or for famous sailors</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Clārōs nautās,	<i>famous sailors</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Clārī nautae,	<i>O famous sailors</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Clārīs nautīs,	<i>by, with, or from famous sailors.</i>

RULE 6.—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Note that the Adjective in Latin is sometimes placed after the Noun.

EXERCISE VI.

A.—1. Servus est timidus. 2. Columba est timida. 3. Gattidum est magnum. 4. Servi sunt mali. 5. Insulae sunt magnae. 6. Oppida sunt parva. 7. Muri sunt alti. 8. Puellae sunt bonae. 9. Horti sunt lati. 10. Alae sunt albae.

1. The sword is long. 2. The island is long. 3. The shields are long. 4. The slaves are timid. 5. The doves are timid. 6. The towns are great. 7. The temples are small. 8. The shields are wide. 9. The kingdom is great. 10. The friends are good.

B.—1. Columba albas alas habet. 2. Multae columbae albas alas habent. 3. Graecia multa templa habet. 4. Splendida templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 5. Bellicosa regina multas terras habet. 6. Oppidum magnum multas portas habet. 7. Magister librum bono puero dat. 8. Avus praemium bonae puellae dat. 9. Pericula nautarum sunt magna. 10. Dominus acutos gladios habet.

1. The queen has many islands. 2. The queen gives swords to the inhabitants. 3. Gaul has many towns. 4. The temples are great and splendid. 5. The daughters of the women are good. 6. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword. 7. The high banks have many roses. 8. The Rhone is a great and broad river. 9. The roses of the high banks are white. 10. The Rhine is a rapid river.

C.—1. Puer est aeger. 2. Puella est aegra. 3. Aurum templi est sacrum. 4. Regina est pulchra. 5. Filiae sunt tenerae. 6. Filii sunt miseri. 7. Morbus molestus est tenero filio. 8. Exemplum servi noxium puero est. 9. Praemia diligentiae sunt grata discipulis. 10. Magnus est numerus puerorum.

1. The pupils of the master are sick. 2. The master gives a book to the sick boy. 3. The black slaves are troublesome to the lord. 4. Great is the number of black slaves. 5. The splendid gifts of the temple are sacred. 6. Great is the diligence of the beautiful girl. 7. The diligence of the girl is pleasing to the grandfather. 8. The example of the slaves is injurious to the pupils. 9. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl. 10. The master gives rewards to the beautiful girl.

VII.—THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or *i*.

A. Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

1. Nouns the stems of which end in the labial (lip) letters *p*, *b*, *m*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Trăb-s (<i>f.</i>), <i>a beam</i>	Trăb-ēs,	beams
Gen.	Trăb-īs,	Trăb-um,	of beams
Dat.	Trăb-i,	Trăb-ībūs,	to or for beams
Acc.	Trăb-em,	Trăb-ēs,	beams
Voc.	Trăb-s,	Trăb-ēs,	O beams
Abl.	Trăb-ē,	Trăb-ībūs,	by, with, or from beams.

	2.	
Nom.	Prīncēp-s (<i>c.</i>), <i>a chief</i>	Prīncēp-ēs, chiefs
Gen.	Prīncēp-īs,	Prīncēp-um, of chiefs
Dat.	Prīncēp-i,	Prīncēp-ībūs, to or for chiefs
Acc.	Prīncēp-em,	Prīncēp-ēs, chiefs
Voc.	Prīncēp-s,	Prīncēp-ēs, O chiefs
Abl.	Prīncēp-ē,	Prīncēp-ībūs, by, with, or from chiefs.

	3.	
Nom.	Hīēm-s (<i>f.</i>), <i>winter</i>	Hīēm-ēs, winters
Gen.	Hīēm-īs,	Hīēm-um, of winters
Dat.	Hīēm-i,	Hīēm-ībūs, to or for winters
Acc.	Hīēm-em,	Hīēm-ēs, winters
Voc.	Hīēm-s,	Hīēm-ēs, O winters
Abl.	Hīēm-ē,	Hīēm-ībūs, by, with, or from winters.

2. Nouns the stems of which end in the guttural (throat) letters *c*, *g*. NOTE.—In the Nominative and Vocative Singular *cs*, *gs* are contracted into *x*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Dūx (<i>c.</i>), <i>a leader</i>	Dūc-ēs,	leaders
Gen.	Dūc-īs,	Dūc-um,	of leaders
Dat.	Dūc-i,	Dūc-ībūs,	to or for leaders
Acc.	Dūc-em,	Dūc-ēs,	leaders
Voc.	Dūx,	Dūc-ēs,	O leaders
Abl.	Dūc-ē,	Dūc-ībūs,	by, with, or from leaders.

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Lex (<i>f.</i>), <i>a law</i>	Lēg-ēs,	<i>laws</i>
Gen.	Lēg-is, <i>of a law</i>	Lēg-um,	<i>of laws</i>
Dat.	Lēg-i, <i>to or for a law</i>	Lēg-ibūs,	<i>to or for laws</i>
Acc.	Lēg-em, <i>a law</i>	Lēg-ēs,	<i>laws</i>
Voc.	Lex, <i>O law</i>	Lēg-ēs,	<i>O laws</i>
Abl.	Lēg-ē, <i>by, with, or from a law.</i>	Lēg-ibūs,	<i>by, with, or from laws.</i>

	3.	
Nom.	Jūdex (<i>c.</i>), <i>a judge</i>	Jūdic-ēs, <i>judges</i>
Gen.	Jūdic-is, <i>of a judge</i>	Jūdic-um, <i>of judges</i>
Dat.	Jūdic-i, <i>to or for a judge</i>	Jūdic-ibūs, <i>to or for judges</i>
Acc.	Jūdic-em, <i>a judge</i>	Jūdic-ēs, <i>judges</i>
Voc.	Jūdex, <i>O judge</i>	Jūdic-ēs, <i>O judges</i>
Abl.	Jūdic-ē, <i>by, with, or from a judge.</i>	Jūdic-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from judges.</i>

Ērāt, (*he, she, it*) *was.*Ērant, (*they*) *were.*

EXERCISE VII.

1. Trabes sunt longae. 2. Romulus Romanorum rex erat. 3. Pax regi jucunda erat. 4. Judices erant justī. 5. Duces erant benigni. 6. Leges Romanorum severae erant. 7. Reges arcēs firmas habent. 8. Arx urbis est firma. 9. Hiems agricolis molesta erat. 10. Oppida regis firma erant.

1. The beams were long. 2. Rome is a city of Italy. 3. The leader of the Romans was warlike. 4. Peace was pleasant to the leaders. 5. The king gives the city to the leader. 6. The judges were kind and just. 7. The king gives a book to the severe judge. 8. The disease is troublesome to the king. 9. The example is injurious to the judges. 10. The sons of the judges are severe.

3. Nouns the stems of which end in the dental (teeth) letters *t*, *d*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Aetā-s (<i>f.</i>), <i>an age</i>	Aetāt-ēs,	<i>ages</i>
Gen.	Aetāt-is, <i>of an age</i>	Aetāt-um,	<i>of ages</i>
Dat.	Aetāt-i, <i>to or for an age</i>	Aetāt-ibūs,	<i>to or for ages</i>
Acc.	Aetāt-em, <i>an age</i>	Aetāt-ēs,	<i>ages</i>
Voc.	Aetā-s, <i>O age</i>	Aetāt-ēs,	<i>O ages</i>
Abl.	Aetāt-ē, <i>by, with, or from an age.</i>	Aetāt-ibūs,	<i>by, with, or from ages.</i>

	2.	
Nom.	Lāpīs (<i>m.</i>), <i>a stone</i>	Lāpīd-ēs, <i>stones</i>
Gen.	Lāpīd-is, <i>of a stone</i>	Lāpīd-um, <i>of stones</i>
Dat.	Lāpīd-i, <i>to or for a stone</i>	Lāpīd-ibūs, <i>to or for stones</i>
Acc.	Lāpīd-em, <i>a stone</i>	Lāpīd-ēs, <i>stones</i>
Voc.	Lāpīs, <i>O stone</i>	Lāpīd-ēs, <i>O stones</i>
Abl.	Lāpīd-ē, <i>by, with, or from a stone.</i>	Lāpīd-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from stones.</i>

3.

Nom.	Milē-s (c.),	a soldier	Milit-ēs,	soldiers
Gen.	Milit-is,	of a soldier	Milit-um,	of soldiers
Dat.	Milit-i,	to or for a soldier	Milit-ibūs,	to or for soldiers
Acc.	Milit-em,	a soldier	Milit-ēs,	soldiers
Voc.	Milē-s,	O soldier	Milit-ēs,	O soldiers
Abl.	Milit-ē,	by, with, or from a soldier.	Milit-ibūs,	by, with, or from soldiers.

RULE 7.—The Ablative case indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done: *as, dōmīnūs hastā servum occīdīt, the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place: *as, noctēs hīēmē longae sunt, the nights are long in winter.*

Occīdīt, (he, she, it) kills.

Occidunt, (they) kill.

EXERCISE VIII.

1. Miles gladio obsidem occidit. 2. Miles lapide comitem occidit. 3. Pedites custodes gladiis occidunt. 4. Tempestates auctumno magnae sunt. 5. Equites et pedites timidi erant. 6. Custodes auri erant timidi. 7. Mors est lex naturae. 8. Civitas Romanorum clara erat. 9. Voluntas iudicis justa est. 10. Milites iudices hastis occidunt.

1. Tempests in the winter are great. 2. A tempest in the summer is troublesome. 3. A long night in the winter is pleasant. 4. The inhabitants kill the soldiers with stones. 5. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears. 6. The wish of the companion is just. 7. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers have swords. 8. The guardian of the silver was timid. 9. The boy has many stones. 10. The king has many soldiers and companions.

4. Nouns the stems of which end in the liquids *l, r,* and the sibilant *s.*

	Sing.		1.	Plur.
Nom.	Consul (m.),	a consul	Consul-ēs,	consuls
Gen.	Consul-is,	of a consul	Consul-um,	of consuls
Dat.	Consul-i,	to or for a consul	Consul-ibūs,	to or for consuls
Acc.	Consul-em,	a consul	Consul-ēs,	consuls
Voc.	Consul,	O consul	Consul-ēs,	O consuls
Abl.	Consul-ē,	by, with, or from a consul.	Consul-ibūs,	by, with, or from consuls.

2.

Nom.	Clāmōr (m.),	a shout	Clāmōr-ēs,	shouts
Gen.	Clāmōr-is,	of a shout	Clāmōr-um,	of shouts
Dat.	Clāmōr-i,	to or for a shout	Clāmōr-ibūs,	to or for shouts
Acc.	Clāmōr-em,	a shout	Clāmōr-ēs,	shouts
Voc.	Clāmōr,	O shout	Clāmōr-ēs,	O shouts
Abl.	Clāmōr-ē,	by, with, or from a shout.	Clāmōr-ibūs,	by, with, or from shouts.

Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom. Ansēr (m.) , a goose	Ansēr-ēs , geese	
Gen. Ansēr-is , of a goose	Ansēr-um , of geese	
Dat. Ansēr-i , to or for a goose	Ansēr-ībūs , to or for geese	
Acc. Ansēr-em , a goose	Ansēr-ēs , geese	
Voc. Ansēr , O goose	Ansēr-ēs , O geese	
Abl. Ansēr-ē , by, with, or from a goose.	Ansēr-ībūs , by, with, or from geese.	

4.	
Nom. Pătēr , a father	Patr-ēs , fathers
Gen. Patr-is , of a father	Patr-um , of fathers
Dat. Patr-i , to or for a father	Patr-ībūs , to or for fathers
Acc. Patr-em , a father	Patr-ēs , fathers
Voc. Pătēr , O father	Patr-ēs , O fathers
Abl. Patr-ē , by, with, or from a father.	Patr-ībūs , by, with, or from fathers.

5.	
Nom. Flōs (m.) , a flower	Flōr-ēs , flowers
Gen. Flōr-is , of a flower	Flōr-um , of flowers
Dat. Flōr-i , to or for a flower	Flōr-ībūs , to or for flowers
Acc. Flōr-em , a flower	Flōr-ēs , flowers
Voc. Flōs , O flower	Flōr-ēs , O flowers
Abl. Flōr-ē , by, with, or from a flower.	Flōr-ībūs , by, with, or from flowers.

EXERCISE IX.

1. Puer patrem et matrem habet. 2. Puellae fratres et sorores habent. 3. Odores florum sunt varii. 4. Color floris est jucundus. 5. Labor aestate molestus est. 6. Calor solis molestus est. 7. Tota urbs est praeda victoris. 8. Aggeres et fossae sunt munimenta castrorum. 9. Clamor militum molestus est.

1. The father of the judge is just. 2. The mother of the soldier is sick. 3. The hostage has a brother and a sister. 4. The colours of the flowers are various. 5. The brother gives a flower to (his) sister. 6. The shout of the soldiers was great. 7. The heat of the sun is great. 8. The heat is troublesome in the summer. 9. The mounds of the camp are high. 10. The cities are the booty of the soldiers.

5. Nouns the stems of which end in *ōn* or *ōn* (*in*).

Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Lēō (m.) , a lion	Lēōn-ēs , lions	
Gen. Lēōn-is , of a lion	Lēōn-um , of lions	
Dat. Lēōn-i , to or for a lion	Lēōn-ībūs , to or for lions	
Acc. Lēōn-em , a lion	Lēōn-ēs , lions	
Voc. Lēō , O lion	Lēōn-ēs , O lions	
Abl. Lēōn-ē , by, with, or from a lion.	Lēōn-ībūs , by, with, or from lions.	

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Vi go (<i>f.</i>), <i>a maiden</i>	Virgīn-ēs , <i>maidens</i>	
Gen.	Virgīn-is , <i>of a maiden</i>	Virgīn-um , <i>of maidens</i>	
Dat.	Virgīn-i , <i>to or for a maiden</i>	Virgīn-ibūs , <i>to or for maidens</i>	
Acc.	Virgīn-em , <i>a maiden</i>	Virgīn-ēs , <i>maidens</i>	
Voc.	Virgo , <i>O maiden</i>	Virgīn-ēs , <i>O maidens</i>	
Abl.	Virgīn-ē , <i>by, with, or from a maiden.</i>	Virgīn-ibūs , <i>by, with, or from maidens.</i>	

EXERCISE X.

1. Leones sunt validi. 2. Virgo est timida. 3. Calor molestus est multis hominibus. 4. Consuetudo altera natura est. 5. Sermo oratoris est doctus. 6. Pavones agricolae sunt pulchri. 7. Mors hominibus certa est. 8. Multitudo morborum est infinita. 9. Juno erat dea Romanorum. 10. Vita hominibus grata est.

1. The lion is strong. 2. The maidens are timid. 3. The multitude of men is infinite. 4. The soldier kills the lion with a sword. 5. The father gives a peacock to the maiden. 6. The heat is troublesome. 7. The heat in autumn is injurious to men. 8. The discourses of the orators were learned. 9. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans. 10. The peacock was sacred to Juno.

II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Host-is (<i>c.</i>), <i>an enemy</i>	Host-ēs , <i>enemies</i>	
Gen.	Host-is , <i>of an enemy</i>	Host-īum , <i>of enemies</i>	
Dat.	Host-i , <i>to or for an enemy</i>	Host-ibūs , <i>to or for enemies</i>	
Acc.	Host-em , <i>an enemy</i>	Host-ēs , <i>enemies</i>	
Voc.	Host-is , <i>O enemy</i>	Host-ēs , <i>O enemies</i>	
Abl.	Host-ē , <i>by, with, or from an enemy.</i>	Host-ibūs , <i>by, with, or from enemies.</i>	

Some stems in *i* have the Nominative in *e* and are thus declined :—

		2.	
Nom.	Nūb-ēs (<i>f.</i>), <i>a cloud</i>	Nūb-ēs , <i>clouds</i>	
Gen.	Nūb-is , <i>of a cloud</i>	Nūb-īum , <i>of clouds</i>	
Dat.	Nūb-i , <i>to or for a cloud</i>	Nūb-ibūs , <i>to or for clouds</i>	
Acc.	Nūb-em , <i>a cloud</i>	Nūb-ēs , <i>clouds</i>	
Voc.	Nūb-ēs , <i>O cloud</i>	Nūb-ēs , <i>O clouds</i>	
Abl.	Nūb-ē , <i>by, with, or from a cloud.</i>	Nūb-ibūs , <i>by, with, or from clouds.</i>	

EXERCISE XI.

1. Cives agros et hortos habent. 2. Rex civibus praemia dat. 3. Nubes atrae sunt causa tempe tatum. 4. Rupes sunt durae. 5. Urbs turreas altas habet. 6. Clades hostium magna erat. 7. Classis Romana duces peritos habet. 8. Valles hostibus notae erant. 9. Graecia valles angustas habet. 10. Virgo pulchram vestem habet.

1. The citizens were timid. 2. The valleys are known to the citizens. 3. The mother gives a garment to the maiden. 4. The citizens kill the enemies with swords. 5. The rocks are known to the citizens. 6. The valleys of Greece are narrow. 7. The Roman fleet has a skilful leader. 8. The maidens have beautiful garments. 9. The slaughter of the soldiers was great. 10. The leaders of the enemies were skilful.

B. Neuter Nouns.

I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

Nouns the stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Nömën, <i>a name</i>	Nömîn-ă,	<i>names</i>
Gen. Nömîn-îs, <i>of a name</i>	Nömîn-um,	<i>of names</i>
Dat. Nömîn-I, <i>to or for a name</i>	Nömîn-îbûs,	<i>to or for names</i>
Acc. Nömën, <i>a name</i>	Nömîn-ă,	<i>names</i>
Voc. Nömën, <i>O name</i>	Nömîn-ă,	<i>O names</i>
Abl. Nömîn-ě, <i>by, with, or from a name.</i>	Nömîn-îbûs,	<i>by, with, or from names.</i>
	2.	
Nom. Fulgür, <i>lightning</i>	Fulgür-ă,	<i>lightnings</i>
Gen. Fulgür-îs, <i>of lightning</i>	Fulgür-um,	<i>of lightnings</i>
Dat. Fulgür-I, <i>to or for lightning</i>	Fulgür-îbûs,	<i>to or for lightnings</i>
Acc. Fulgür, <i>lightning</i>	Fulgür-ă,	<i>lightnings</i>
Voc. Fulgür, <i>O lightning</i>	Fulgür-ă,	<i>O lightnings</i>
Abl. Fulgür-ě, <i>by, with, or from lightning.</i>	Fulgür-îbûs,	<i>by, with, or from lightnings.</i>
	3.	
Nom. Crûs, <i>a leg</i>	Crûr-ă,	<i>legs</i>
Gen. Crûr-îs, <i>of a leg</i>	Crûr-um,	<i>of legs</i>
Dat. Crûr-I, <i>to or for a leg</i>	Crûr-îbûs,	<i>to or for legs</i>
Acc. Crûs, <i>a leg</i>	Crûr-ă,	<i>legs</i>
Voc. Crûs, <i>O leg</i>	Crûr-ă,	<i>O legs</i>
Abl. Crûr-ě, <i>by, with, or from a leg.</i>	Crûr-îbûs,	<i>by, with, or from legs.</i>
	4.	
Nom. Őpûs, <i>a work</i>	Őpër-ă,	<i>works</i>
Gen. Őpër-îs, <i>of a work</i>	Őpër-um,	<i>of works</i>
Dat. Őpër-I, <i>to or for a work</i>	Őpër-îbûs,	<i>to or for works</i>
Acc. Őpûs, <i>a work</i>	Őpër-ă,	<i>works</i>
Voc. Őpûs, <i>O work</i>	Őpër-ă,	<i>O works</i>
Abl. Őpër-ě, <i>by, with, or from a work.</i>	Őpër-îbûs,	<i>by, with, or from works.</i>
	5.	
Nom. Corpûs, <i>a body</i>	Corpör-ă,	<i>bodies</i>
Gen. Corpör-îs, <i>of a body</i>	Corpör-um,	<i>of bodies</i>
Dat. Corpör-I, <i>to or for a body</i>	Corpör-îbûs,	<i>to or for bodies</i>
Acc. Corpûs, <i>a body</i>	Corpör-ă,	<i>bodies</i>
Voc. Corpûs, <i>O body</i>	Corpör-ă,	<i>O bodies</i>
Abl. Corpör-ě, <i>by, with, or from a body.</i>	Corpör-îbûs,	<i>by, with, or from bodies.</i>

	Sing.	6.	Plur.
Nom.	Căpăt, <i>a head</i>	Căpăt-ă,	heads
Gen.	Căpăt-îs, <i>of a head</i>	Căpăt-um,	of heads
Dat.	Căpăt-î, <i>to or for a head</i>	Căpăt-ibūs,	to or for heads
Acc.	Căpăt, <i>a head</i>	Căpăt-ă,	heads
Voc.	Căpăt, <i>O head</i>	Căpăt-ă,	O heads
Abl.	Căpăt-ê, <i>by, with, or from a head.</i>	Căpăt-ibūs,	by, with, or from heads.

II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

The Nominative in *ê, âl, âr*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Măr-ê, <i>the sea</i>	Măr-îă,	seas
Gen.	Măr-îs, <i>of the sea</i>	Măr-îum,	of seas
Dat.	Măr-î, <i>to or for the sea</i>	Măr-îbūs,	to or for seas
Acc.	Măr-ê, <i>the sea</i>	Măr-îă,	seas
Voc.	Măr-ê, <i>O sea</i>	Măr-îă,	O seas
Abl.	Măr-î, <i>by, with, or from the sea.</i>	Măr-îbūs,	by, with, or from seas.

		2.	
Nom.	Ănimăl, <i>an animal</i>	Ănimăl-îă,	animals
Gen.	Ănimăl-îs, <i>of an animal</i>	Ănimăl-îum,	of animals
Dat.	Ănimăl-î, <i>to or for an animal</i>	Ănimăl-îbūs,	to or for animals
Acc.	Ănimăl, <i>an animal</i>	Ănimăl-îă,	animals
Voc.	Ănimăl, <i>O animal</i>	Ănimăl-îă,	O animals
Abl.	Ănimăl-î, <i>by, with, or from an animal.</i>	Ănimăl-îbūs,	by, with, or from animals.

		3.	
Nom.	Calcăr, <i>a spur</i>	Calcăr-îă,	spurs
Gen.	Calcăr-îs, <i>of a spur</i>	Calcăr-îum,	of spurs
Dat.	Calcăr-î, <i>to or for a spur</i>	Calcăr-îbūs,	to or for spurs
Acc.	Calcăr, <i>a spur</i>	Calcăr-îă,	spurs
Voc.	Calcăr, <i>O spur</i>	Calcăr-îă,	O spurs
Abl.	Calcăr-î, <i>by, with, or from a spur.</i>	Calcăr-îbūs,	by, with, or from spurs.

EXERCISE XII.

A.—1. Nomen Carthaginis clarum erat. 2. Litora erant angusta. 3. Elephanti magna capita et parva crura habent. 4. Balaenae parva ora habent. 5. Fulgur est rapidum. 6. Opus est durum et molestum. 7. Ira causa multorum scelerum est. 8. Juno antiquis temporibus erat dea. 9. Sidera nautis grata sunt. 10. Frigus hieme est molestum.

1. The name of Cicero is renowned. 2. The works of Cicero are renowned. 3. Elephants have a strong body. 4. The legs of elephants are small. 5. The mouths of whales are small. 6. Elephants have great heads and small eyes. 7. The crimes are known to the judge. 8. The cold is troublesome to the maiden. 9. The time of the year is pleasant. 10. The shore is wide.

B.—1. Maria sunt domicilia piscium. 2. Calcaria sunt decus equitis. 3. Litora maris sunt magna. 4. Nautae retia habent.

PR. L. I.

5. Vectigalia sunt magna. 6. Gramen animalibus gratum erat. 7. Calcaria equitis sunt nova. 8. Maria sunt profunda. 9. Genera animalium sunt varia. 10. Equites aurea calcaria habent.

1. The sea is deep. 2. The shores of the seas are high. 3. The deep sea is the abode of fishes. 4. The nets of the sailors are golden. 5. The king gives golden nets to the sailors. 6. The spurs of the horse-soldier are golden. 7. The king gives a golden spur to the horse-soldier. 8. The animal is strong. 9. Many animals are strong. 10. The tax is troublesome.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION, AND ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS, DECLINED TOGETHER.

1. **Magnūs Dux**,—*a great leader*.

Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Magnūs dux	Magnī dūcēs
<i>Gen.</i> Magnī dūcīs	Magnōrum dūcum
<i>Dat.</i> Magnō dūcī	Magnīs dūcībūs
<i>Acc.</i> Magnum dūcem	Magnōs dūcēs
<i>Voc.</i> Magnē dux	Magnī dūcēs
<i>Abl.</i> Magnō dūcē	Magnīs dūcībūs.

2. **Bōnā Mātēr**,—*a good mother*.

<i>Nom.</i> Bōnā mātēr	Bōnae mātērēs
<i>Gen.</i> Bōnae mātēris	Bōnārum mātrum
<i>Dat.</i> Bōnae mātēri	Bōnīs mātēribūs
<i>Acc.</i> Bōnam mātrem	Bōnās mātērēs
<i>Voc.</i> Bōnā mātēr	Bōnae mātērēs
<i>Abl.</i> Bōnā mātēre	Bōnīs mātēribūs.

3. **Rāpīdum Flūmēn**,—*a rapid river*.

<i>Nom.</i> Rāpīdum flūmēn	Rāpīdā flūminā
<i>Gen.</i> Rāpīdī flūminīs	Rāpīdōrum flūminum
<i>Dat.</i> Rāpīdō flūminī	Rāpīdis flūminībūs
<i>Acc.</i> Rāpīdum flūmēn	Rāpīdā flūminā
<i>Voc.</i> Rāpīdum flūmēn	Rāpīdā flūminā
<i>Abl.</i> Rāpīdō flūminē	Rāpīdis flūminībūs.

VIII.—ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS end in *ēr, rīs, rē*, and are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: *as, ācēr, ācrīs, ācrē, sharp*; *cēlēr, cēlērīs, cēlērē, swift*.

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> Ācēr	ācērīs	ācrē		Ācrēs	ācrīā
<i>Gen.</i> Ācrīs	ācrīs	ācrīs		Ācrīum	ācrīum
<i>Dat.</i> Ācrī	ācrī	ācrī		Ācrībūs	ācrībūs
<i>Acc.</i> Ācrem	ācrem	ācrē		Ācrēs	ācrīā
<i>Voc.</i> Ācēr	ācrīs	ācrē		Ācrēs	ācrīā
<i>Abl.</i> Ācrī	ācrī	ācrī		Ācrībūs	ācrībūs

II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have two termina

tions in the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative only. They include—

1. Adjectives ending in *is*: *as*, *tristis* (*masc. and fem.*), *tristē* (*neut.*), *sad*.
2. Comparatives, ending in *iōr*, *iūs*: *as*, *mēliōr* (*masc. and fem.*), *mēliūs* (*neut.*), *better*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Trist-is	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
<i>Gen.</i>	Trist-is	trist-is	Trist-ium	trist-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	Trist-i	trist-i	Trist-ibūs	trist-ibūs
<i>Acc.</i>	Trist-em	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
<i>Voc.</i>	Trist-is	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
<i>Abl.</i>	Trist-i	trist-i	Trist-ibūs	trist-ibūs

	Sing.	2.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Mēliōr	mēliūs	Mēliōr-ēs	mēliōr-ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Mēliōr-is	mēliōr-is	Mēliōr-um	mēliōr-um
<i>Dat.</i>	Mēliōr-i	mēliōr-i	Mēliōr-ibūs	mēliōr-ibūs
<i>Acc.</i>	Mēliōr-em	mēliūs	Mēliōr-ēs	mēliōr-ā
<i>Voc.</i>	Mēliōr	mēliūs	Mēliōr-ēs	mēliōr-ā
<i>Abl.</i>	Mēliōr-ē or i	mēliōr-ē or i	Mēliōr-ibūs	mēliōr-ibūs

III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are of various endings and declined like Nouns of the Third Declension: *as*, *fēlix*, *fortunate*; *prūdēns*, *prudent*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.
Nom.	Fēlix	fēlix	Fēlio-ēs
Gen.	Fēlio-is	fēlio-is	Fēlio-ium
Dat.	Fēlio-i	fēlio-i	Fēlio-ibūs
Acc.	Fēlio-em	fēlix	Fēlio-ēs
Voc.	Fēlix	fēlix	Fēlio-ēs
Abl.	Fēlio-I or ē	fēlio-I or ē	Fēlio-ibūs

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.
Nom.	Prūdēns	prūdēns	Prūdēt-ēs
Gen.	Prūdēt-is	prūdēt-is	Prūdēt-ium
Dat.	Prūdēt-i	prūdēt-i	Prūdēt-ibūs
Acc.	Prūdēt-em	prūdēns	Prūdēt-ēs
Voc.	Prūdēns	prūdēns	Prūdēt-ēs
Abl.	Prūdēt-I or ē	prūdēt-I or ē	Prūdēt-ibūs

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION, DECLINED WITH NOUNS OF FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD DECLENSIONS.

1. Cēlērīs Sāgittā,—a swift arrow.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Cēlērīs sāgittā	Cēlērēs sāgittae
Gen.	Cēlērīs sāgittae	Cēlērū sāgittarū
Dat.	Cēlērī sāgittae	Cēlērībūs sāgittis
Acc.	Cēlērē sāgittam	Cēlērēs sāgittas
Voc.	Cēlērīs sāgittā	Cēlērēs sāgittae
Abl.	Cēlērī sāgittā	Cēlērībūs sāgittis

2. *Tristē Proelium*,—*a sad battle*.

	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	Tristē proelium	Tristiā proeliā
<i>Gen.</i>	Tristis proelii	Tristium proeliorum
<i>Dat.</i>	Tristi proeliō	Tristibus proeliis
<i>Acc.</i>	Tristē proelium	Tristiā proeliā
<i>Voc.</i>	Tristē proelium	Tristiā proeliā
<i>Abl.</i>	Tristi proeliō	Tristibus proeliis

3. *Felix Hōmo*,—*a happy man*.

<i>Nom.</i>	Felix hōmo	Felicēs hōminēs
<i>Gen.</i>	Felicio hōminis	Felicio hōminum
<i>Dat.</i>	Felicio hōmini	Felicibus hōminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	Felicem hōminem	Felicēs hōminēs
<i>Voc.</i>	Felix hōmo	Felicēs hōminēs
<i>Abl.</i>	Felicio or ē hōminē	Felicibus hōminibus

EXERCISE XIII.

A.—1. *Ira furor brevis est.* 2. *Ira militum erat acris.* 3. *Via est facilis.* 4. *Omne initium est difficile.* 5. *Leges hominibus utiles sunt.* 6. *Vulnus militis est leve.* 7. *Carmen est dulce.* 8. *Naves hostium sunt celeres.* 9. *Tempus humanae vitae breve est.* 10. *Rex cives fideles habet.*

1. The soldiers have sharp arms. 2. The arrow is swift. 3. Labour is easy in the winter. 4. Labour is difficult in the summer. 5. Arms are useful to soldiers. 6. The soldiers have short swords. 7. The beginning of the song is difficult. 8. The songs are easy. 9. The wounds of the soldier are light. 10. The arrows are sharp and swift.

B.—1. *Consilium ducis audax est.* 2. *Consilia ducis Romani audacia sunt.* 3. *Tempus praesens felix est.* 4. *Regnum Persarum erat potens.* 5. *Animalia rapacia sunt velocia.* 6. *Vetus vinum est bonum.* 7. *Rex ingentem numerum militum habet.* 8. *Leges Romanorum erant praestantes.* 9. *Praemia equitum ingentia erant.* 10. *Agricolae vinum vetus habent.*

1. The plans of the leader were prudent. 2. Elephants are prudent animals. 3. The booty of the Romans was immense. 4. The beginning was fortunate. 5. The Romans have excellent laws. 6. The king gives immense rewards to the soldiers. 7. Lions are rapacious animals. 8. The father gives old wine to the boy. 9. The present times are fortunate. 10. The Romans are powerful.

IX.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, and of Neuter Nouns in *u*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Grād-ūs (<i>m.</i>), <i>a step</i>	Grād-ūs,	<i>steps</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Grād-ūs,	Grād-ūum,	<i>of steps</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Grād-ūi,	Grād-ībūs,	<i>to or for steps</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Grād-um,	Grād-ūs,	<i>steps</i>
<i>Voc.</i> Grād-ūs,	Grād-ūs,	<i>O steps</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Grād-ū,	Grād-ībūs,	<i>by, with, or from steps.</i>

	2.	
<i>Nom.</i> Gēn-u (<i>n.</i>), <i>a knee</i>	Gēn-ūā,	<i>knees</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Gēn-ūs,	Gēn-ūum,	<i>of knees</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Gēn-ū,	Gēn-ībūs,	<i>to or for knees</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Gēn-u,	Gēn-ūā,	<i>knees</i>
<i>Voc.</i> Gēn-ū,	Gēn-ūā,	<i>O knees</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Gēn-ū,	Gēn-ībūs,	<i>by, with, or from knees.</i>

NOTE.—Some nouns of the Fourth Declension make the Dative and Ablative plural in -ūbūs: as, ācūbūs, arcūbūs, portūbūs, vērūbūs, with a few others. Also, the Dative Singular ūi is sometimes contracted into ū: as, grādūi, grādū.

EXERCISE XIV.

A.—1. Quercus sunt altae. 2. Manus hominibus utiles sunt. 3. Visus et auditus sunt utiles hominibus. 4. Acus est acuta. 5. Portus est tutus. 6. Cursus militis erat celer. 7. Arcus Scytharum leves erant. 8. Arcus coelestis varios colores habet. 9. Fructus ficūs erat dulcis. 10. Caput est sedes omnium sensuum.

1. The oak is useful to man. 2. The city has beautiful harbours. 3. The Scythians have arrows and bows. 4. The needles are sharp. 5. The girl has a sharp needle. 6. The harbours of the city are safe. 7. The number of the harbours is great. 8. Hearing and seeing are useful (*pl.*) to animals. 9. The fruit of fig-trees is sweet. 10. The soldier kills the lion with (his) hand.

B.—1. Cornua tauri acuta sunt. 2. Magister cornu puero dat. 3. Genua hominibus utilia sunt. 4. Magistratus sunt legum ministri. 5. Exercitus arma magna habet. 6. Duces exercitūs audaces erant. 7. Rex equitatum peditatumque* habet. 8. Voluptas sensibus grata est. 9. Oculi sunt instrumenta visūs. 10. Aures sunt instrumenta auditūs.

1. The knees of elephants are hard. 2. The horns of the stag are hard. 3. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier. 4. The magistrates are the guardians of the laws. 5. The leader of the cavalry is bold. 6. Greece has many harbours. 7. Every (omne) animal has senses. 8. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses. 9. Sharp needles are useful to women. 10. The leaders of the infantry are powerful.

* Quē, and (placed after the word which it unites to the preceding).

X.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Dī-ēs, <i>a day</i>	Dī-ēs, <i>days</i>
Gen.	Dī-ēī, <i>of a day</i>	Dī-Ērum, <i>of days</i>
Dat.	Dī-ēī, <i>to or for a day</i>	Dī-ēbūs, <i>to or for days</i>
Acc.	Dī-em, <i>a day</i>	Dī-ēs, <i>days</i>
Voc.	Dī-ēs, <i>O day</i>	Dī-ēs, <i>O days</i>
Abl.	Dī-ē, <i>by, with, or from a day.</i>	Dī-ēbūs, <i>by, with, or from days.</i>

NOTE.—In Nouns like *rēs*, where *ēs* is preceded by a Consonant, the *e* becomes short in Gen. and Dat. Singular: *as, rēi, spēi*.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *dīēs*, which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural; and *mēridīēs*, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

RULE 8.—When the Ablative Case indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition *in, in*: *as, hostēs in plānitīē ērant, the enemies were in the plain.* See Rule 7, p. 13.

EXERCISE XV.

1. Dies sunt sereni. 2. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est. 3. Deus est dominus omnium rerum. 4. Dux magnam victoriae spem habet. 5. Fides servorum rara erat. 6. Exercitus in magna planitie erat. 7. In acie multi pedites erant. 8. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum. 9. Facies filii pulchra erat. 10. Magna est pueri segnitias.

1. The number of days is infinite. 2. God is the creator of all things. 3. Many things are hurtful to man. 4. The mother gives many things to the girl. 5. In the line-of-battle were many horse-soldiers. 6. The cavalry was in the plain. 7. The reward was the beginning of hope. 8. The leaders have great hope of victory. 9. The fidelity of sons was rare. 10. The slothfulness of the girl is troublesome to the mother.

XI.—SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS.

The following words are thus declined:—

	Dēūs, <i>m., God.</i> (2 Decl.)		Dōmūs, <i>f., a house.</i> (2 and 4 Decl.)	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Dēūs	Dēī, Dīī, or Dī	Dōmūs	Dōmūs
Gen.	Dēī	Dēōrum, or Deūm	Dōmūs	Dōmūm, or dōmōrum
Dat.	Dēō	Dēīs, Dīīs, or Dīs	Dōmūī	Dōmībūs
Acc.	Dēum	Dēōs	Dōmum	Dōmōs (rarely dōmūs)
Voc.	Dēūs	Dēī, Dīī, or Dī	Dōmūs	Dōmūs
Abl.	Dēō	Dēīs, Dīīs, or Dīs	Dōmō	Dōmībūs

N.B.—The form *dōmī* is used only in the sense of *at home*.

Bōs, <i>c.</i> , an ox or cow. (3 Decl.)		
	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Bōs	Bōvēs
Gen.	Bōvis	Bōvum, or bōum
Dat.	Bōvī	Bōbūs, or būbūs
Acc.	Bōvem	Bōvēs
Voc.	Bōs	Bōvēs
Abl.	Bōvē	Bōbūs, or būbūs

Vis, <i>f.</i> , strength. (3 Decl.)		
	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Vis	Virēs
Gen.	wanting	Virium
Dat.	wanting	Viribūs
Acc.	Vim	Virēs
Voc.	wanting	Virēs
Abl.	VI	Viribūs

Jusjūrandum, *n.*, an oath (properly two words, Jūs, 3 Decl., and jūrandum, 2 Decl.).

	Sing.	No plural.
Nom.	Jusjūrandum	
Gen.	Jūrisjūrandī	
Dat.	Jūrijūrandō	
Acc.	Jusjūrandum	
Voc.	Jusjūrandum	
Abl.	Jūrējūrandō	

Sēnex, <i>m.</i> , an old man. (3 Decl.)		
	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Sēnex	Sēnēs
Gen.	Sēnīs	Sēnum
Dat.	Sēnī	Sēnībūs
Acc.	Sēnem	Sēnēs
Voc.	Sēnex	Sēnēs
Abl.	Sēnē	Sēnībūs

Jūpītēr (= Jōv-pītēr, *i. e.* pātēr, (8 Decl.) the god.

	Sing.	No plural.
Nom.	Jūpītēr	
Gen.	Jōvis	
Dat.	Jōvī	
Acc.	Jōvem	
Voc.	Jūpītēr	
Abl.	Jōvē	

Respublica, *f.*, a commonwealth, a republic (properly two words, Rēs, 5 Decl., and publicā, 1 Decl.).

	Sing.	No plural.
Nom.	Respublicā	
Gen.	Rēipublicae	
Dat.	Rēipublicae	
Acc.	Rempublicam	
Voc.	Respublicā	
Abl.	Rēpublicā	

EXERCISE XVI.

A.—1. Di sunt immortales. 2. Jupiter et Neptunus sunt dii Romanorum. 3. Quercus Jovi sacrae erant. 4. Domus urbis sunt pulchrae. 5. Divitiae magnae in domo patris sunt. 6. Divitiae ingentes in domibus incolarum sunt. 7. Canes domuum custodes sunt. 8. Homines in domibus sunt, bestiae in silvis. 9. Dis sacrum est monumentum. 10. Vis fluminis ingens est.

1. Men are mortal, the gods immortal. 2. The oak is sacred to Jupiter. 3. Thunderbolts are the arms of Jupiter. 4. Many trees are sacred to the gods. 5. The number of the gods is immense. 6. The number of the houses is immense. 7. (There) were immense riches in the houses of the citizens. 8. The monuments are sacred to the gods. 9. Jupiter has many temples in Italy. 10. Oxen have great strength (*pl.*).

B.—1. Senex est debilis et aeger. 2. Funera senum et juvenum sunt multa. 3. Nomen Ciceronis senibus notum est. 4. Boves magnas vires habent. 5. Magna est vis conscientiae. 6. Civis jusjurandum judicii dat.* 7. In republica Romana sunt multi servi. 8. Respublica Romanorum potens erat. 9. Cornua bovis dura sunt. 10. Boves et equi in agro sunt.

1. The strength (*pl.*) of oxen is immense. 2. The king gives many oxen to the soldiers. 3. The old-men are feeble and sick. 4. The old-man gives gold and silver to the young-man. 5. The

* Jusjurandum dat, in English, takes the oath.

house of the old-man is full of riches. 6. Gold and silver are in the houses of the citizens. 7. In the Roman commonwealth were many brave citizens. 8. The friends of the commonwealth were few. 9. The grass is pleasing to the oxen. 10. The fields are sacred to Jupiter.

XII.—SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following words have in the Genitive Sing. *iūs* (rarely *iūs*) and in the Dative *i* :—

<i>ūnūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>one, alone.</i>	<i>altēr, altērā, altērūm, one of two ;</i>
<i>sōlūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>alone.</i>	<i>altēr altēr, the one</i>
<i>tōtūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>whole.</i>	<i>the other.</i>
<i>ullūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>any.</i>	<i>āliūs, āliā, āliūd, one of any</i>
<i>nullūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>no, none.</i>	<i>number ; āliūs āliūs,</i>
<i>ūtēr, utrā, utrum,</i>	<i>which of two.</i>	<i>one another ; in pl. some,</i>
<i>neutēr, neutrā, neutrum,</i>	<i>neither.</i>	<i>others.</i>

For example—

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ūn-ūs	ūn-ā	ūn-um	Ūn-i	ūn-ae	ūn-ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Ūn-iūs			Ūn-ōrum	ūn-ārum	ūn-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Ūn-i			Ūn-is		
<i>Acc.</i>	Ūn-um	ūn-am	ūn-um	Ūn-ōs	ūn-ās	ūn-ā
<i>Abl.</i>	Ūn-ō	ūn-ā	ūn-ō	Ūn-is		

Obs. As to the use of the Plural of *ūnūs*, see p. 27.

The Genitive Singular of *altēr* is *altēriūs*, and of *āliūs* is *āliūs*.

EXERCISE XVII.

1. *Virtus sola dat veram voluptatem.* 2. *Cives Ciceroni uni dant honorem.* 3. *Utri dat (does he give) laudem?* *Neutri.* 4. *Alii sunt docti, alii indocti.* 5. *Alius (gen.) vires, alius (gen.) divitiae sunt magnae.* 6. *Alter est Graecus, alter Romanus.* 7. *Tota vita hominis memorabilis erat.* 8. *Alteri (dat.) laudem, alteri (dat.) culpam dant.* 9. *Neutri dat totam laudem.* 10. *Neutra civitas habet laudem ullam.*

1. He gives the whole booty to the soldiers. 2. Cicero alone was pleasing to the citizens. 3. He was troublesome to neither. 4. To which-of-the-two does he give the praise? 5. Neither of the men has any abode. 6. Virtue alone gives true honours. 7. Life is troublesome to no good man. 8. Rome alone was head of (all) cities. 9. He was unfriendly to neither. 10. The one was pleasing to the citizens, the other was troublesome.

XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three Degrees of Comparison : Positive, Comparative, and Superlative : as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Altūs, high.</i>	<i>Altīōr, higher.</i>	<i>Altissimūs, { highest, most high, or very high.</i>

The Comparative is formed by adding *ior* and the Superlative by adding *issimūs* to the Positive, after taking away the termination of the Genitive Singular : as,

Nom.	Posit.	Gen.		Comp.	Sup.
Altūs,		Alt-ī,	<i>high,</i>	Alt-īor,	Alt-issimūs.
Lēvīs,		Lēv-īs,	<i>light,</i>	Lēv-īor,	Lēv-issimūs.
Fēlix,		Fēlio-īs,	<i>fortunate,</i>	Fēlio-īor,	Fēlio-issimūs.
Prūdēns,		Prūdēt-īs,	<i>prudent,</i>	Prūdēt-īor,	Prūdēt-issimūs.

The Comparative is declined on p. 19 (*mēl-ior*).

The Superlative is declined like *bōnus*, *bōna*, *bōnum*.

EXCEPTIONS.—I. Adjectives ending in *ēr* form the Superlative in *rīmūs* : as,

Nom.	Posit.	Gen.		Comp.	Sup.
pulchrē,		pulchr-ī,	<i>beautiful,</i>	pulchr-īor,	pulchr-rīmūs.
libēr,		libēr-ī,	<i>free,</i>	libēr-īor,	libēr-rīmūs.
ācēr,		ācēr-īs,	<i>sharp,</i>	ācēr-īor,	ācēr-rīmūs.
cēlēr,		cēlēr-īs,	<i>swift,</i>	cēlēr-īor,	cēlēr-rīmūs.

Also *vētūs* (*Gen. vētēr-īs*), *old*, has a Superlative, *vēter-rīmūs*.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *līmūs* : as,

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
fācilis,	<i>easy,</i>	fācil-īor,	fācil-līmūs.
diffīcilis,	<i>difficult,</i>	diffīcil-īor,	diffīcil-līmūs.
sīmilis,	<i>like,</i>	sīmil-īor,	sīmil-līmūs.
dissīmilis,	<i>unlike,</i>	dissīmil-īor,	dissīmil-līmūs.
grācilis,	<i>thin,</i>	grācil-īor,	grācil-līmūs.
hūmilis,	<i>low,</i>	hūmil-īor,	hūmil-līmūs.

III. Adjectives ending in *dicūs*, *ficūs*, and *vōlūs*, form their Comparative in *entiōr*, and their Superlative in *entissimūs* : as,

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
mālēdicūs,	<i>slanderous,</i>	mālēdicentiōr,	mālēdicentissimūs.
bēnēficūs,	<i>beneficent,</i>	bēnēficentiōr,	bēnēficentissimūs.
bēnēvōlūs,	<i>benevolent,</i>	bēnēvōlentiōr,	bēnēvōlentissimūs.

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb *māgis*, *more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb *maximē*, *most* : as, *noxius*, *hurtful*, *māgis noxius* *more hurtful*, *maximē noxius*, *most hurtful*.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
bōnus,	<i>good,</i>	mēlior,	optimūs.
mālus,	<i>bad,</i>	pējor,	pessimūs.
magnus,	<i>great,</i>	mājor,	maximūs.
parvus,	<i>small,</i>	minor,	minimūs.
multus,	<i>much,</i>	plūs (<i>see below</i>),	plurimūs.
nēquam (<i>not at all</i>),	<i>worthless,</i>	nēquior,	nēquissimūs.

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
dives,	<i>rich,</i>	ditior,	ditissimū.
sēnex,	<i>old,</i>	sēnior [nātū mā'jor],	[nātū maxīmū].
jūvenis,	<i>young,</i>	jūnior [nātū mīnor],	[nātū mīnimū].
supērus,	<i>upper,</i>	supērior,	suprēmū, summū.
inferus,	<i>lower,</i>	inferior,	infimū, imū.
extērus,	<i>outside,</i>	extērior,	extrēmū, extimū.
intērus,	<i>inside,</i>	intērior,	intimū.
postērus,	<i>behind,</i>	postērior,	postrēmū, postimū.
—	—	prior (<i>former</i>),	primū (<i>first</i>). [<i>next</i>].
—	—	prōprior (<i>nearer</i>),	proximū (<i>nearest</i> .
—	—	ultērior (<i>further</i>),	ultimū (<i>furthest,</i> <i>last</i>).

	Singular. Neut. only.	Plural. Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Plūs	Plūrēs	Plūrē
Gen.	Plūris	Plūrium	Plūrium
Dat.	Plūri	Plūribūs	Plūribūs
Acc.	Plūs	Plūrēs	Plūrē
Abl.	Plūrē	Plūribūs	Plūribūs

RULE 9.—The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin *quam* (indeclinable).

EXERCISE XVIII.

A.—1. Aestate dies longiores sunt quam noctes. 2. Tempore hiberno dies sunt breviores. 3. Lepores timidiore sunt quam canes. 4. Noctes brevissimae sunt aestate. 5. Roma clarissima urbs Italiae erat. 6. Ferrum utilissimum est metallorum. 7. Radices arborum longissimae sunt. 8. Nihil est amabilius quam virtus. 9. Lux est velocior quam sonitus. 10. Nihil in amicitia perniciosius est quam adulatio.

1. Men are stronger than women. 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. The hare is a very timid animal. 4. Nothing is more excellent than virtue. 5. The roots of oak-trees are very strong and very long. 6. The Rhine is a very rapid river. 7. The eyes of the eagle are very keen. 8. The days are calmer in summer than in winter. 9. In winter time the light is feebler than in summer. 10. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.

B.—1. In bello miserrimi sunt agricolae. 2. Filiae matri sunt simillimae. 3. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima erant. 4. Pulcherrima est imago regis. 5. Facillimi erant labores militum. 6. Pulcherrima animalia non semper sunt utilissima. 7. Vetterima vina non semper sunt dulcissima. 8. Vultures acerrimos habent oculos. 9. Pulcherrimi sunt colores florum. 10. In Helvetia sunt asperissimi montes.

1. The scent of flowers is very sweet. 2. The work is very difficult. 3. The journey was very long and very rough. 4. The eyes of the vulture are very keen. 5. Helvetia is a very rugged land. 6. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest. 7. The legs of the stag are very slender. 8. The son was very like (his) father (*dat.*). 9. War is the cause of many crimes. 10. In summer the sun is more powerful than in winter.

C.—1. Nihil est melius quam sapientia. 2. Sol major est quam terra. 3. Luna minor est quam terra. 4. Plurima et maxima animalia sunt in mari. 5. Optimae erant leges Romanae. 6. Pessimae sunt consuetudines discipulorum. 7. Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria. 8. Simulatio amoris est pejor quam odium. 9. Cato optimus erat suae aetatis orator. 10. Aquilae vis maxima est.

1. Hatred is better than flattery. 2. Very many men give the greatest praise to Cato. 3. The best orator is not always the best citizen. 4. The most wicked men slay the most excellent (men). 5. No state was ever more renowned than Rome. 6. The best men are not always the most powerful. 7. They give the honour to the most excellent citizens. 8. Very many islands are larger than Sicily. 9. Sicily is a smaller island than Britain. 10. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.

XIV.—THE NUMERALS.

Cardinal Numerals denote number simply or absolutely: as, ūnūs, *one*; dŭō, *two*; trēs, *three*. They are given on the next page.

The declension of ūnūs is given on p. 24.

Obs. Ūnūs is used in the Plural with Plural Nouns which have a singular meaning: as, ūnā castrā, *one camp*; ūnae aedēs, *one house*; ūnae littērae, *one letter*.

Dŭō, *two*, trēs, *three*, and milliā, *thousands*, are declined as follows:—

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Dŭ-ō	dŭ-ae	dŭ-ō	Trēs	triā	Milliā
<i>Gen.</i>	Dŭ-ōrum	dŭ-ārum	dŭ-ōrum	Trium	trium	Millium
<i>Dat.</i>	Dŭ-ōbŭs	dŭ-ābŭs	dŭ-ōbŭs	Tribŭs	tribŭs	Millibŭs
<i>Acc.</i>	Dŭ-ōs or dŭ-ō	dŭ-ās	dŭ-ō	Trēs or triſ	triā	Milliā
<i>Abſ.</i>	Dŭ-ōbŭs	dŭ-ābŭs	dŭ-ōbŭs	Tribŭs	tribŭs	Millibŭs

Obs. Ambō, *both*, is declined like duo.

Millē, *a thousand*, in the singular, is an indeclinable adjective; but milliā, *thousands*, in the plural, is a Substantive: as, millē hōmīnēs, *a thousand men*; but dŭō milliā hōmīnum, *two thousand men*, literally, *two thousands of men*.

The Cardinal Numerals from quattuōr, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable. They are given on the next page.

Dūcentī, *ae, ā, two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Ordinal Numerals denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series: as, primŭs, *first*; secundŭs, or altēr, *second*. They are declined regularly as adjectives.

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus.
2	II	duō	secundus <i>or</i> altēr.
3	III	trēs	tertīus.
4	IV	quattuōr (quātūōr)	quartus.
5	V	quinquē	quintus.
6	VI	sex	sextus.
7	VII	septem	septīmus.
8	VIII	octō	octāvus.
9	IX	nōvem	nōnus.
10	X	dēcem	dēcīmus.
11	XI	undēcim	undēcīmus.
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcīmus.
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertīus dēcīmus.
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcīmus.
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus dēcīmus.
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcīmus.
17	XVII	septemdēcim	septīmus dēcīmus.
18	XVIII	duōdēvigintī	duōdēvicēsīmus.
19	XIX	undēvigintī	undēvicēsīmus.
20	XX	vīgintī	vicēsīmus.
21	XXI	ūnus et vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī ūnus	prīmus et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus prīmus.
22	XXII	duō et vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī duō	alter et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus alter.
23	XXIII	trēs et vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī trēs	tertīus et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus tertīus.
28	XXVIII	duōdētrīgintā	duōdētrīgēsīmus.
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsīmus.
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsīmus.
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus.
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsīmus.
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus.
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus.
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus.
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus.
100	C	centum	centēsīmus.
200	CC	ducentī, ae, ā	ducentēsīmus.
300	CCC	trecentī, ae, ā	trecentēsīmus.
400	CCCC	quadrīgentī, ae, ā	quadrīgentēsīmus.
500	D <i>or</i> IĊ	quīgentī, ae, ā	quīgentēsīmus.
600	DC	sexcentī, ae, ā	sexcentēsīmus.
700	DCC	septīgentī, ae, ā	septīgentēsīmus.
800	DCCC	octīgentī, ae, ā	octīgentēsīmus.
900	DCCCC	nongentī, ae, ā	nongentēsīmus.
1,000	M <i>or</i> CIĊ	millē	millēsīmus.
2,000	MM	duō millia	bis millēsīmus.
100,000	CCCIĊĊĊ	centum millia	centiēs millēsīmus.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos. 2. Magister puero tres libros dat. 3. Sunt (*there are*) sedecim mala, viginti pruna, undeviginti pira, duodeviginti cerasa. 4. In capite hominis sexaginta tria sunt ossa. 5. In exercitu Alexandri Magni duodecim millia Macedonum erant. 6. Xerxes habet classem mille ducentarum navium. 7. In legione Romana erant cohortes decem, manipuli triginta, centuriae sexaginta. 8. Septem erant reges Romani; primus erat Romulus, secundus Numa Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quartus Ancus Martius, quintus Tarquinius Priscus, sextus Servius Tullius, septimus Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Augustus octavus est anni mensis. 10. Manipulus erat trigesima pars legionis Romanae.

1. The wise (men) of Greece were seven. 2. The first king of Rome was warlike. 3. They slay the tenth part of the men. 4. In a Roman legion (there) were ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries. 5. They slay ten thousand men (*gen.*) in the war. 6. The second king of Rome was just and mild. 7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and wicked. 8. In the first month of the year (there) are thirty-one days. 9. Rome has two consuls. 10. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers (*gen.*), three hundred horse-soldiers.*

* The number of soldiers in a legion varied considerably at different periods

XV.—THE VERB SUM, *I am.*

Sum, fūl, fūtūrū, essē,—to be. Stem : ēs-, fu-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Sum,	<i>I am</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Sūmūs,	<i>We are</i>
	Ēs,	<i>thou art</i>		Estīs,	<i>ye are</i>
	Est,	<i>he is.</i>		Sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Ēram,	<i>I was</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Ērāmūs,	<i>We were</i>
	Ērās,	<i>thou wast</i>		Ērātīs,	<i>ye were</i>
	Ērāt,	<i>he was.</i>		Ērant,	<i>they were.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Ēro,	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Ērimūs,	<i>We shall be</i>
	Ēris,	<i>thou wilt be</i>		Ēritīs,	<i>ye will be</i>
	Ērit,	<i>he will be.</i>		Ērunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Fuī,	<i>I have been, or</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Fuīmūs,	<i>We have been, or</i>
		<i>I was</i>			<i>we were</i>
	Fuistī,	<i>thou hast been, or</i>		Fuistīs,	<i>ye have been, or</i>
		<i>thou wast</i>			<i>ye were</i>
	Fuīt,	<i>he has been, or</i>		Fuērunt,	<i>they have been, or</i>
		<i>he was.</i>		or fuērē,	<i>they were.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fušram, <i>I had been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fušrāmūs, <i>We had been</i>
Fušrās, <i>thou hadst been</i>	Fušrātīs, <i>ye had been</i>
Fušrāt, <i>he had been.</i>	Fušrant, <i>they had been.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fušro, <i>I shall have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fušrimūs, <i>We shall have been</i>
Fušris, <i>thou wilt have been</i>	Fušritīs, <i>ye will have been</i>
Fušrit, <i>he will have been.</i>	Fušrint, <i>they will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ēs, <i>Be thou.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Estē, <i>Be ye.</i>
----------------------------------	----------------------------------

2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Estō, <i>Thou shalt or must</i> be	<i>Plur.</i> Estōtē, <i>Ye shall or must</i> be
Estō, <i>he shall or must be.</i>	Suntō, <i>they shall or must</i> be.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Sim, <i>I may be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Simūs, <i>We may be</i>
Sīs, <i>thou mayst be</i>	Sītīs, <i>ye may be</i>
Sit, <i>he may be.</i>	Sint, <i>they may be.</i>

Obs. The first and third Persons singular and plural of the Present Subjunctive are often used as Imperatives: as, sint cives justī, let the citizens be just.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Essem or fōrem, } <i>I might be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Essēmūs or fōrēmūs, } <i>We might be</i>
Essēs or fōrēs, } <i>thou mightst be</i>	Essētīs or fōrētīs, } <i>ye might be</i>
Essēt or fōrēt, } <i>he might be.</i>	Essent or fōrent, } <i>they might be.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fušrim, <i>I may have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fušrimūs, <i>We may have been</i>
Fušris, <i>thou mayst have been</i>	Fušritīs, <i>ye may have been</i>
Fušrit, <i>he may have been.</i>	Fušrint, <i>they may have been</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fuissem, <i>I should</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fuissēmūs, <i>We should</i>
Fuissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> } <i>have</i>	Fuissētīs, <i>ye would</i> } <i>have</i>
Fuissēt, <i>he would</i> } <i>been.</i>	Fuissent, <i>they would</i> } <i>been.</i>

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, and IMPERFECT, }	Essē,	to be.
INFINITIVE PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT, }	Fuissē,	to have been.

INFINITIVE FUTURE, *Fütürüs essë, or fôrë, to be about to be.*
 PARTICIPLE FUTURE, *Fütürüs, -a, -um, about to be.*

NOTE.—A vowel before another vowel is usually short, and will therefore in future not always be marked.

Obs. *Fütürüs* may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: as, *fütürüs sum, I am about to be; fütürüs eram, I was about to be, &c.*

EXERCISE XX.

The Verb Sum.—Indicative Mood.

A.—1. *Sum laetus.* 2. *Es tristis.* 3. *Non diligens fuisti, Tite.* 4. *Probi filii gaudium patris erunt.* 5. *Opera tua multis hominibus erunt utilia.* 6. *Dux vester ero: victores erimus.* 7. *Si contenti eritis, pauperes non eritis.* 8. *Multi erunt pauperes, qui (who) divites fuerant.* 9. *Cives urbis liberae sumus.* 10. *Custodes miseræ puellæ fuistis.*

1. We are joyful. 2. Ye are sad. 3. I am a Roman citizen. 4. The contented (*pl.*) are always joyful; the rich (*pl.*) are often sad. 5. If ye are good, ye are rich. 6. If thou wilt be diligent, thou wilt be learned. 7. The wicked man is not free. 8. They had been unlearned, now they are learned. 9. Ye will be rich and free. 10. The Roman state was renowned.

Imperative Mood.

B.—1. *Judex custos severus juris esto.* 2. *Probi este, pueri, et felices eritis.* 3. *Discipuli sunto attenti.* 4. *Judices justi sunto.* 5. *Reipublicæ salus civibus cara esto.* 6. *Amici fideles sunto.* 7. *Reges patres patriæ sunto.* 8. *Attenti este, discipuli.* 9. *Contenti estote sorte vestra.* 10. *Praceptorum memores este.*

1. Be diligent, scholars. 2. Praise shall be the reward of diligence. 3. Be faithful, friends! 4. The judge must be just. 5. They are contented; they shall be rich. 6. There must be no cause of enmity; we are faithful friends. 7. Be just, be upright; thou wilt be successful. 8. Be brave, soldiers! 9. Let the citizens be (*sint*) free, let them be happy! 10. The city shall be the booty of the soldiers.

XVI.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

Absum, *I am absent.*
Adsum, *I am present, stand by, side with.*
Dësum, *I am wanting.*
Insum, *I am in.*
Intersum, *I am among.*
Obsum, *I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.*

Praesum, *I am before, am at the head of.*
Prösum, *I am serviceable, do good to.*
Subsum, *I am under, or amongst.*
Süpersum, *I remain over, survive.*

All these compounds of Sum are followed by the Dative Case. They are conjugated like Sum, but Prösum takes *d* before *e*: as,

INDICATIVE.			
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> Prö-sum	<i>Plur.</i> Prö-sümüs	Pröd-eram,	Pröd-ëro,
Pröd-ës	Pröd-estis	&c.	&c.
Pröd-est.	Prö-sunt.		

INFINITIVE—*Present.*—Pröd-esse.

EXERCISE XXI.

1. Bonis hominibus non deerunt amici. 2. Cicero reipublicae profuit. 3. Legionibus Romanis duces praefuerunt fortes. 4. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis interfuit. 5. Equitum multitudo exercitui nostro proderit. 6. Miles fortis omnibus aderit periculis. 7. Variæ cupiditates animo insunt. 8. Frigus multis plantis non prodest. 9. Militibus deerat animus. 10. Auxilium meum reipublicae non profuit.

1. To good men friends are not wanting. 2. He was not serviceable to the commonwealth. 3. A good citizen sides-with his native country in the time of danger. 4. Indolence is hurtful to all men. 5. Alexander the Great survived many battles. 6. The general was amongst his soldiers in the battle. 7. Light is serviceable to all animals. 8. The general is-at-the-head-of the army. 9. Anger has been hurtful to many. 10. The soul survives the body.

XVII.—THE PRONOUNS.

1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. Pronoun of the First Person.

		<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Egö,	<i>I</i>		Nös,		<i>we</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Mëi,	<i>of me</i>		Nostri or nostrum,		<i>of us</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Mihi,	<i>to or for me</i>		Nöbis,		<i>to or for us</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Më,	<i>me</i>		Nös,		<i>us</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Më,	<i>by, with, or from me.</i>		Nöbis,		<i>by, with, or from us.</i>

2. Pronoun of the Second Person.

		<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Tü,	<i>thou</i>		Vös,		<i>ye</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Tüi,	<i>of thee</i>		Vestri or vestrum,		<i>of you</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Tibi,	<i>to or for thee</i>		Vöbis,		<i>to or for you</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Të,	<i>thee</i>		Vös,		<i>you</i>
<i>Voc.</i> Tü,	<i>O thou</i>		Vös,		<i>O ye</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Të,	<i>by, with, or from thee.</i>		Vöbis,		<i>by, with, or from you.</i>

3. Pronoun of the Third Person.

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it, is, eā, id* is usually employed. (See p. 35.)

II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.

The Reflective Pronoun refers to the Subject of the sentence, and cannot therefore have a Nominative case.

Sing. and Plur.

Gen. <i>Sui,</i>	<i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Dat. <i>Sibi,</i>	<i>to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Acc. <i>Sē or sēsē,</i>	<i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Abl. <i>Sē or sēsē,</i>	<i>by or from himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>

There are no distinct reflective forms in the 1st and 2nd persons; the different cases of *ego* and *tu* being used reflectively: as, *mēi, of myself; tibi, to thyself, etc.*

III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined as adjectives:

M.	F.	N.	
<i>Mēus,</i>	<i>mēa,</i>	<i>mēum,</i>	<i>my or mine.</i>
<i>Tūus,</i>	<i>tūa,</i>	<i>tūum,</i>	<i>thy or thine.</i>
<i>Noster,</i>	<i>nostra,</i>	<i>nostrum,</i>	<i>our, ours.</i>
<i>Vester,</i>	<i>vestra,</i>	<i>vestrum,</i>	<i>your, yours.</i>
<i>Sūus,</i>	<i>sūa,</i>	<i>sūum,</i>	<i>his, her, its, their.</i>

EXERCISE XXII.

1. *Ego sum laetus, tu es tristis.* 2. *Pater mihi librum dat utilem.* 3. *In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus immortalis.* 4. *Patria mihi carior est quam vita.* 5. *Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt.* 6. *Parentes vobis cari sunt.* 7. *Memores sumus tui.* 8. *Amicus memor est vestri.* 9. *Memoria vestri nobis grata est.* 10. *Mihi mea vita, tibi tua (vita) cara est.*

1. Thy father is dear to thee; mine to me. 2. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, citizens! 3. In thee is all our hope and safety. 4. Thy native-land must be ever most dear to thee. 5. Thine indolence is-in-the-way, Titus! 6. A true friend will be with thee in the time of danger. 7. The memory of our works survives us. 8. In neither battle was the general amongst his soldiers. 9. He was serviceable to his friends; he was hurtful to his enemies. 10. To us the victory is joyful, to you it is most-sad.

P. R. L. L.

D

IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this (near me)*; pl. *these*.

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Hic	haec	hoc		Hi	hae	haec
Gen.	Hijus				Hörum	härum	hörum
Dat.	Huic				His		
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hoc		Hös	his	haec
Abl.	Hoc	hac	hoc		His		

2. Istē, istā, istū, *that (near you), that of yours*; pl. *those*.

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Istē	istā	istū		Istī	istae	istā
Gen.	Istius				Istörum	istārum	istörum
Dat.	Istī				Istīs		
Acc.	Istum	istam	istū		Istōs	istās	istā
Abl.	Istō	istā	istō		Istīs		

3. Illē, illā, illū, *that, that yonder*; pl. *those*.

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Illē	illā	illū		Illī	illae	illā
Gen.	Illius				Illörum	illārum	illörum
Dat.	Illī				Illīs		
Acc.	Illum	illam	illū		Illōs	illās	illā
Abl.	Illō	illā	illō		Illīs		

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Haec carmina suavissima sunt. 2. Hi montes altissimi sunt.
 3. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt. 4. Dat tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. 6. Demosthenes et Cicero clarissimi oratores fuerunt; ille erat Graecus, hic autem Romanus. 7. Iste amicus vir est optimus. 8. Ista auctoritas est maxima. 9. Memoria harum rerum nobis jucundissima est. 10. Nomen illius poëtae clarissimum est.

1. These mountains are very high and very rugged. 2. That indolence (of yours) is hurtful to you (*sing.*), Titus. 3. The immortal soul will survive this mortal body. 4. That one man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth. 5. The memory of that one day was to Cicero most delightful. 6. That song (of yours) is to me most pleasant. 7. This my son is careful and industrious. 8. This life (of ours) is short; but that-one (illa) is immortal. 9. Those hands (of yours) are always busy. 10. These citizens are serviceable to the commonwealth; those are hurtful.

V. DETERMINATE, RELATIVE, AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *Īs, eā, id, he, she, it, that*, referring to the former part of a sentence.

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Īs	eā	id		Ī	eae	eā
Gen.	Ējus				Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	Ei				Īis or eīs		
Acc.	Eum	eam	id		Eōs	eās	eā
Abl.	Eō	eā	eō		Īis or eīs		

2. *Īdem, eādem, idem, the same.*

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Īdem	eādem	idem		Īdem	eādem	eādem
Gen.	Ējusdem				Eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	Eidem				Īsdem or eīsdem		
Acc.	Eundem	eandem	idem		Eōsdem	eāsdem	eādem
Abl.	Eōdem	eādem	eōdem		Īsdem or eīsdem		

3. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, self, himself, herself, itself.*

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum		Ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
Gen.	Ipsius				Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	Ipsī				Ipsīs		
Acc.	Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum		Ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		Ipsīs		

4. Relative—*Quī, quae, quōd, who or which.*

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Quī	quae	quōd		Quī	quae	quae
Gen.	Cūjus				Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cuī				Quībus or quīs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quōd		Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō		Quībus or quīs		

5. Interrogative—*Quīs or quī, quae, quīd or quōd, who ? which ? what ?*

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Quīs or quī	quae	quīd or quōd		Quī	quae	quae
Gen.	Cūjus				Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cuī				Quībus or quīs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quīd or quōd		Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō		Quībus or quīs		

The forms *quīs* and *quīd* are used by themselves, without a Noun : as, *Quīs ēs ? who art thou ? Quīd est ? what is it ?* The forms *quī* and *quōd* are used interrogatively with a Noun : as, *Quī hōmo ēs ? what man art thou ? Quōd mārē, what sea ?*

RULE 10.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case : as, *Felix est rex quem omnēs cīvēs laudant, Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

Lēgit, (he, she, it) reads.

Lēgunt, (they) read.

EXERCISE XXIV.

A.—1. Amicum fidum habet ; ei addictus est. 2. Sallustius est elegantissimus scriptor ; ille ejus libros lēgit. 3. Qui amico in periculis adest, is verus amicus est.* 4. Ii sunt cives boni, qui reipublicae prosunt. 5. Ipse labor nobis jucundus est. 6. Fons omnium voluptatum in nobis ipsis est. 7. Melior pars tui ipsius immortalis est. 8. Non minor pugna erat cum mulieribus Cimbrorum quam cum Cimbris ipsis. 9. Idem dies erit initium vitae aeternae. 10. Non omnibus hominibus eadem prosunt.

* In translating this sentence, begin with *is verus amicus est*.

1. He has a faithful friend ; he will never injure him. 2. My brother himself is a most elegant writer. 3. (He) who gives honours to the bad is hurtful to the state.* 4. The wives of the Cimbrians were themselves brave. 5. The same (things) injure some, do good to others. 6. (He) who is hurtful to the commonwealth is hurtful to himself.* 7. The same (things) are not pleasing to all (men). 8. Demosthenes himself was not always pleasing to his (fellow) citizens. 9. Cicero is a faithful friend ; I am devoted to him. 10. Cicero is a most elegant writer ; they read his books.

* In sentences 3 and 6 begin with *qui*, and afterwards use *is* : see Latin sentences No. 3.

B.—1. Quis habet exercitum ? Quis est dux ? 2. Cujus est equus ? Cujus sunt arma ? 3. Quae civitas habet optimas leges ? 4. Quod animal est maximum et validissimum ? 5. Quorum animalium sunt vires maximae ? 6. Qui color pulcherrimus est ? 7. Qui orator optimus et dulcissimus est ? 8. Quorum arma sunt optima ? 9. Cui dat (*does he give*) coronam ? 10. Quod tempus felicius est quam praesens ?

1. Which constellation is the most beautiful ? 2. Which poet is the sweetest ? 3. Who is he ? what has he ? 4. Who gives the book to thee ? 5. To whom does he give the greatest praise ? 6. Whose (*gen. sing.*) is the victory ? Whose (*gen. pl.*) is the booty ? 7. Which tax is the greatest ? 8. Which king has the greatest taxes ? 9. What animal is more sagacious (*prudens*) than the elephant ? 10. What animal is more rapacious than the lion ?

PART I

GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

THE CASES ARRANGED AS IN THE PUBLIC SCHOOL PRIMER.

I.—THE ALPHABET. PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. *Alphabet*.—The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,
Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

The letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The remaining letters are Consonants.

The Diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use, and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

The diphthongs *ae, oe*, are pronounced as *ē*.

A Long Syllable has the mark (ˉ) over the vowel. A Short Syllable has the mark (˘) over the vowel.

2. *Parts of Speech*.—There are eight parts of speech in the Latin language.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, or Noun. | 5. Adverb. |
| 2. Adjective. | 6. Preposition. |
| 3. Pronoun. | 7. Conjunction. |
| 4. Verb. | 8. Interjection. |

There is no article in the Latin language: hence the Latin *mensā* means not only *table*, but also *a table* and *the table*.

II.—PRONUNCIATION.

The letters in Latin were probably pronounced as follows:—

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

Latin	<i>ā</i>	=	English	<i>a</i> in father.
„	<i>ǣ</i>	=	„	<i>first a</i> in away, or <i>a</i> in villa.
„	<i>ē</i>	=	„	<i>ai</i> in pain.
„	<i>æ</i>	=	„	<i>ai</i> in pain.
„	<i>oe</i>	=	„	<i>ai</i> in pain.
„	<i>ě</i>	=	„	<i>e</i> in men.
„	<i>ī</i>	=	„	<i>i</i> in machine.
„	<i>î</i>	=	„	<i>i</i> in pity.
„	<i>ō</i>	=	„	<i>o</i> in glory.
„	<i>ō</i>	=	„	<i>o</i> in top.
„	<i>ū</i>	=	„	<i>u</i> in rule.
„	<i>ũ</i>	=	„	<i>u</i> in full.
„	<i>au</i>	=	„	<i>ow</i> in power.
„	<i>eu</i>	=	„	{ Latin <i>ě</i> followed quickly by Latin <i>ũ</i> (differs little from present pronunciation).
„	<i>ei</i>	=	„	{ Latin <i>ě</i> followed quickly by Latin <i>i</i> (differs little from <i>ai</i> in plain).

CONSONANTS.

Latin	<i>c, ch</i>	=	English	<i>k</i> .
„	<i>g</i>	=	„	<i>g</i> in get.
„	<i>s</i>	=	„	<i>s</i> in sin.
„	<i>t</i> (ratio)	=	{	„ <i>t</i> in cat, not <i>sh</i> , as in nation.
„	<i>j</i>	=	„	<i>y</i> in yard.
„	<i>v</i>	=	„	<i>v</i> .
„	<i>z, ph, th</i>	=	„	<i>z, ph, th</i> .

Latin *s* between two vowels = (sometimes) English *s* in rose, e.g. 'rosa.'

III.—SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

Nouns are declined by *Number* and *Case*.

There are two Numbers: *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are six Cases: *Nominative*, *Vocative*, *Accusative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Ablative*.

There are three Genders: *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

Nouns which may be either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*.

There are five Declensions, distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen. Sing. <i>ae</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ēi</i>
Gen. Plur. <i>Ā-rum</i>	<i>Ō-rum</i>	{ <i>-um</i> <i>ī-um</i> }	<i>Ū-um</i>	<i>Ē-rum</i>

The *Stem* is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away.

The *Stems* of Nouns can be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in—

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
A	O	consonant or I	U	E

IV.—THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the First Declension ends in *ā*.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Mens- <i>ā</i> (<i>fem.</i>)	<i>a table</i>	Mens- <i>ae</i> , <i>tables</i>
Voc. Mens- <i>ā</i> ,	<i>O table</i>	Mens- <i>ae</i> , <i>O tables</i>
Acc. Mens- <i>am</i> ,	<i>a table</i>	Mens- <i>ās</i> , <i>tables</i>
Gen. Mens- <i>ae</i> ,	<i>of a table</i>	Mens- <i>Ārum</i> , <i>of tables</i>
Dat. Mens- <i>ae</i> ,	<i>to or for a table</i>	Mens- <i>is</i> , <i>to or for tables</i>
Abl. Mens- <i>ā</i> ,	<i>by, with, or from a table.</i>	Mens- <i>is</i> , <i>by, with, or from tables.</i>

NOTE.—*Filiā*, a daughter; *dēā*, a goddess; *ēquā*, a mare; *āsīnā*, a she-ass; and a few others, make the Dative and Ablative Plural in *ābūs*: *filiābūs*, *dēābūs*, *ēquābūs*, *āsīnābūs*, etc.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: *as*, *nautā*, a sailor.

The Vocabularies begin on p. 125.

RULE 1.—The Nominative Case denotes the **SUBJECT**. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in number and person : as, *puellā currit, the girl runs; puellae currunt, the girls run.*

RULE 2.—The Accusative Case denotes the **OBJECT**. Transitive verbs govern an Accusative case : as, *āquilā alās hābēt, the eagle has wings.* **NOTE.**—In Latin the verb is put last and the Accusative case before it.

Singular, 3 pers.

Currit, (*he, she, it*) runs.

Hābēt, (*he, she, it*) has.

Plural, 3 pers.

Currunt, (*they*) run.

Hābent, (*they*) have.

EXERCISE I.

1. *Filia currit.* 2. *Filiae currunt.* 3. *Regina coronam habet.*
4. *Puella coronam habet.* 5. *Filia pecuniam habet.* 6. *Femina pecuniam habet.* 7. *Roma portas habet.* 8. *Coloniae portas habent.*
9. *Puellae rosas habent.* 10. *Feminae rosas habent.* 11. *Columbae alas habent.* 12. *Insulae oras habent.*

1. The woman runs. 2. The women run. 3. The dove has wings. 4. The eagles have wings. 5. The colony has gates. 6. The island has coasts. 7. The girls have money. 8. The women have money. 9. The colony has women. 10. The island has colonies. 11. The woman has a crown. 12. The islands have roses.

RULE 3.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by the verb “To be,” they are put in the same case : as, *Britanniā est insulā, Britain is an island.* Use the Nominative case after the verb “To be.”

RULE 4.—The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive case when the one is dependent upon the other : as, *Britanniā est insulā Eurōpae, Britain is an island of Europe.*

Est, (*he*) is.

Sunt, (*they*) are.

EXERCISE II.

1. *Sicilia est insula.* 2. *Sicilia est insula Europae.* 3. *Roma est regina Italiae.* 4. *Incolae Italiae sunt poetae.* 5. *Incolae insularum sunt nautae.* 6. *Incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae.* 7. *Insula est patria nautarum.* 8. *Graecia est patria poetarum.* 9. *Amicitia est gloria vitae.* 10. *Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.*

1. Britain is the queen of islands. 2. Britain is the native-land of sailors. 3. Italy is the native-land of poets. 4. The inhabitants of Britain are sailors. 5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors. 6. The inhabitants of Gaul are husbandmen. 7. Britain is the native-land of glory. 8. Friendship is the crown of life. 9. The battle is the cause of glory. 10. The enmity of the sailors is the cause of the battle.

V.—THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension ends in ūs and ĕr, and of Neuter Nouns in um.

A. Masculine.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Dōmīn-ūs, a lord	Dōmīn-I,	lords
Voc. Dōmīn-ĕ, O lord	Dōmīn-I,	O lords
Acc. Dōmīn-um, a lord	Dōmīn-ōs,	lords
Gen. Dōmīn-I, of a lord	Dōmīn-ōrum,	of lords
Dat. Dōmīn-ō, to or for a lord	Dōmīn-is,	to or for lords
Abl. Dōmīn-ō, by, with, or from a lord.	Dōmīn-is,	by, with, or from lords.

2.

<i>Nom.</i> Māgistĕr, <i>a master</i> <i>Voc.</i> Māgistĕr, <i>O master</i> <i>Acc.</i> Māgistr-um, <i>a master</i> <i>Gen.</i> Māgistr-I, <i>of a master</i> <i>Dat.</i> Māgistr-ō, <i>to or for a master</i> <i>Abl.</i> Māgistr-ō, <i>by, with, or from</i> <i>a master.</i>	Māgistr-I, <i>masters</i> Māgistr-I, <i>O masters</i> Māgistr-ōs, <i>masters</i> Māgistr-ōrum, <i>of masters</i> Māgistr-Is, <i>to or for masters</i> Māgistr-Is, <i>by, with, or from</i> <i>masters.</i>
--	---

3.

<i>Nom.</i>	Puĕr,	<i>a boy</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	Puĕr,	<i>O boy</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Puĕr-um,	<i>a boy</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Puĕr-i,	<i>of a boy</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Puĕr-ō,	<i>to or for a boy</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Puĕr-ō,	<i>by, with, or from</i>

a boy.

Puĕr-i,	<i>boys</i>
Puĕr-i,	<i>O boys</i>
Puĕr-ōs,	<i>boys</i>
Puĕr-ōrum,	<i>of boys</i>
Puĕr-is,	<i>to or for boys</i>
Puĕr-is,	<i>by, with, or from boys.</i>

NOTE.—Proper Names in ūs make ī in the Vocative, as, Mercūrīūs, *Mercury*, Voc. Mercūrī. Also the Vocative Singular of filiūs, *a son*, is fili, and of gēnīūs, *a guardian deity*, is gēnī.

There is one Noun of the Second Declension ending in ĭr, namely, vīr, *a man* (as distinguished from a woman). It is declined like puĕr:

Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom. Vīr, a man	Vīr-I,	men
Voc. Vīr, O man	Vīr-I,	O men
Acc. Vīr-um, a man	Vīr-ōs,	men
Gen. Vīr-I, of a man	Vīr-ōrum,	of men
Dat. Vīr-ō, to or for a man	Vīr-is,	to or for men
Abl. Vīr-ō, by, with, or from a man.	Vīr-is,	by, with, or from men

B. Neuter.

	Sing.	Plur.
N.V.A.	Regn-um, a kingdom, or O kingdom	Regn-ā, kingdoms, or O kingdoms
Gen.	Regn-i, of a kingdom	Regn-ōrum, of kingdoms
Dat.	Regn-ō, to or for a kingdom	Regn-is, to or for kingdoms
Abl.	Regn-ō, by, with, or from a kingdom.	Regn-is, by, with, or from kingdoms.

NOTE.—The Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative of all Neuter Nouns are the same.

GENDER.—Most Nouns in ūs are Masculine, but names of trees are Feminine; as, mālūs, *an apple-tree*.

Three Nouns of the Second Declension ending in ūs are Neuter: vīrūs, *poison*; vulgūs, *the multitude*; pēlāgūs, *the (open) sea*. They are used only in the Singular. (N.B. Vulgus is sometimes Masculine.)

ēt, and.

EXERCISE III.

Masculine Nouns in ūs.

1. Filius currit. 2. Servi currunt. 3. Dominus servos habet. 4. Filius domini servos habet. 5. Dominus servos et equos habet. 6. Filii dominorum equos et tauros habent. 7. Avus servos et equos habet. 8. Filius amici hortum habet. 9. Filii inimicorum gladios habent. 10. Rhodanus est fluvius Galliae. 11. Rhodanus et Rhenus sunt fluvii Galliae. 12. Hortus rosas habet.

1. The slave runs. 2. The sons run. 3. The grandfather has a slave. 4. The son of the grandfather has slaves. 5. The sons of the grandfather have slaves. 6. The sons of the lords are sailors. 7. The sons of the slaves are husbandmen. 8. The lord has slaves and horses. 9. The Rhone and the Rhine are rivers of Europe. 10. The friends of the grandfather are poets. 11. The enemies of the lord have swords. 12. The rivers of the island have banks.

RULE 5.—The Dative Case indicates the person who gains or receives anything: as, māgistēr cōlumbam pūērō dāt, *the master gives a dove to the boy*.

Dāt, (he, she, it) gives.

Dant, (they) give.

EXERCISE IV.

Masculine Nouns in ēr.

Puer librum habet. 2. Magister librum puero dat. 3. Filius libros habet. 4. Dominus servos et ministros habet. 5. Dominus agrum ministro dat. 6. Socer agros et ministros habet. 7. Socer agrum genero dat. 8. Magistri libros pueris dant. 9. Gener servum puero dat. 10. Puer librum ministro dat.

1. The boys have books. 2. The lord gives a field to the boys.

3. The fathers-in-law and the sons-in-law have fields. 4. The father-in-law gives servants to the son-in-law. 5. The friends have books. 6. The enemies have servants and fields. 7. The masters give gardens to the boys. 8. The master gives doves to the boys. 9. The grandfather gives fields to the master. 10. The fathers-in-law give fields and bulls to the sons-in-law.

EXERCISE V.

Neuter Nouns.

1. Amici sunt donum coeli. 2. Amicitia est donum Dei. 3. Dona avi sunt praemia diligentiae. 4. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla. 5. Magister argentum puero dat. 6. Discipuli sunt gaudium magistrorum. 7. Bellum est causa morborum. 8. Oppidum muros et portas habet. 9. Tempa sunt gloria Graciae. 10. Romani gladios et scuta habent.

1. Friends are the gift of God. 2. The boys and girls are the joy of the grandfather. 3. The grandfather gives gold and silver to the boys. 4. Greece and Sicily have temples. 5. The temples of Greece have gifts. 6. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples. 7. The metals are the cause of war. 8. The queen has lands and towns. 9. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants. 10. The lord gives shields and swords to the servants.

VI.—ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Adjectives in ūs, ā, um, or ĕr, (ĕ)rā, (ĕ)rum, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Nouns of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Nouns of the First Declension: *as*, *bōnūs*, *bōnā*, *bōnum*, *good*; *nīgĕr*, *nigrā*, *nigrum*, *black*; *tĕnĕr*, *tĕnĕrā*, *tĕnĕrum*, *tender*.

	Sing.		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um
<i>Voc.</i>	Bōn-ĕ	bōn-ā	bōn-um
<i>Acc.</i>	Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um
<i>Gen.</i>	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	Bōn-ō	bōn-ae	bōn-ō
<i>Abl.</i>	Bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō

	1.		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā
<i>Voc.</i>	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā
<i>Acc.</i>	Bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā
<i>Gen.</i>	Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs

2.

	M.	F.	N.
<i>N. V.</i>	Nīgĕr	nigr-ā	nigr-um
<i>Acc.</i>	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um
<i>Gen.</i>	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō
<i>Abl.</i>	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā
<i>Voc.</i>	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ā
<i>Acc.</i>	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
<i>Gen.</i>	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
<i>Dat.</i>	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

	Sing.			3.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N.V.	Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ā	
Acc.	Tēnēr-um	tēnēr-am	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-ōs	tēnēr-ās	tēnēr-ā	
Gen.	Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ī	Tēnēr-ōrum	tēnēr-ārum	tēnēr-ōrum	
Dat.	Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ō	Tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs	
Abl.	Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-ō	Tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs	tēnēr-īs	

4.

FEMININE ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH FEMININE NOUN, BOTH OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.

N.V.	Parvā mensā,	a small table, or O small table
Acc.	Parvā mensam,	a small table
Gen.	Parvā mensae,	of a small table
Dat.	Parvā mensae,	to or for a small table
Abl.	Parvā mensā,	by, with, or from a small table.

Plur.

N.V.	Parvae mensae,	small tables, or O small tables
Acc.	Parvas mensas,	small tables
Gen.	Parvarum mensarum,	of small tables
Dat.	Parvis mensis,	to or for small tables
Abl.	Parvis mensis,	by, with, or from small tables.

5.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVES DECLINED ALONG WITH MASCULINE NOUNS, BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

Sing.

Nom.	Bōnūs dōmīnūs,	a good lord
Voc.	Bōnē dōmīnē,	O good lord
Acc.	Bōnum dōmīnum,	a good lord
Gen.	Bōnī dōmīnī,	of a good lord
Dat.	Bōnō dōmīnō,	to or for a good lord
Abl.	Bōnō dōmīnō,	by, with, or from a good lord

Plur.

N.V.	Bōnī dōmīnī,	good lords, or O good lords
Acc.	Bōnōs dōmīnōs,	good lords
Gen.	Bōnōrum dōmīnōrum,	of good lords
Dat.	Bōnīs dōmīnīs,	to or for good lords
Abl.	Bōnīs dōmīnīs,	by, with, or from good lords.

(B.)

Sing.

Nom.	Bōnūs pūēr,	a good boy
Voc.	Bōnē pūēr,	O good boy
Acc.	Bōnum pūērum,	a good boy
Gen.	Bōnī pūērī,	of a good boy
Dat.	Bōnō pūērō,	to or for a good boy
Abl.	Bōnō pūērō,	by, with, or from a good boy.

Plur.

<i>N.V.</i> Bōnī pūērī,	<i>good boys, or O good boys</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Bōnōs pūērōs,	<i>good boys</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Bōnōrum pūērōrum,	<i>of good boys</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Bōnīs pūērīs,	<i>to or for good boys</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Bōnīs pūērīs,	<i>by, with, or from good boys.</i>

6.

NEUTER ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH NEUTER NOUN,
BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

Sing.

<i>N.V.A.</i> Magnum regnum,	<i>a great kingdom, or O great kingdom</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Magnī regnī,	<i>of a great kingdom</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Magnō regnō,	<i>to or for a great kingdom</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Magnō regnō,	<i>by, with, or from a great kingdom.</i>

Plur.

<i>N.V.A.</i> Magnā regnā,	<i>great kingdoms, or O great kingdoms</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Magnōrum regnōrum,	<i>of great kingdoms</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Magnīs regnīs,	<i>to or for great kingdoms</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Magnīs regnīs,	<i>by, with, or from great kingdoms.</i>

(B.)

Sing. only.

<i>N.V.A.</i> Magnum pēlāgūs,	<i>the great sea</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Magnī pēlāgī,	<i>of the great sea</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Magnō pēlāgō,	<i>to or for the great sea</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Magnō pēlāgō,	<i>by, with, or from the great sea.</i>

7.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVE OF SECOND DECLENSION DECLINED WITH
MASCULINE NOUN OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.

<i>Nom.</i> Clārūs nautā,	<i>a famous sailor</i>
<i>Voc.</i> Clārē nautā,	<i>O famous sailor</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Clārum nautam,	<i>a famous sailor</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Clārī nautae,	<i>of a famous sailor</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Clārō nautae,	<i>to or for a famous sailor</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Clārō nautā,	<i>by, with, or from a famous sailor.</i>

Plur.

<i>N.V.</i> Clārī nautae,	<i>famous sailors, or O famous sailors</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Clārōs nautās,	<i>famous sailors</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Clārōrum nautārum	<i>of famous sailors</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Clārīs nautīs,	<i>to or for famous sailors</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Clārīs nautīs,	<i>by, with, or from famous sailors.</i>

RULE 6.—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Note that the Adjective in Latin is sometimes placed after the Noun.

EXERCISE VI.

A.—1. *Servus est timidus.* 2. *Columba est timida.* 3. *Gaudium est magnum.* 4. *Servi sunt mali.* 5. *Insulae sunt magnae.* 6. *Oppida sunt parva.* 7. *Muri sunt alti.* 8. *Puellae sunt bonae.* 9. *Horti sunt lati.* 10. *Alae sunt albae.*

1. The sword is long. 2. The island is long. 3. The shields are long. 4. The slaves are timid. 5. The doves are timid. 6. The towns are great. 7. The temples are small. 8. The shields are wide. 9. The kingdom is great. 10. The friends are good.

B.—1. *Columba albas alas habet.* 2. *Multae columbae albas alas habent.* 3. *Graecia multa templa habet.* 4. *Splendida templa sunt gloria Graeciae.* 5. *Bellicosa regin multas terras habet.* 6. *Oppidum magnum multas portas habet.* 7. *Magister librum bono puero dat.* 8. *Avus praemium bonae puellae dat.* 9. *Pericula nautarum sunt magna.* 10. *Dominus acutos gladios habet.*

1. The queen has many islands. 2. The queen gives swords to the inhabitants. 3. Gaul has many towns. 4. The temples are great and splendid. 5. The daughters of the women are good. 6. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword. 7. The high banks have many roses. 8. The Rhone is a great and broad river. 9. The roses of the high banks are white. 10. The Rhine is a rapid river.

C.—1. *Puer est aeger.* 2. *Puella est aegra.* 3. *Aurum templi est sacrum.* 4. *Regina est pulchra.* 5. *Filiae sunt tenerae.* 6. *Filii sunt miseri.* 7. *Morbus molestus est tenero filio.* 8. *Exemplum servi noxium puero est.* 9. *Praemia diligentiae sunt grata discipulis.* 10. *Magnus est numerus puerorum.*

1. The pupils of the master are sick. 2. The master gives a book to the sick boy. 3. The black slaves are troublesome to the lord. 4. Great is the number of black slaves. 5. The splendid gifts of the temple are sacred. 6. Great is the diligence of the beautiful girl. 7. The diligence of the girl is pleasing to the grandfather. 8. The example of the slaves is injurious to the pupils. 9. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl. 10. The master gives rewards to the beautiful girl.

VII.—THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or *i*.

A. Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

1. Nouns the stems of which end in the labial (lip) letters *p, b, m*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N. V. Trāb-s (<i>f.</i>), a beam, or O beam	Trāb-ēs, beams, or O beams	
Acc. Trāb-em, a beam	Trāb-ēs, beams	
Gen. Trāb-is, of a beam	Trāb-um, of beams	
Dat. Trāb-i, to or for a beam	Trāb-ibūs, to or for beams	
Abl. Trāb-ē, by, with, or from a beam.	Trāb-ibūs, by, with, or from beams.	

2.	
N. V. Princēp-s (<i>c.</i>), a chief, or O	Princēp-ēs, chiefs, or O chiefs
Acc. Princēp-em, a chief [chief]	Princēp-ēs, chiefs
Gen. Princēp-is, of a chief	Princēp-um, of chiefs
Dat. Princēp-i, to or for a chief	Princēp-ibūs, to or for chiefs
Abl. Princēp-ē, by, with, or from a chief.	Princēp-ibūs, by, with, or from chiefs.

3.	
N. V. Hlēm-s (<i>f.</i>), winter, or O	Hlēm-ēs, winters, or O winters
Acc. Hlēm-em, winter [winter]	Hlēm-ēs, winters
Gen. Hlēm-is, of winter	Hlēm-um, of winters
Dat. Hlēm-i, to or for winter	Hlēm-ibūs, to or for winters
Abl. Hlēm-ē, by, with, or from winter.	Hlēm-ibūs, by, with, or from winters.

2. Nouns the stems of which end in the guttural (throat) letters *c, g*. NOTE.—In the Nominative and Vocative Singular *cs, gs* are contracted into *x*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N. V. Dux (<i>c.</i>), a leader, or O leader	Dūc-ēs, leaders, or O leaders	
Acc. Dūc-em, a leader	Dūc-ēs, leaders	
Gen. Dūc-is, of a leader	Dūc-um, of leaders	
Dat. Dūc-i, to or for a leader	Dūc-ibūs, to or for leaders	
Abl. Dūc-ē, by, with, or from a leader.	Dūc-ibūs, by, with, or from leaders.	

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
N.V.	Lex (f.), <i>a law, or O law</i>		Lēg-ēs, <i>laws, or O laws</i>
Acc.	Lēg-em, <i>a law</i>		Lēg-ēs, <i>laws</i>
Gen.	Lēg-is, <i>of a law</i>		Lēg-um, <i>of laws</i>
Dat.	Lēg-i, <i>to or for a law</i>		Lēg-ibūs, <i>to or for laws</i>
Abl.	Lēg-ē, <i>by, with, or from a law.</i>		Lēg-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from laws.</i>

	3.	
N.V.	Jūdex (o.), <i>a judge, or O judge</i>	Jūdic-ēs, <i>judges, or O judges</i>
Acc.	Jūdic-em, <i>a judge</i>	Jūdic-ēs, <i>judges</i>
Gen.	Jūd'o-is, <i>of a judge</i>	Jūdic-um, <i>of judges</i>
Dat.	Jūdic-i, <i>to or for a judge</i>	Jūdic-ibūs, <i>to or for judges</i>
Abl.	Jūdic-ē, <i>by, with, or from a judge.</i>	Jūdic-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from judges.</i>

Ērāt, (*he, she, it*) *was.*

Ērant, (*they*) *were.*

EXERCISE VII.

1. Trabes sunt longae. 2. Romulus Romanorum rex erat. 3. Pax regi jucunda erat. 4. Judices erant justī. 5. Duces erant benigni. 6. Leges Romanorum severae erant. 7. Reges arces firmas habent. 8. Arx urbis est firma. 9. Hiems agricolis molesta erat. 10. Oppida regis firma erant.

1. The beams were long. 2. Rome is a city of Italy. 3. The leader of the Romans was warlike. 4. Peace was pleasant to the leaders. 5. The king gives the city to the leader. 6. The judges were kind and just. 7. The king gives a book to the severe judge. 8. The disease is troublesome to the king. 9. The example is injurious to the judges. 10. The sons of the judges are severe.

3. Nouns the stems of which end in the dental (teeth) letters *t, d*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V.	Aetā-s (f.), <i>an age, or O age</i>		Aetāt-ēs, <i>ages, or O ages</i>
Acc.	Aetāt-em, <i>an age</i>		Aetāt-ēs, <i>ages</i>
Gen.	Aetāt-is, <i>of an age</i>		Aetāt-um, <i>of ages</i>
Dat.	Aetāt-i, <i>to or for an age</i>		Aetāt-ibūs, <i>to or for ages</i>
Abl.	Aetāt-ē, <i>by, with, or from an age.</i>		Aetāt-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from</i> <i>a es.</i>

	2.	
N.V.	Lāpis (m.), <i>a stone, or O stone</i>	Lāpīd-ēs, <i>stones, or O stones</i>
Acc.	Lāpīd-em, <i>a stone</i>	Lāpīd-ēs, <i>stones</i>
Gen.	Lāpīd-is, <i>of a stone</i>	Lāpīd-um, <i>of stones</i>
Dat.	Lāpīd-i, <i>to or for a stone</i>	Lāpīd-ibūs, <i>to or for stones</i>
Abl.	Lāpīd-ē, <i>by, with, or from a stone.</i>	Lāpīd-ibūs, <i>by, with, or from</i> <i>stones.</i>

3.

<i>N.V.</i> Milē-s (c.), a soldier, or O	<i>Milit-ēs, soldiers, or O soldiers</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Milit-em, a soldier [soldier	<i>Milit-ēs, soldiers</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Milit-is, of a soldier	<i>Milit-um, of soldiers</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Milit-i, to or for a soldier	<i>Milit-ibūs, to or for soldiers</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Milit-ē, by, with, or from a soldier.	<i>Milit-ibūs, by, with, or from soldiers.</i>

RULE 7.—The Ablative case indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done: as, *dōmīnūs hastā servum occīdīt, the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place: as, *noctēs hīēmē longae sunt, the nights are long in winter.*

Occīdīt, (he, she, it) kills.

Occidunt, (they) kill.

EXERCISE VIII.

1. Miles gladio obsidem occidit. 2. Miles lapide comitem occidit. 3. Pedites custodes gladiis occidunt. 4. Tempestates auctumno inagnae sunt. 5. Equites et pedites timidi erant. 6. Custodes auri erant timidi. 7. Mors est lex naturae. 8. Civitas Romanorum clara erat. 9. Voluntas iudicis justa est. 10. Milites iudices hastis occidunt.

1. Tempests in the winter are great. 2. A tempest in the summer is troublesome. 3. A long night in the winter is pleasant. 4. The inhabitants kill the soldiers with stones. 5. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears. 6. The wish of the companion is just. 7. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers have swords. 8. The guardian of the silver was timid. 9. The boy has many stones. 10. The king has many soldiers and companions.

4. Nouns the stems of which end in the liquids *l, r,* and the sibilant *s.*

Sing.

1.

Plur.

<i>N.V.</i> Consūl (m.), a consul, or O	<i>Consūl-ēs, consuls, or O consuls</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Consūl-em, a consul [consul	<i>Consūl-ēs, consuls</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Consūl-is, of a consul	<i>Consūl-um, of consuls</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Consūl-i, to or for a consul	<i>Consūl-ibūs, to or for consuls</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Consūl-ē, by, with, or from a consul.	<i>Consūl-ibūs, by, with, or from consuls.</i>

2.

<i>N.V.</i> Clāmōr (m.), a shout, or O	<i>Clāmōr-ēs, shouts, or O shouts</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Clāmōr-em, a shout [shout	<i>Clāmōr-ēs, shouts</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Clāmōr-is, of a shout	<i>Clāmōr-um, of shouts</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Clāmōr-i, to or for a shout	<i>Clāmōr-ibūs, to or for shouts</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Clāmōr-ē, by, with, or from a shout.	<i>Clāmōr-ibūs, by, with, or from shouts.</i>

Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>N.V. Ansēr (m.), a goose, or O goose</i>	<i>Ansēr-ēs, geese, or O geese</i>	
<i>Acc. Ansēr-em, a goose</i>	<i>Ansēr-ēs, geese</i>	
<i>Gen. Ansēr-is, of a goose</i>	<i>Ansēr-um, of geese</i>	
<i>Dat. Ansēr-I, to or for a goose</i>	<i>Ansēr-Ibūs, to or for geese</i>	
<i>Abl. Ansēr-ē, by, with, or from a goose.</i>	<i>Ansēr-Ibūs, by, with, or from geese.</i>	
4.		
<i>N.V. Pātēr, a father, or O father</i>	<i>Patr-ēs, fathers, or O fathers</i>	
<i>Acc. Patr-em, a father</i>	<i>Patr-ēs, fathers</i>	
<i>Gen. Patr-is, of a father</i>	<i>Patr-um, of fathers</i>	
<i>Dat. Patr-I, to or for a father</i>	<i>Patr-Ibūs, to or for fathers</i>	
<i>Abl. Patr-ē, by, with, or from a father.</i>	<i>Patr-Ibūs, by, with, or from fathers</i>	
5.		
<i>N.V. Flōs (m.), a flower, or O flower</i>	<i>Flōr-ēs, flowers, or O flowers</i>	
<i>Acc. Flōr-em, a flower</i>	<i>Flōr-ēs, flowers</i>	
<i>Gen. Flōr-is, of a flower</i>	<i>Flōr-um, of flowers</i>	
<i>Dat. Flōr-I, to or for a flower</i>	<i>Flōr-Ibūs, to or for flowers</i>	
<i>Abl. Flōr-ē, by, with, or from a flower.</i>	<i>Flōr-Ibūs, by, with, or from flowers.</i>	

EXERCISE IX.

1. Puer patrem et matrem habet. 2. Puellae fratres et sorores habent. 3. Odores florum sunt varii. 4. Color floris est jucundus. 5. Labor aestate molestus est. 6. Calor solis molestus est. 7. Tota urbs est praeda victoris. 8. Aggeres et fossae sunt munimenta castrorum. 9. Clamor militum molestus est.

1. The father of the judge is just. 2. The mother of the soldier is sick. 3. The hostage has a brother and a sister. 4. The colours of the flowers are various. 5. The brother gives a flower to (his) sister. 6. The shout of the soldiers was great. 7. The heat of the sun is great. 8. The heat is troublesome in the summer. 9. The mounds of the camp are high. 10. The cities are the booty of the soldiers.

5. Nouns the stems of which end in *ōn* or *ōn* (*īn*).

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>N.V. Lēo (m.), a lion, or O lion</i>	<i>Lēōn-ēs, lions, or O lions</i>	
<i>Acc. Lēōn-em, a lion</i>	<i>Lēōn-ēs, lions</i>	
<i>Gen. Lēōn-is, of a lion</i>	<i>Lēōn-um, of lions</i>	
<i>Dat. Lēōn-I, to or for a lion</i>	<i>Lēōn-Ibūs, to or for lions</i>	
<i>Abl. Lēōn-ē, by, with, or from a lion.</i>	<i>Lēōn-Ibūs, by, with, or from lions.</i>	
2.		
<i>N.V. Virgō (f.), a maiden, or O maiden</i>	<i>Virgīn-ēs, maidens, or O maid-ens</i>	
<i>Acc. Virgīn-em, a maiden</i>	<i>Virgīn-ēs, maidens</i>	
<i>Gen. Virgīn-is, of a maiden</i>	<i>Virgīn-um, of maidens</i>	
<i>Dat. Virgīn-I, to or for a maiden</i>	<i>Virgīn-Ibūs, to or for maidens</i>	
<i>Abl. Virgīn-ē, by, with, or from a maiden.</i>	<i>Virgīn-Ibūs, by, with, or from maidens.</i>	

CASES ARRANGED AS IN PUBLIC SCHOOL PRIMER. [15]

EXERCISE X.

1. Leones sunt validi. 2. Virgo est timida. 3. Calor molestus est multis hominibus. 4. Consuetudo altera natura est. 5. Sermo oratoris est doctus. 6. Pavones agricolae sunt pulchri. 7. Mors hominibus certa est. 8. Multitudo morborum est infinita. 9. Juno erat dea Romanorum. 10. Vita hominibus grata est.

1. The lion is strong. 2. The maidens are timid. 3. The multitude of men is infinite. 4. The soldier kills the lion with a sword. 5. The father gives a peacock to the maiden. 6. The heat is troublesome. 7. The heat in autumn is injurious to men. 8. The discourses of the orators were learned. 9. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans. 10. The peacock was sacred to Juno.

II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V. Host- <i>is</i> (c), an enemy, or O	Host- <i>ēs</i> , enemies, or O enemies	
Acc. Host- <i>em</i> , an enemy [enemy]	Host- <i>ēs</i> , enemies	
Gen. Host- <i>is</i> , of an enemy	Host- <i>ium</i> , of enemies	
Dat. Host- <i>i</i> , to or for an enemy	Host- <i>ibūs</i> , to or for enemies	
Abl. Host- <i>ē</i> , by, with, or from an enemy.	Host- <i>ibūs</i> , by, with, or from enemies.	

Some stems in *i* have the Nominative in *e* and are thus declined :—

	2.
N.V. Nūb- <i>ēs</i> (f.), a cloud, or O	Nūb- <i>ēs</i> , clouds, or O clouds
Acc. Nūb- <i>em</i> , a cloud [cloud]	Nūb- <i>ēs</i> , clouds
Gen. Nūb- <i>is</i> , of a cloud	Nūb- <i>ium</i> , of clouds
Dat. Nūb- <i>i</i> , to or for a cloud	Nūb- <i>ibūs</i> , to or for clouds
Abl. Nūb- <i>ē</i> , by, with, or from a cloud.	Nūb- <i>ibūs</i> , by, with, or from clouds

EXERCISE XI.

1. Cives agros et hortos habent. 2. Rex civibus praemia dat. 3. Nubes atrae sunt causa tempestatum. 4. Rupes sunt durae. 5. Urbs turres altas habet. 6. Clades hostium magna erat. 7. Classis Romana duces peritos habet. 8. Valles hostibus notae erant. 9. Graecia valles angustas habet. 10. Virgo pulchram vestem habet.

1. The citizens were timid. 2. The valleys are known to the citizens. 3. The mother gives a garment to the maiden. 4. The citizens kill the enemies with swords. 5. The rocks are known to the citizens. 6. The valleys of Greece are narrow. 7. The Roman fleet has a skilful leader. 8. The maidens have beautiful garments. 9. The slaughter of the soldiers was great. 10. The leaders of the enemies were skilful.

B. Neuter Nouns.

I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

Nouns the stems of which end in *n, r, s, t*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V.A. Nōmēn, <i>a name, or O</i>	Nōmīn-ā, <i>names, or O names</i>	
Gen. Nōmīn-is, <i>of a name [name]</i>	Nōmīn-um, <i>of names</i>	
Dat. Nōmīn-i, <i>to or for a name</i>	Nōmīn-ībūs, <i>to or for names</i>	
Abl. Nōmīn-ē, <i>by, with, or from a name.</i>	Nōmīn-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from names.</i>	
	2.	
N.V.A. Fulgūr, <i>lightning, or O lightning</i>	Fulgūr-ā, <i>lightnings, or O lightnings</i>	
Gen. Fulgūr-is, <i>of lightning</i>	Fulgūr-um, <i>of lightnings</i>	
Dat. Fulgūr-i, <i>to or for lightning</i>	Fulgūr-ībūs, <i>to or for lightnings</i>	
Abl. Fulgūr-ē, <i>by, with, or from lightning.</i>	Fulgūr-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from lightnings.</i>	
	3.	
N.V.A. Crūs, <i>a leg, or O leg</i>	Crūr-ā, <i>legs, or O legs</i>	
Gen. Crūr-is, <i>of a leg</i>	Crūr-um, <i>of legs</i>	
Dat. Crūr-i, <i>to or for a leg</i>	Crūr-ībūs, <i>to or for legs</i>	
Abl. Crūr-ē, <i>by, with, or from a leg.</i>	Crūr-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from legs</i>	
	4.	
N.V.A. Ōpūs, <i>a work, or O work</i>	Ōpēr-ā, <i>works, or O works</i>	
Gen. Ōpēr-is, <i>of a work</i>	Ōpēr-um, <i>of works</i>	
Dat. Ōpēr-i, <i>to or for a work</i>	Ōpēr-ībūs, <i>to or for works</i>	
Abl. Ōpēr-ē, <i>by, with, or from a work.</i>	Ōpēr-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from works</i>	
	5.	
N.V.A. Corpūs, <i>a body, or O body</i>	Corpōr-ā, <i>bodies, or O bodies</i>	
Gen. Corpōr-is, <i>of a body</i>	Corpōr-um, <i>of bodies</i>	
Dat. Corpōr-i, <i>to or for a body</i>	Corpōr-ībūs, <i>to or for bodies</i>	
Abl. Corpōr-ē, <i>by, with, or from a body.</i>	Corpōr-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from bodies.</i>	
	6.	
N.V.A. Cāpūt, <i>a head, or O head</i>	Cāpīt-ā, <i>heads, or O heads</i>	
Gen. Cāpīt-is, <i>of a head</i>	Cāpīt-um, <i>of heads</i>	
Dat. Cāpīt-i, <i>to or for a head</i>	Cāpīt-ībūs, <i>to or for heads</i>	
Abl. Cāpīt-ē, <i>by, with, or from a head.</i>	Cāpīt-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from heads.</i>	

II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

The Nominative in *ě, āl, ār*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V.A. Mār-ě, <i>the sea, or O sea</i>	Mār-īā, <i>seas, or O seas</i>	
Gen. Mār-is, <i>of the sea</i>	Mār-ium, <i>of seas</i>	
Dat. Mār-i, <i>to or for the sea</i>	Mār-ībūs, <i>to or for seas</i>	
Abl. Mār-i, <i>by, with, or from the sea.</i>	Mār-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from seas.</i>	

Sing.		2.	Plur.
N. V. A.	Ānimāl, an animal, or O animal	Ānimāl-īā,	animals, or O ani- mals
Gen.	Ānimāl-īs, of an animal	Ānimāl-īum,	of animals
Dat.	Ānimāl-ī, to or for an animal	Ānimāl-ībūs,	to or for animals
Abl.	Ānimāl-ī, by, with, or from an animal.	Ānimāl-ībūs,	by, with, or from animals.
3.			
N. V. A.	Calcār, a spur, or O spur	Calcār-īā,	spurs, or O spurs
Gen.	Calcār-īs, of a spur	Calcār-īum,	of spurs
Dat.	Calcār-ī, to or for a spur	Calcār-ībūs,	to or for spurs
Abl.	Calcār-ī, by, with, or from a spur.	Calcār-ībūs,	by, with, or from spurs.

EXERCISE XII.

A.—1. Nomen Carthaginis clarum erat. 2. Litora erant angusta. 3. Elephanti magna capita et parva crura habent. 4. Balaenae parva ora habent. 5. Fulgur est rapidum. 6. Opus est durum et molestum. 7. Ira causa multorum scelerum est. 8. Juno antiquis temporibus erat dea. 9. Sidera nautis grata sunt. 10. Frigus hieme est molestum.

1. The name of Cicero is renowned. 2. The works of Cicero are renowned. 3. Elephants have a strong body. 4. The legs of elephants are small. 5. The mouths of whales are small. 6. Elephants have great heads and small eyes. 7. The crimes are known to the judge. 8. The cold is troublesome to the maiden. 9. The time of the year is pleasant. 10. The shore is wide.

B.—1. Maria sunt domicilia piscium. 2. Calcaria sunt decus equitis. 3. Litora maris sunt magna. 4. Nautae retia habent. 5. Vectigalia sunt magna. 6. Gramen animalibus gratum erat. 7. Calcaria equitis sunt nova. 8. Maria sunt profunda. 9. Genera animalium sunt varia. 10. Equites aurea calcaria habent.

1. The sea is deep. 2. The shores of the seas are high. 3. The deep sea is the abode of fishes. 4. The nets of the sailors are golden. 5. The king gives golden nets to the sailors. 6. The spurs of the horse-soldier are golden. 7. The king gives a golden spur to the horse-soldier. 8. The animal is strong. 9. Many animals are strong. 10. The tax is troublesome.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION, AND ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS, DECLINED TOGETHER.

1. Magnus Dux,—a great leader.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Magnūs dux	Magnī dūcēs
Voc. Magnē dux	Magnī dūcēs
Acc. Magnum dūcem	Magnōs dūcēs
Gen. Magnī dūcīs	Magnōrum dūcum
Dat. Magnō dūcī	Magnīs dūcībūs
Abl. Magnō dūcē	Magnīs dūcībūs.

2. Bŏnă Mătěr,—a good mother.

	Sing.	Plur.
N.V.	Bŏnă mătěr	Bŏnae mătērē
Acc.	Bŏnam mătrem	Bŏnās mătērē
Gen.	Bŏnae mătērīs	Bŏnārum mătērum
Dat.	Bŏnae mătēri	Bŏnīs mătēribūs
Abl.	Bŏnă mătērē	Bŏnīs mătēribūs.

3. Răpĭdum Flŭmĕn,—a rapid river.

N.V.A.	Răpĭdum flŭmĕn	Răpĭdă flŭmĭnă
Gen.	Răpĭdī flŭmĭnīs	Răpĭdŏrum flŭmĭnum
Dat.	Răpĭdŏ flŭmĭnī	Răpĭdīs flŭmĭnībūs
Abl.	Răpĭdŏ flŭmĭnĕ	Răpĭdīs flŭmĭnībūs.

VIII.—ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS end in ĕr, rīs, rĕ, and are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: as, ācĕr, ācĕrīs, ācĕrĕ, *sharp*; cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrīs, cĕlĕrĕ, *swift*.

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Ācĕr	ācĕrīs	ācĕrĕ	Ācĕrēs	ācĕrĭă
Acc.	Ācrem	ācrem	ācĕrĕ	Ācĕrēs	ācĕrĭă
Gen.	Ācĕrīs	ācĕrīs	ācĕrīs	Ācĕrium	ācĕrium
Dat.	Ācĕri	ācĕri	ācĕri	Ācĕribūs	ācĕribūs
Abl.	Ācĕri	ācĕri	ācĕri	Ācĕribūs	ācĕribūs

II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have two terminations in the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative only. They include—

1. Adjectives ending in ĭs: as, tristĭs (*masc. and fem.*), tristĕ (*neut.*), *sad*.
2. Comparatives, ending in ĭŏr, ĭŭs: as, mĕlĭŏr (*masc. and fem.*), mĕlĭŭs (*neut.*), *better*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Acc.	Trist-em	trist-ĕ	Trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Gen.	Trist-ĭs	trist-ĭs	Trist-ium	trist-ium
Dat.	Trist-ĭ	trist-ĭ	Trist-ibūs	trist-ibūs
Abl.	Trist-ĭ	trist-ĭ	Trist-ibūs	trist-ibūs

	Sing.	2.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Mĕlĭŏr	mĕlĭŭs	Mĕlĭŏr-ēs	mĕlĭŏr-ă
Acc.	Mĕlĭŏr-em	mĕlĭŭs	Mĕlĭŏr-ēs	mĕlĭŏr-ă
Gen.	Mĕlĭŏr-ĭs	mĕlĭŏr-ĭs	Mĕlĭŏr-um	mĕlĭŏr-um
Dat.	Mĕlĭŏr-ĭ	mĕlĭŏr-ĭ	Mĕlĭŏr-ibūs	mĕlĭŏr-ibūs
Abl.	Mĕlĭŏr-ĕ or ĭ	mĕlĭŏr-ĕ or ĭ	Mĕlĭŏr-ibūs	mĕlĭŏr-ibūs

III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are of various endings and declined like Nouns of the Third Declension : as, *fēlix, fortunate* ; *prūdēns, prudent*.

Sing.		1.	Plur.	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	
N. V. <i>Fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>Fēlic-ēs</i>	<i>fēlic-iā</i>	
Acc. <i>Fēlic-em</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>Fēlic-ēs</i>	<i>fēlic-iā</i>	
Gen. <i>Fēlic-īs</i>	<i>fēlic-īs</i>	<i>Fēlic-ium</i>	<i>fēlic-ium</i>	
Dat. <i>Fēlic-i</i>	<i>fēlic-i</i>	<i>Fēlic-ibūs</i>	<i>fēlic-ibūs</i>	
Abl. <i>Fēlic-i or ē</i>	<i>fēlic-i or ē</i>	<i>Fēlic-ibūs</i>	<i>fēlic-ibūs</i>	

Sing.		2.	Plur.	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	
N. V. <i>Prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>Prudent-ēs</i>	<i>prudent-iā</i>	
Acc. <i>Prūdēt-em</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>Prudent-ēs</i>	<i>prudent-iā</i>	
Gen. <i>Prudent-īs</i>	<i>prudent-īs</i>	<i>Prudent-ium</i>	<i>prudent-ium</i>	
Dat. <i>Prudent-i</i>	<i>prudent-i</i>	<i>Prudent-ibūs</i>	<i>prudent-ibūs</i>	
Abl. <i>Prudent-i or ē</i>	<i>prudent-i or ē</i>	<i>Prudent-ibūs</i>	<i>prudent-ibūs</i>	

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION, DECLINED WITH NOUNS OF FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD DECLENSIONS.

1. *Cēlērīs Sāgittā, — a swift arrow.*

Sing.	Plur.
N. V. <i>Cēlērīs sāgittā</i>	<i>Cēlērēs sāgittae</i>
Acc. <i>Cēlērem sāgittam</i>	<i>Cēlērēs sāgittas</i>
Gen. <i>Cēlērīs sāgittae</i>	<i>Cēlērum sāgittārum</i>
Dat. <i>Cēlērī sāgittae</i>	<i>Cēlērībūs sāgittis</i>
Abl. <i>Cēlērī sāgittā</i>	<i>Cēlērībūs sāgittis</i>

2. *Tristē Proelium, — a sad battle.*

Sing.	Plur.
N. A. V. <i>Tristē proelium</i>	<i>Tristiā proeliā</i>
Gen. <i>Tristīs proelii</i>	<i>Tristiūm proeliōrum</i>
Dat. <i>Tristi proeliō</i>	<i>Tristiībūs proeliis</i>
Abl. <i>Tristi proeliō</i>	<i>Tristiībūs proeliis</i>

3. *Fēlix Hōmo, — a happy man.*

Sing.	Plur.
N. V. <i>Fēlix hōmo</i>	<i>Fēlicēs hōmīnēs</i>
Acc. <i>Fēlicem hōmīnem</i>	<i>Fēlicēs hōmīnēs</i>
Gen. <i>Fēlicīs hōmīnis</i>	<i>Fēlicium hōmīnum</i>
Dat. <i>Fēlici hōmīni</i>	<i>Fēlicībūs hōmīnībūs</i>
Abl. <i>Fēlici or ē hōmīnē</i>	<i>Fēlicībūs hōmīnībūs</i>

EXERCISE XIII.

A.—1. *Ira furor brevis est.* 2. *Ira militum erat acris.* 3. *Via est facilis.* 4. *Omne initium est difficile.* 5. *Leges hominibus utiles sunt.* 6. *Vulnus militis est leve.* 7. *Carmen est dulce.* 8. *Naves hostium sunt celeres.* 9. *Tempus humanae vitae breve est.* 10. *Rex cives fideles habet.*

1. The soldiers have sharp arms. 2. The arrow is swift. 3. Labour is easy in the winter. 4. Labour is difficult in the summer. 5. Arms are useful to soldiers. 6. The soldiers have short swords. 7. The beginning of the song is difficult. 8. The songs are easy. 9. The wounds of the soldier are light. 10. The arrows are sharp and swift.

B.—1. Consilium ducis audax est. 2. Consilia ducis Romani audacia sunt. 3. Tempus praesens felix est. 4. Regnum Persarum erat potens. 5. Animalia rapacia sunt. 6. Vetus vinum est bonum. 7. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet. 8. Leges Romanorum erant praestantes. 9. Praemia equitum ingentia erant. 10. Agricolae vinum vetus habent.

1. The plans of the leader were prudent. 2. Elephants are prudent animals. 3. The booty of the Romans was immense. 4. The beginning was fortunate. 5. The Romans have excellent laws. 6. The king gives immense rewards to the soldiers. 7. Lions are rapacious animals. 8. The father gives old wine to the boy. 9. The present times are fortunate. 10. The Romans are powerful.

IX.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, and of Neuter Nouns in *u*.

Sing.		1.	Plur.
<i>N. V.</i>	<i>Grād-ūs (m.), a step, or O step</i>	<i>Grād-ūs,</i>	<i>steps, or O steps</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Grād-um, a step</i>	<i>Grād-ūs,</i>	<i>steps</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Grād-ūs, of a step</i>	<i>Grād-ūum,</i>	<i>of steps</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Grād-ūi, to or for a step</i>	<i>Grād-ībūs,</i>	<i>to or for steps</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Grād-ū, by, with, or from a step.</i>	<i>Grād-ībūs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from steps.</i>
		2.	
<i>N. V. A.</i>	<i>Gēn-u (n.), a knee or O knee</i>	<i>Gēn-ūā,</i>	<i>knees, or O knees</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Gēn-ūs, of a knee</i>	<i>Gēn-ūum,</i>	<i>of knees</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Gēn-ū, to or for a knee</i>	<i>Gēn-ībūs,</i>	<i>to or for knees</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Gēn-ū, by, with, or from a knee.</i>	<i>Gēn-ībūs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from knees.</i>

NOTE.—Some nouns of the Fourth Declension make the Dative and Ablative plural in *-ībūs*: *as, acūbūs, arcūbūs, portūbūs, vērūbūs*, with a few others. Also, the Dative Singular *ūi* is sometimes contracted into *ū*: *as, grādūi, grādū*.

EXERCISE XIV.

A.—1. Quercus sunt altae. 2. Manus hominibus utiles sunt. 3. Visus et auditus sunt utiles hominibus. 4. Acus est acuta. 5. Portus est tutus. 6. Cursus militis erat celer. 7. Arcus Scytharum leves erant. 8. Arcus coelestis varios colores habet. 9. Fructus ficūs erat dulcis. 10. Caput est sedes omnium sensuum.

1. The oak is useful to man. 2. The city has beautiful harbours. 3. The Scythians have arrows and bows. 4. The needles are sharp. 5. The girl has a sharp needle. 6. The harbours of the city are safe. 7. The number of the harbours is great. 8. Hearing and seeing are useful (*pl.*) to animals. 9. The fruit of fig-trees is sweet. 10. The soldier kills the lion with (his) hand.

B.—1. Cornua tauri acuta sunt. 2. Magister cornu puero dat. 3. Genua hominibus utilia sunt. 4. Magistratus sunt legum ministri. 5. Exercitus arma magnifica habet. 6. Duces exercitūs audaces erant. 7. Rex equitatum peditatumque* habet. 8. Voluptas sensibus grata est. 9. Oculi sunt instrumenta visūs. 10. Aures sunt instrumenta auditūs.

1. The knees of elephants are hard. 2. The horns of the stag are hard. 3. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier. 4. The magistrates are the guardians of the laws. 5. The leader of the cavalry is bold. 6. Greece has many harbours. 7. Every (omne) animal has senses. 8. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses. 9. Sharp needles are useful to women. 10. The leaders of the infantry are powerful.

* Quē, and (placed after the word which it unites to the preceding).

X.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*.

Sing.	Plur.
N. V. <i>Dī-ēs</i> , a day, or O day	<i>Dī-ēs</i> , days, or O days
Acc. <i>Dī-em</i> , a day	<i>Dī-ēs</i> , days
Gen. <i>Dī-ēi</i> , of a day	<i>Dī-Ērum</i> , of days
Dat. <i>Dī-ēi</i> , to or for a day	<i>Dī-ēbūs</i> , to or for days
Abl. <i>Dī-ē</i> , by, with, or from a day.	<i>Dī-ēbūs</i> , by, with, or from days.

NOTE.—In Nouns like *rēs*, where *ēs* is preceded by a Consonant, the *e* becomes short in Gen. and Dat. Singular: as, *rēi*. *spēi*.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *dīēs*, which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural; and *mēridiēs*, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

RULE 8.—When the Ablative Case indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition *in*, *in*: as, *hostēs in planitiē erant*, *the enemies were in the plain*. See Rule 7, p. 13.

EXERCISE XV.

1. Dies sunt sereni. 2. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est. 3. Deus est dominus omnium rerum. 4. Dux magnam victoriae spem habet. 5. Fides servorum rara erat. 6. Exercitus in magna planitie erat. 7. In acie multi pedites erant. 8. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum. 9. Facies filii pulchra erat. 10. Magna est pueri segnitias.

1. The number of days is infinite. 2. God is the creator of all things. 3. Many things are hurtful to man. 4. The mother gives many things to the girl. 5. In the line-of-battle were many horse-soldiers. 6. The cavalry was in the plain. 7. The reward was the beginning of hope. 8. The leaders have great hope of victory. 9. The fidelity of sons was rare. 10. The slothfulness of the girl is troublesome to the mother.

XI.—SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS.

The following words are thus declined :—

Dēūs, <i>m., God.</i> (2 Decl.)	
Sing.	Plur.
<i>N. V.</i> Dēūs	Dēī, DĒī, or DĪ
<i>Acc.</i> Dēum	Dēōs
<i>Gen.</i> Dēī	Dēōrum, or Deūm
<i>Dat.</i> Dēō	Dēīs, Dīīs, or Dīs
<i>Abl.</i> Dēō	Dēīs, Dīīs, or Dīs

Dōmūs, <i>f., a house.</i> (2 and 4 Decl.)	
Sing.	Plur.
Dōmūs	Dōmūs
Dōmum	Dōmōs (<i>rarely dōmūs</i>)
Dōmūs	Dōmūm, or dōmōrum
Dōmūī	Dōmībūs
Dōmō	Dōmībūs

N.B. The form *dōmī* is used only in the sense of *at home*.

Bōs, <i>c., an ox or cow.</i> (3 Decl.)	
Sing.	Plur.
<i>N. V.</i> Bōs	Bōvēs
<i>Acc.</i> Bōvem	Bōvēs
<i>Gen.</i> Bōvis	Bōvum, or bōum
<i>Dat.</i> Bōvī	Bōbūs, or būbūs
<i>Abl.</i> Bōvē	Bōbūs, or būbūs

Sēnex, <i>m., an old man.</i> (3 Decl.)	
Sing.	Plur.
Sēnex	Sēnēs
Sēnem	Sēnēs
Sēnīs	Sēnum
Sēnī	Sēnībūs
Sēnē	Sēnībūs

Vis, <i>f., strength.</i> (3 Decl.)	
Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Vis	Virēs
<i>Acc.</i> Vim	Virēs
<i>Gen.</i> wanting	Virium
<i>Dat.</i> wanting	Virībūs
<i>Abl.</i> Vi	Virībūs

Jūpītēr (= Jōv-pītēr, <i>i. e.</i> pātēr), (3 Decl.) <i>the god.</i>	
Sing.	
Jūpītēr	No plural.
Jōvem	
Jōvis	
Jōvī	
Jōvē	

Jusjūrandum, *n., an oath* (properly two words, Jūs, 3 Decl. and jūrandum, 2 Decl.).

Sing.	
<i>N. V. A.</i> Jusjūrandum	No plural.
<i>Gen.</i> Jūrisjūrandī	
<i>Dat.</i> Jūrijūrandō	
<i>Abl.</i> Jūrējūrandō	

Respublica, *f., a commonwealth, a republic* (properly two words, Res, 5 Decl. and publicā, 1 Decl.).

Sing.	
<i>N. V.</i> Respublicā	No plural.
<i>Acc.</i> Rempublicam	
<i>Gen.</i> Rēipublicae	
<i>Dat.</i> Rēipublicae	
<i>Abl.</i> Rēpublicā	

EXERCISE XVI.

A.—1. Di sunt immortales. 2. Jupiter et Neptunus sunt dii Romanorum. 3. Quercus Jovi sacrae erant. 4. Domus urbis sunt pulchrae. 5. Divitiae magnae in domo patris sunt. 6. Divitiae ingentes in domibus incolarum sunt. 7. Canes domuum custodes sunt. 8. Homines in domibus sunt, bestiae in silvis. 9. Dis sacrum est monumentum. 10. Vis fluminis ingens est.

1. Men are mortal, the gods immortal. 2. The oak is sacred to Jupiter. 3. Thunderbolts are the arms of Jupiter. 4. Many

trees are sacred to the gods. 5. The number of the gods is immense. 6. The number of the houses is immense. 7. (There) were immense riches in the houses of the citizens. 8. The monuments are sacred to the gods. 9. Jupiter has many temples in Italy. 10. Oxen have great strength (*pl.*).

B.—1. Senex est debilis et aeger. 2. Funera senum et juvenum sunt multa. 3. Nomen Ciceronis senibus notum est. 4. Boves magnas vires habent. 5. Magna est vis conscientiae. 6. Civis iusjurandum judici dat.* 7. In republica Romana sunt multi servi. 8. Respublica Romanorum potens erat. 9. Cornua bovis dura sunt. 10. Boves et equi in agro sunt.

1 The strength (*pl.*) of oxen is immense. 2. The king gives many oxen to the soldiers. 3. The old-men are feeble and sick. 4. The old-man gives gold and silver to the young-man. 5. The house of the old-man is full of riches. 6. Gold and silver are in the houses of the citizens. 7. In the Roman commonwealth were many brave citizens. 8. The friends of the commonwealth were few. 9. The grass is pleasing to the oxen. 10. The fields are sacred to Jupiter.

* Iusjurandum dat, in English, *takes the oath.*

XII.—SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following words have in the Genitive Sing. *iūs* (rarely *iūs*) and in the Dative *ī* :—

<i>ūnūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>one, alone.</i>	<i>altēr, altērā, altērūm, one of two ;</i>
<i>sōlūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>alone.</i>	<i>altēr altēr, the one</i>
<i>tōtūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>whole.</i>	<i>the other.</i>
<i>ullūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>any.</i>	<i>aliū-, aliā, aliūd, one of any</i>
<i>nullūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>no, none.</i>	<i>number ; aliūs aliūs,</i>
<i>ūtēr, utrā, utrum,</i>	<i>which of two.</i>	<i>one another ; in pl. some,</i>
<i>neutēr, neutrā, neutrum,</i>	<i>neither.</i>	<i>others.</i>

For example—

	Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ūn-ūs</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>	<i>ūn-um</i>		<i>Ūn-I</i>	<i>ūn-ae</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Ūn-um</i>	<i>ūn-am</i>	<i>ūn-um</i>		<i>Ūn-ōs</i>	<i>ūn-ās</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ūn-iūs</i>				<i>Ūn-ōrum</i>	<i>ūn-ārum</i>	<i>ūn-ōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Ūn-ī</i>				<i>Ūn-is</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Ūn-ō</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>	<i>ūn-ō</i>		<i>Ūn-is</i>		

Obs. As to the use of the Plural of *ūnūs*, see p. 26.

The Genitive Singular of *altēr* is *altērūs*, and of *aliūs* is *aliūs*.

EXERCISE XVII.

1. Virtus sola dat veram voluptatem. 2. Cives Ciceroni uni dant honorem. 3. Utri dat (*does he give*) laudem? Neutri. 4. Alii sunt docti, alii indocti. 5. Aliūs (*gen.*) vires, alius (*gen.*) divitiae sunt magnae. 6. Alter est Graecus, alter Romanus. 7. Tota vita

hominis memorabilis erat. 8. Alteri (*dat.*) laudem, alteri (*dat.*) culpam dant. 9. Neutri dat totam laudem. 10. Neutra civitas habet laudem ullam.

1. He gives the whole booty to the soldiers. 2. Cicero alone was pleasing to the citizens. 3. He was troublesome to neither. 4. To which-of-the-two does he give the praise? 5. Neither of the men has any abode. 6. Virtue alone gives true honours. 7. Life is troublesome to no good man. 8. Rome alone was head of (all) cities. 9. He was unfriendly to neither. 10. The one was pleasing to the citizens, the other was troublesome.

XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three Degrees of Comparison : Positive, Comparative, and Superlative : as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Altūs, <i>high.</i>	Altīōr, <i>higher.</i>	Altissimūs, { <i>highest, most high,</i> or <i>very high.</i>

The Comparative is formed by adding *īōr* and the Superlative by adding *issimūs* to the Positive, after taking away the termination of the Genitive Singular: as,

Nom.	Posit.	Gen.	Comp.	Sup.
Altūs,		Alt-ī,	Alt-īōr,	Alt-issimūs,
Lēvis,		Lēv-īs,	Lēv-īōr,	Lēv-issimūs,
Fēlix,		Fēlic-īs,	Fēlic-īōr,	Fēlic-issimūs,
Prūdēns,		Prūdēt-īs,	Prūdēt-īōr,	Prūdēt-issimūs.
		<i>high,</i>		
		<i>light,</i>		
		<i>fortunate,</i>		
		<i>prudent,</i>		

The Comparative is declined on p. 18 (*mēl-īōr*). The Superlative is declined like *bōnus*, *bōna*, *bōnum*.

EXCEPTIONS. — I. Adjectives ending in *ēr* form the Superlative in *rīmūs*: as,

Nom.	Posit.	Gen.	Comp.	Sup.
pulchēr,		pulchr-ī,	pulchr-īōr,	pulcher-rīmūs.
libēr,		libēr-ī,	libēr-īōr,	liber-rīmūs.
ācēr,		ācr-īs,	ācr-īōr,	ācer-rīmūs.
cēlēr,		cēlēr-īs,	cēlēr-īōr,	cēler-rīmūs.
		<i>beautiful,</i>		
		<i>free,</i>		
		<i>sharp,</i>		
		<i>swift,</i>		

Also *vētūs* (*Gen.* *vētēr-īs*), *old*, has a Superlative, *vētēr-rīmūs*.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *līmūs*: as,

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
fācilis,	fācil-īōr,	fācil-līmūs.
difficilis,	difficil-īōr,	d'fficil-līmūs.
sīmilis,	sīmīl-īōr,	sīmīl-līmūs.
dissimilis,	dissimīl-īōr,	dissimīl-līmūs.
grācilis,	grācil-īōr,	grācil-līmūs.
hūmilis,	hūmīl-īōr,	hūmīl-līmūs.
	<i>easy,</i>	
	<i>difficult,</i>	
	<i>like,</i>	
	<i>unlike,</i>	
	<i>thin,</i>	
	<i>low,</i>	

III. Adjectives ending in *dīcūs*, *fīcūs*, and *vōlūs*, form their Comparatives in *entiōr* and their Superlatives in *entissimūs*: as,

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
mālēdīcūs,	<i>slanderous,</i>	mālēdīcentiōr,	mālēdīcentissimūs.
bēnēfīcūs,	<i>beneficent,</i>	bēnēfīcentiōr,	bēnēfīcentissimūs.
bēnēvōlūs,	<i>benevolent,</i>	bēnēvōlentiōr,	bēnēvōlentissimūs.

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb *māgis*, *more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb *maximē*, *most*: as, *noxīūs*, *hurtful*; *māgis noxīūs*, *more hurtful*; *maximē noxīūs*, *most hurtful*.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
bōnūs,	<i>good,</i>	mēllor,	optimūs.
mālūs,	<i>bad,</i>	pējor,	pessimūs.
magnūs,	<i>great,</i>	mājor,	maximūs.
parvūs,	<i>small,</i>	mīnor,	minimūs.
multūs,	<i>much,</i>	plūs (<i>see below</i>),	plūrimūs.
nēquam (<i>not declined</i>),	<i>worthless,</i>	nēquiōr,	nēquissimūs.
dīves,	<i>rich,</i>	dītior,	dītissimūs.
sēnex,	<i>old,</i>	sēnior [<i>nātū mājor</i>],	[<i>nātū maximūs</i>].
jūvēnis,	<i>young,</i>	jūnior [<i>nātū mīnor</i>],	[<i>nātū minimūs</i>].
sūpērus,	<i>upper,</i>	sūpērior,	suprēmūs, summūs.
infērus,	<i>lower,</i>	infērior,	infimūs, imūs.
extērus,	<i>outside,</i>	extērior,	extrēmūs, extimūs.
intērus,	<i>inside,</i>	intērior,	intimūs.
postērus,	<i>behind,</i>	posterior,	postrēmūs, post-ūmūs.
—	—	prior (<i>former</i>),	primūs (<i>first</i>).
—	—	prōpior (<i>nearer</i>),	proximūs (<i>nearest next</i>).
—	—	ultērior (<i>further</i>),	ultimūs (<i>furthest, last</i>).

	Singular. Neut. only.		Plural. Masc. and Fem.		Plural. Neut.
Nom. & Acc.	Plūs		Plūrēs		Plūrā
Gen.	Plūris		Plūrium		Plūrium
Dat.	Plūri		Plūribūs		Plūribūs
Abl.	Plūrē		Plūribūs		Plūribūs

RULE 9.—The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin *quam* (indeclinable).

EXERCISE XVIII.

- A.—1. Aestate dies longiores sunt quam noctes. 2. Tempore hiberno dies sunt breviores. 3. Lepores timidiores sunt quam canes. 4. Noctes brevissimae sunt aestate. 5. Roma clarissima

urbs Italiae erat. 6. Ferrum utilissimum est metallorum. 7. Radices arborum longissimae sunt. 8. Nihil est amabilius quam virtus. 9. Lux est velocior quam sonitus. 10. Nihil in amicitia perniciosius est quam adulatio.

1. Men are stronger than women. 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. The hare is a very timid animal. 4. Nothing is more excellent than virtue. 5. The roots of oak-trees are very strong and very long. 6. The Rhine is a very rapid river. 7. The eyes of the eagle are very keen. 8. The days are calmer in summer than in winter. 9. In winter time the light is feebler than in summer. 10. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.

B.—1. In bello miserrimi sunt agricolae. 2. Filiae matri sunt simillimae. 3. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima erant. 4. Pulcherrima est imago regis. 5. Facillimi erant labores militum. 6. Pulcherrima animalia non semper sunt utilissima. 7. Veterrima vina non semper sunt dulcissima. 8. Vultures acerrimos habent oculos. 9. Pulcherrimi sunt colores florum. 10. In Helvetia sunt asperissimi montes.

1. The scent of flowers is very sweet. 2. The work is very difficult. 3. The journey was very long and very rough. 4. The eyes of the vulture are very keen. 5. Helvetia is a very rugged land. 6. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest. 7. The legs of the stag are very slender. 8. The son was very like (his) father (*dat.*). 9. War is the cause of many crimes. 10. In summer the sun is more powerful than in winter.

C.—1. Nihil est melius quam sapientia. 2. Sol major est quam terra. 3. Luna minor est quam terra. 4. Plurima et maxima animalia sunt in mari. 5. Optimae erant leges Romanae. 6. Pessimae sunt consuetudines discipulorum. 7. Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria. 8. Simulatio amoris est pejor quam odium. 9. Cato optimus erat suae aetatis orator. 10. Aquilae vis maxima est.

1. Hatred is better than flattery. 2. Very many men give the greatest praise to Cato. 3. The best orator is not always the best citizen. 4. The most wicked men slay the most excellent (men). 5. No state was ever more renowned than Rome. 6. The best men are not always the most powerful. 7. They give the honour to the most excellent citizens. 8. Very many islands are larger than Sicily. 9. Sicily is a smaller island than Britain. 10. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.

XIV.—THE NUMERALS.

Cardinal Numerals denote number simply or absolutely : as, ūnūs, *one* ; dūō, *two* ; trēs, *three*.

The declension of ūnūs is given on p. 23.

Obs. Ūnūs is used in the Plural with Plural Nouns which have a singular meaning : as, ūnā castrā, *one camp* ; ūnae aedēs, *one house* ; ūnae littērae, *one letter*.

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	I	ūnus	primus.
2	II	dūō	sēcundus <i>or</i> altēr.
3	III	trēs	tertius.
4	IV	quattūōr (quātūōr)	quartus.
5	V	quinquē	quintus.
6	VI	sex	sextus.
7	VII	septem	septimus.
8	VIII	octō	octāvus.
9	IX	nōvem	nōnus.
10	X	dēcem	dēcimus.
11	XI	undēcim	undēcimus.
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcimus.
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertius dēcimus.
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcimus.
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus dēcimus.
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcimus.
17	XVII	septemdēcim	septimus dēcimus.
18	XVIII	duōdēviginti	duōdēvicēsīmus.
19	XIX	undēviginti	undēvicēsīmus.
20	XX	vīginti	vicēsīmus.
21	XXI	ūnus et vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti ūnus	primus et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus primus.
22	XXII	duō et vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti duō	alter et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus alter.
23	XXIII	trēs et vīginti <i>or</i> vīginti trēs	tertius et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus tertius.
28	XXVIII	duōdētrīgintā	duōdētrīgēsīmus.
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsīmus.
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsīmus.
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus.
50	L	quinqūāgintā	quinqūāgēsīmus.
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus.
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus.
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus.
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus.
100	C	centum	centēsīmus.
200	CC	dūcentī, <i>ae</i> , &	ducentēsīmus.
300	CCC	trēcentī, <i>ae</i> , &	trecentēsīmus.
400	CCCC	quadringentī, <i>ae</i> , &	quadringentēsīmus.
500	D <i>or</i> IↃ	quingenti, <i>ae</i> , &	quingentēsīmus.
600	DC	sexcentī, <i>ae</i> , &	sexcentēsīmus.
700	DCC	septingentī, <i>ae</i> , &	septingentēsīmus.
800	DCCC	octingentī, <i>ae</i> , &	octingentēsīmus.
900	DCCCC	nongentī, <i>ae</i> , &	nongentēsīmus.
1,000	M <i>or</i> CIↃ	millē	millēsīmus.
2,000	MM	duō millia	bis millēsīmus.
100,000	CCCIↃↃↃ	centum millia	centiēs millēsīmus.

Dŭō, *two*, trēs, *three*, and milliā, *thousands*, are declined as follows :—

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	N.
Nom.	Dŭ-ō	dŭ-ae	dŭ-ō	Trēs	triā	Milliā
Acc.	Dŭ-ōs or dŭ-ō	dŭ-ās	dŭ-ō	Trēs or triis	triā	Milliā
Gen.	Dŭ-ōrum	dŭ-ārum	dŭ-ōrum	Trium	triūm	Milliūm
Dat.	Dŭ-ōbŭs	dŭ-ābŭs	dŭ-ōbŭs	Tribŭs	tribŭs	Millibŭs
Abl.	Dŭ-ōbŭs	dŭ-ābŭs	dŭ-ōbŭs	Tribŭs	tribŭs	Millibŭs

Obs. Ambō, *both*, is declined like dŭŕ.

Millē, *a thousand*, in the singular, is an indeclinable adjective; but milliā, *thousands*, in the plural, is a Substantive: as, millē hōmīnēs, *a thousand men*; but dŭō milliā hōmīnum, *two thousand men*, literally, *two thousands of men*.

The Cardinal Numerals from quattuōr, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

Dŭcentī, ae, ā, *two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Ordinal Numerals denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series: as, primŭs, *first*; secŭndŭs, or altēr, *second*. They are declined regularly as adjectives.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos. 2. Magister puero tres libros dat. 3. Sunt (*there are*) sedecim mala, viginti pruna, undeviginti pira, duodeviginti cerasa. 4. In capite hominis sexaginta tria sunt ossa. 5. In exercitu Alexandri Magni duodecim millia Macedonum erant. 6. Xerxes habet classem mille ducentarum navium. 7. In legione Romana erant cohortes decem, manipuli triginta, centuriae sexaginta. 8. Septem erant reges Romani; primus erat Romulus, secundus Numa Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quartus Ancus Martius, quintus Tarquinius Priscus, sextus Servius Tullius, septimus Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Augustus octavus est anni mensis. 10. Manipulus erat trigesima pars legionis Romanae.

1. The wise (men) of Greece were seven. 2. The first king of Rome was warlike. 3. They slay the tenth part of the men. 4. In a Roman legion (there) were ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries. 5. They slay ten thousand men (*gen.*) in the war. 6. The second king of Rome was just and mild. 7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and wicked. 8. In the first month of the year (there) are thirty-one days. 9. Rome has two consuls. 10. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers (*gen.*), three hundred horse-soldiers.*

* The number of soldiers in a legion varied considerably at different periods.

XV.—THE VERB SUM, *I am.*

Sum, fūi, fūtūrūs, eessē,—to be. Stem: ēs-, fu-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Sum,	<i>I am</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Sūmūs,	<i>We are</i>
Es,	thou art	Estīs,	ye are
Est,	he is.	Sunt,	they are.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ēram,	<i>I was</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ērāmūs,	<i>We were</i>
Ērās,	thou wast	Ērātīs,	ye were
Ērāt,	he was.	Ērant,	they were.

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ēro,	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ērīmūs,	<i>We shall be</i>
Ērīs,	thou wilt be	Ērītīs,	ye will be
Ērit,	he will be.	Ērunt,	they will be.

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fui,	<i>I have been, or</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fuīmūs,	<i>We have been, or</i>
	<i>I was</i>		<i>we were</i>
Fuistī,	thou hast been, or	Fuistīs,	ye have been, or
	thou wast		ye were
Fuīt,	he has been, or	Fuērunt }	they have been, or
	he was.	or fuērē }	they were.

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fuēram,	<i>I had been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fuērāmūs,	<i>We had been</i>
Fuērās,	thou hadst been	Fuērātīs,	ye had been
Fuērāt,	he had been.	Fuērant,	they had been.

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fuēro,	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fuērīmūs,	<i>We shall have been</i>
Fuērīs,	thou wilt have been	Fuērītīs,	ye will have been
Fuērīt,	he will have been.	Fuērint,	they will have been

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE:

<i>Sing.</i> Ēs,	<i>Be thou.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Estō,	<i>Be ye.</i>
------------------	-----------------	--------------------	---------------

2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Estō,	<i>Thou shalt or must</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Estōtō,	<i>Ye shall or must</i>
	<i>be</i>		<i>be</i>
Estō,	he shall or must be.	Suntō.	they shall or must
			be.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>Sim,</i>	<i>I may be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <i>Simūs,</i>	<i>We may be</i>
<i>Sis,</i>	<i>thou mayst be</i>	<i>Sitīs,</i>	<i>ye may be</i>
<i>Sit,</i>	<i>he may be.</i>	<i>Sint,</i>	<i>they may be.</i>

Obs. The first and third Persons singular and plural of the Present Subjunctive are often used as Imperatives; as, *sint cives iustī,* let the citizens be just.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>Essem</i> or <i>fōrem,</i>	<i>I might be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <i>Essēmūs</i> or <i>fōrēmūs,</i>	<i>We might be</i>
<i>Essēs</i> or <i>fōrēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst be</i>	<i>Essētīs</i> or <i>fōrētīs,</i>	<i>ye might be</i>
<i>Essēt</i> or <i>fōrēt,</i>	<i>he might be.</i>	<i>Essent</i> or <i>fōrent,</i>	<i>they might be.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>Fuērim,</i>	<i>I may have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <i>Fuērimūs,</i>	<i>We may have been</i>
<i>Fuērīs,</i>	<i>thou mayst have been</i>	<i>Fuērītīs,</i>	<i>ye may have been</i>
<i>Fuērīt,</i>	<i>he may have been.</i>	<i>Fuērint,</i>	<i>they may have been.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>Fuissem,</i>	<i>I should</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <i>Fuissēmūs,</i>	<i>We should</i>
<i>Fuissēs,</i>	<i>thou wouldst</i>	<i>Fuissētīs,</i>	<i>ye would</i>
<i>Fuissēt,</i>	<i>he would</i>	<i>Fuissent,</i>	<i>they would</i>

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, and IMPERFECT,	} <i>Essē,</i>	<i>to be.</i>
INFINITIVE PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT,		
	} <i>Fuissē,</i>	<i>to have been.</i>
INFINITIVE FUTURE,	} <i>Fūtūrūs essē, or fōrē,</i>	<i>to be about to be.</i>
PARTICIPLE FUTURE,		
	} <i>Fūtūrūs, -a, -um,</i>	<i>about to be.</i>

NOTE.—A vowel before another vowel is usually short, and will therefore in future not always be marked.

Obs. *Fūtūrūs* may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: as, *fūtūrūs sum, I am about to be; fūtūrūs eram, I was about to be, &c.*

EXERCISE XX.

The Verb Sum.—Indicative Mood.

A.—1. *Sum laetus.* 2. *Es tristis.* 3. *Non diligens fuisti.* 4. *Probi filii gaudium patris erunt.* 5. *Opera tua multis hominibus erunt utilia.* 6. *Dux vester ero: victores erimus.* 7. *Si contenti eritis, pauperes non eritis.* 8. *Multi erunt pauperes, qui (who) divites fuerant.* 9. *Cives urbis liberae sumus.* 10. *Custodes miserae puellae fuistis.*

1. We are joyful. 2. Ye are sad. 3. I am a Roman citizen.

4. The, contented (*pl.*) are always joyful; the rich (*pl.*) are often sad. 5. If ye are good, ye are rich. 6. If thou wilt be diligent, thou wilt be learned. 7. The wicked man is not free. 8. They had been unlearned, now they are learned. 9. Ye will be rich and free. 10. The Roman state was renowned.

Imperative Mood.

B.—1. *Judex custos severus juris esto.* 2. *Probi este, pueri, et felices eritis.* 3. *Discipuli sunto attentī.* 4. *Judices justī sunto.* 5. *Reipublicae salus civibus cara esto.* 6. *Amici fideles sunto.* 7. *Reges patres patriae sunto.* 8. *Attenti este, discipuli.* 9. *Contenti estote sorte vestra.* 10. *Praeceptorum memores este.*

1. Be diligent, scholars. 2. Praise shall be the reward of diligence. 3. Be faithful, friends! 4. The judge must be just. 5. They are contented; they shall be rich. 6. There must be no cause of enmity; we are faithful friends. 7. Be just, be upright; thou wilt be successful. 8. Be brave, soldiers! 9. Let the citizens be (*sint*) free, let them be happy! 10. The city shall be the booty of the soldiers.

XVI.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

Absum,	<i>I am absent.</i>
Adsum,	<i>I am present, stand by, side with.</i>
Dēsum,	<i>I am wanting.</i>
Insum,	<i>I am in.</i>
Intersum,	<i>I am among.</i>
Obsum,	<i>I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.</i>
Praesum,	<i>I am before, am at the head of.</i>
Prōsum,	<i>I am serviceable, do good to.</i>
Subsum,	<i>I am under, or amongst.</i>
Sūpersum,	<i>I remain over, survive.</i>

All these compounds of Sum are followed by the Dative Case. They are conjugated like Sum, but Prōsum takes "before *e* : as,

INDICATIVE.

		<i>Present.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	Prō-sum	<i>Plur.</i>	Prō-sūmūs
	Prōd-ēs		Prōd-estis
	Prōd-est.		Prō-sunt.
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Future.</i>	
	Prōd-eram,		Prōd-ēro
	&c.		&c.

INFINITIVE—*Present.*
Prōd-esse.

EXERCISE XXI.

1. Bonis hominibus non deerunt amici. 2. Cicero reipublicae profuit. 3. Legionibus Romanis duces praefuerunt fortes. 4. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis interfuit. 5. Equitum multitudo exercitui nostro proderit. 6. Miles fortis omnibus aderit periculis. 7. Variæ cupiditates animo insunt. 8. Frigus multis plantis non prodest. 9. Militibus deerat animus. 10. Auxilium meum reipublicae non profuit.

1. To good men friends are not wanting. 2. He was not serviceable to the commonwealth. 3. A good citizen sides-with his native country in the time of danger. 4. Indolence is hurtful to all men. 5. Alexander the Great survived many battles. 6. The general was amongst his soldiers in the battle. 7. Light is serviceable to all animals. 8. The general is-at-the-head-of the army. 9. Anger has been hurtful to many. 10. The soul survives the body.

XVII.—THE PRONOUNS.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. Pronoun of the First Person.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Ēgō, I	Nōs,	<i>we</i>
Acc.	Mē, me	Nōs,	<i>us</i>
Gen.	Mēi, of me	Nostri or nostrum,	<i>of us</i>
Dat.	Mihi, to or for me	Nōbis,	<i>to or for us</i>
Abl.	Mē, by, with, or from me.	Nōbis,	<i>by, with, or from us.</i>

2. Pronoun of the Second Person.

	Sing.		Plur.
N. V.	Tū, thou	Vōs,	<i>ye</i>
Acc.	Tē, thee	Vōs,	<i>you</i>
Gen.	Tui, of thee	Vestri or vestrum,	<i>of you</i>
Dat.	Tibi, to or for thee	Vōbis,	<i>to or for you</i>
Abl.	Tē, by, with, or from thee.	Vōbis,	<i>by, with, or from you.</i>

3. Pronoun of the Third Person.

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it, is, eā, id* is usually employed. (See p. 35.)

II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.

The Reflective Pronoun refers to the Subject of the sentence, and cannot therefore have a Nominative case.

Sing. and Plur.

<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Sē or sēsē,</i>	<i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Sui,</i>	<i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Sibi,</i>	<i>to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Sē or sēsē,</i>	<i>by or from himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>

There are no distinct reflective forms in the 1st and 2nd persons; the different cases of *ego* and *tu* being used reflectively: as *mei, of myself; tibi, to thyself, etc.*

III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined as adjectives:

M.	F.	N.	
<i>Mēus,</i>	<i>mēa,</i>	<i>mēum,</i>	<i>my or mine.</i>
<i>Tūus,</i>	<i>tūa,</i>	<i>tūum,</i>	<i>thy or thine.</i>
<i>Noster,</i>	<i>nostra,</i>	<i>nostrum,</i>	<i>our, ours.</i>
<i>Vester,</i>	<i>vestra,</i>	<i>vestrum,</i>	<i>your, yours.</i>
<i>Sūs,</i>	<i>sua,</i>	<i>suum,</i>	<i>his, her, its, their.</i>

EXERCISE XXII.

1. *Ego sum laetus, tu es tristis.* 2. *Pater mihi librum dat utilem.* 3. *In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus immortalis.* 4. *Patria mihi carior est quam vita.* 5. *Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt.* 6. *Parentes vobis cari sunt.* 7. *Memores sumus tui.* 8. *Amicus memor est vestri.* 9. *Memoria vestri nobis grata est.* 10. *Mihi mea vita, tibi tua (vita) cara est.*

1. Thy father is dear to thee; mine to me. 2. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, citizens! 3. In thee is all our hope and safety. 4. Thy native-land must be ever most dear to thee. 5. Thine indolence is-in-the-way, Titus! 6. A true friend will be with thee in the time of danger. 7. The memory of our works survives us. 8. In neither battle was the general amongst his soldiers. 9. He was serviceable to his friends; he was hurtful to his enemies. 10. To us the victory is joyful, to you it is most-sad.

IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this (near me) ; pl. these.*

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Hic	haec	hoc		Hi	hae	haec
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hoc		Hos	hās	haec
Gen.	Huius				Horum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	Huic				His		
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc		His		

2. Istē, istā, istū, *that (near you), that of yours ; pl. those.*

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Istē	istā	istū		Istī	istae	istā
Acc.	Istum	istam	istū		Istōs	istās	istā
Gen.	Istius				Istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	Istī				Istīs		
Abl.	Istō	istā	istō		Istīs		

3. Illē, illā, illū, *that, that yonder ; pl. those.*

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Illē	illā	illū		Illi	illae	illā
Acc.	Illum	illam	illū		Illōs	illās	illā
Gen.	Illius				Illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	Illi				Illīs		
Abl.	Illō	illā	illō		Illīs		

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Haec carmina suavissima sunt. 2. Hi montes altissimi sunt. 3. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt. 4. Dat tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. 6. Demosthenes et Cicero clarissimi oratores fuerunt; ille erat Graecus, hic autem Romanus. 7. Iste amicus vir est optimus. 8. Ista auctoritas est maxima. 9. Memoria harum rerum nobis jucundissima est. 10. Nomen illius poetae clarissimum est.

1. These mountains are very high and very rugged. 2. That indolence (of yours) is hurtful to you (*sing.*), Titus. 3. The immortal soul will survive this mortal body. 4. That one man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth. 5. The memory of that one day was to Cicero most delightful. 6. That song (of yours) is to me most pleasant. 7. This my son is careful and industrious. 8. This life (of ours) is short; but that-one (illa) is immortal. 9. Those hands (of yours) are always busy. 10. These citizens are serviceable to the commonwealth; those are hurtful.

V. DETERMINATE, RELATIVE, AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *Īs, eā, ĭd, he, she, it, that*, referring to the former part of a sentence.

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Īs	eā	ĭd		Ī	eae	eā
Acc.	Eum	eam	ĭd		Eōs	eās	eā
Gen.	Ējus				Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	Ei				Īis or eīs		
Abl.	Eō	eā	eō		Īis or eīs		

2. *Īdem, eādem, ĭdem, the same*

Nom.	Īdem	eādem	ĭdem		Īdem	eādem	eādem
Acc.	Eundem	eandem	ĭdem		Eōdem	eādem	eādem
Gen.	Ējusdem				Eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	Eidem				Īidem or eīdem		
Abl.	Eōdem	eādem	eōdem		Īidem or eīdem		

3. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, self, himself, herself, itself.*

Nom.	Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum		Ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
Acc.	Ipsūm	ipsam	ipsum		Ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
Gen.	Ipsius				Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	Ipsī				Ipsīs		
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		Ipsīs		

4. Relative—*Qui, quae, quōd, who or which.*

Nom.	Qui	quae	quōd		Qui	quae	quae
Acc.	Quem	quam	quōd		Quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	Cūjus				Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cui				Quībus or quīs		
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō		Quībus or quīs		

5. Interrogative—*Quīs or qui, quae, quīd or quōd, who ? which ? what ?*

Nom.	Quīs or qui	quae	quīd or quōd		Qui	quae	quae
Acc.	Quem	quam	quīd or quōd		Quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	Cūjus				Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cui				Quībus or quīs		
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō		Quībus or quīs		

The forms *quīs* and *quīd* are used by themselves, without a Noun : as, *Quīs es ? who art thou ? Quīd est ? what is it ?* The forms *qui* and *quōd* are used interrogatively with a Noun : as, *Qui hōmo es ? what man art thou ? Quōd mārē, what sea ?*

RULE 10.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case : as, *Felix est rex quem omnes civēs laudant, Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

Lēgit, (he, she, it) reads.

Lēgunt, (they) read.

EXERCISE XXIV.

A.—1. Amicum fidum habet; ei addictus est. 2. Sallustius est elegantissimus scriptor; ille ejus libros legit. 3. Qui amico in periculis adest, is verus amicus est.* 4. Ii sunt cives boni, qui reipublicae prosunt. 5. Ipse labor nobis jucundus est. 6. Fons omnium voluptatum in nobis ipsis est. 7. Melior pars tui ipsius immortalis est. 8. Non minor pugna erat cum mulieribus Cimbrorum quam cum Cimbris ipsis. 9. Idem dies erit initium vitae aeternae. 10. Non omnibus hominibus eadem prosunt.

* In translating this sentence, begin with *is verus amicus est.*

1. He has a faithful friend; he will never injure him. 2. My brother himself is a most elegant writer. 3. (He) who gives honours to the bad is hurtful to the state.* 4. The wives of the Cimbrians were themselves brave. 5. The same (things) injure some, do good to others. 6. (He) who is hurtful to the commonwealth is hurtful to himself.* 7. The same (things) are not pleasing to all (men). 8. Demosthenes himself was not always pleasing to his (fellow) citizens. 9. Cicero is a faithful friend; I am devoted to him. 10. Cicero is a most elegant writer; they read his books.

* In sentences 3 and 6 begin with *qui*, and afterwards use *is*: see Latin sentences No. 3.

B.—1. Quis habet exercitum? Quis est dux? 2. Cujus est equus? Cujus sunt arma? 3. Quae civitas habet optimas leges? 4. Quod animal est maximum et validissimum? 5. Quorum animalium sunt vires maximae? 6. Qui color pulcherrimus est? 7. Qui orator optimus et dulcissimus est? 8. Quorum arma sunt optima? 9. Cui dat (*does he give*) coronam? 10. Quod tempus felicius est quam praesens?

1. Which constellation is the most beautiful? 2. Which poet is the sweetest? 3. Who is he? what has he? 4. Who gives the book to thee? 5. To whom does he give the greatest praise? 6. Whose (*gen. sing.*) is the victory? Whose (*gen. pl.*) is the booty? 7. Which tax is the greatest? 8. Which king has the greatest taxes? 9. What animal is more sagacious (*prudent*), ^{than} the elephant? 10. What animal is more rapacious than the lion?

XVIII.—THE VERB.

Latin Verbs have two Voices :

I. ACTIVE.

II. PASSIVE.

Verbs have two Parts :

I. FINITE.

II. INFINITE.

I. THE VERB FINITE has Three Moods :

- (1.) The INDICATIVE MOOD.
- (2.) The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
- (3.) The IMPERATIVE MOOD.

II. THE VERB INFINITE consists of Verbal Nouns and Adjectives :

- (1.) The INFINITIVE, which is a Verbal Noun.
- (2.) The PARTICIPLE, which is a Verbal Adjective.
- (3.) The SUPINE, } which are Verbal Nouns.
- (4.) The GERUND, }

Verbs have SIX TENSES :

I. Three expressing unfinished action :

Present.
Imperfect.
Future Simple.

II. Three expressing finished action :

Perfect.
Pluperfect.
Future Perfect.

Obs. The Perfect has the meaning of both a Present-Perfect and of an Indefinite-Past: thus, *amāvi* signifies, *I have loved*, and *I loved*.

Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each number.

Latin Verbs are arranged in four Classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the final letter of the Stem, which is seen in the Infinitive Active. The Stem of

Infinitive.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| I. The First Conjugation ends in A: | as, amā-rē, to love. |
| II. The Second " " E: | as, mōnē-rē, to advise. |
| III. The Third " " { a Consonant } | as, { rēg-ērē, to rule. |
| | { or U: } as, { lu-ērē, to pay. |
| IV. The Fourth " " I: | as, audi-rē, to hear. |

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Present Infinitive, and the Supine are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.

XIX.—FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Āmo, āmāvi, āmātum, āmārē, —to love. Stem : āma-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Āmo,	<i>I love, or am loving</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-āmūs,	<i>We love, or are loving</i>
Ām-ās,	<i>thou lovest, or art loving</i>	Ām-ātīs,	<i>ye love, or are loving</i>
Ām-āt,	<i>he loves, or is loving.</i>	Ām-ant,	<i>they love, or are loving.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-ābam,	<i>I was loving</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ābāmūs,	<i>We were loving</i>
Ām-ābās,	<i>thou wast loving</i>	Ām-ābātīs,	<i>ye were loving</i>
Ām-ābāt,	<i>he was loving.</i>	Ām-ābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-ābo,	<i>I shall love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ābīmūs,	<i>We shall love</i>
Ām-ābīs,	<i>thou wilt love</i>	Ām-ābītīs,	<i>ye will love</i>
Ām-ābīt,	<i>he will love.</i>	Ām-ābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-āvi,	<i>I have loved, or I loved</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-āvīmūs,	<i>We have loved, or we loved</i>
Ām-āvistī,	<i>thou hast loved, or thou lovedst</i>	Ām-āvistīs,	<i>ye have loved, or ye loved</i>
Ām-āvīt,	<i>he has loved, or he loved.</i>	Ām-āvērunt,	<i>they have loved, or ām-āvērē }</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-āvēram,	<i>I had loved</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-āvērāmūs,	<i>We had loved</i>
Ām-āvērās,	<i>thou hadst loved</i>	Ām-āvērātīs,	<i>ye had loved</i>
Ām-āvērāt,	<i>he had loved.</i>	Ām-āvērant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-āvēro,	<i>I shall</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-āvērimūs,	<i>We shall</i>
Ām-āvērīs,	<i>thou wilt</i>	Ām-āvēritīs,	<i>ye will</i>
Ām-āvērīt,	<i>he will</i>	Ām-āvērint,	<i>they will</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-ā,	<i>Love thou.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ātē,	<i>Love ye.</i>
--------------------	-------------------	----------------------	-----------------

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-āto,	<i>Thou shalt or must love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ātōtē,	<i>Ye shall or must love</i>
Ām-āto,	<i>shall or must love.</i>	Ām-anto,	<i>they shall or must love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-em,	<i>I may love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ēmūs,	<i>We may love</i>
Ām-ēs,	<i>thou mayst love</i>	Ām-ētīs,	<i>ye may love</i>
Ām-ēt,	<i>he may love.</i>	Ām-ent,	<i>they may love.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-ārem,	<i>I might love</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ārēmūs,	<i>We might love</i>
Ām-ārēs,	<i>thou mightst love</i>	Ām-ārētīs,	<i>ye might love</i>
Ām-ārēt,	<i>he might love.</i>	Ām-ārent,	<i>they might love.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Ām-āvērim,	<i>I may</i>	<i>P.</i> Ām-āvērimūs,	<i>We may</i>
Ām-āvēris,	<i>thou mayst</i>	Ām-āvēritīs,	<i>ye may</i>
Ām-āvērit,	<i>he may</i>	Ām-āvērint,	<i>they may</i>
	<i>have loved.</i>		<i>have loved.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Ām-āvissem,	<i>I should</i>	<i>P.</i> Ām-āvissemūs,	<i>We should</i>
Ām-āvissēs,	<i>thou wouldst</i>	Ām-āvissētīs,	<i>ye would</i>
Ām-āvissēt,	<i>he would</i>	Ām-āvissent,	<i>they would</i>
	<i>have loved.</i>		<i>have loved.</i>

* The 1st and 3rd Persons of the Present Subjunctive are often used with a kind of Imperative sense: ānem, *let me love*; āmēt, *let him love*; āmēmūs, *let us love*. Concerning the translation of the Subjunctive Mood in general, see p. 47.

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

<i>Pres. and Imp.</i>	Ām-ārē,	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Perf. and Pluf.</i>	Ām-āvissē,	<i>{ to have loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Ām-ātūrūs	<i>{ to be about to love.</i>
	essē,	

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	Ām-andī,	<i>of loving</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Ām-andō,	<i>for loving</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Ām-andum,	<i>loving</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Ām-andō,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINES.

Ām-ātum,	<i>to love.</i>
Ām-ātū,	<i>in loving, or to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRESENT.</i>	Ām-ans, -antis,	<i>loving.</i>
<i>FUTURE.</i>	Ām-ātūrūs (ā, um),	<i>about to love.</i>

Obs. Āmātūrūs may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, āmātūrūs sum, *I am about to love*; āmātūrūs eram, *I was about to love*, &c. This is called the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation*.

NOTE.—In all the Perfect Tenses *vi* and *ve* may be omitted before *s* and *r*: as,

āmāvisti	becomes	āmastī	āmāvēro	becomes	āmāro
āmāvistīs	"	āmastīs	āmāvēram	"	āmāram
āmāvērunt	"	āmārunt	āmāvērim	"	āmārim
but āmāvērē	does not become		āmāvissem	"	āmāassem
āmārē,	which would be con-		āmāvisse	"	āmāasse
founded with the Present Infin.					

XX.—SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōneo, mōnuī, mōnītum, mōnērē,—to advise. Stem: mōne-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-eo,	<i>I advise, or am advising</i>	P. Mōn-ēmūs,	<i>We advise, or are advising</i>
Mōn-ēs,	<i>thou adviseest, or art advising</i>	Mōn-ētīs,	<i>ye advise, or are advising</i>
Mōn-ēt,	<i>he advises, or is advising.</i>	Mōn-ent,	<i>they advise, or are advising.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbam,	<i>I was advising</i>	P. Mōn-ēbāmūs,	<i>We were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbās,	<i>thou wast advising</i>	Mōn-ēbātīs,	<i>ye were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbāt,	<i>he was advising.</i>	Mōn-ēbant,	<i>they were advis- ing.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbo,	<i>I shall advise</i>	P. Mōn-ēbīmūs,	<i>We shall advise</i>
Mōn-ēbīs,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	Mōn-ēbītīs,	<i>ye will advise</i>
Mōn-ēbīt,	<i>he will advise.</i>	Mōn-ēbunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uī,	<i>I have advised, or I advised</i>	P. Mōn-uīmūs,	<i>We have advised. or we advised</i>
Mōn-uistī,	<i>thou hast advised, or advisedst</i>	Mōn-uistīs,	<i>ye have advised, or ye advised</i>
Mōn-uīt,	<i>he has advised, or he advised.</i>	Mōn-uērunt,	<i>they have advised, or -uērē, } or they advised.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uēram,	<i>I had advised</i>	P. Mōn-uērāmūs,	<i>We had advised</i>
Mōn-uērās,	<i>thou hadst advised</i>	Mōn-uērātīs,	<i>ye had advised</i>
Mōn-uērāt,	<i>he had advised.</i>	Mōn-uērant,	<i>they had advised.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uēro,	<i>I shall</i>	P. Mōn-uērimūs,	<i>We shall</i>
Mōn-uērīs,	<i>thou wilt</i>	Mōn-uēritīs,	<i>ye will</i>
Mōn-uērīt,	<i>he will</i>	Mōn-uērint,	<i>they will</i>
	<i>have advised.</i>		<i>have advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ē,	<i>Advise thou.</i>	P. Mōn-ētē,	<i>Advise ye.</i>
-----------	---------------------	-------------	-------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēto,	<i>Thou shalt or must advise</i>	P. Mōn-ētōtē,	<i>Ye shall or must advise</i>
Mōn-ēto,	<i>he shall or must advise.</i>	Mōn-ento,	<i>they shall or must advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Mön-eam, <i>I may advise</i>	<i>P.</i> Mön-eāmūs, <i>We may advise</i>
Mön-eās, <i>thou mayst advise</i>	Mön-eātīs, <i>ye may advise</i>
Mön-eāt, <i>he may advise.</i>	Mön-eant, <i>they may advise.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Mön-ērem, <i>I might advise</i>	<i>P.</i> Mön-ērēmūs, <i>We might advise</i>
Mön-ērēs, <i>thou mightst advise</i>	Mön-ērētīs, <i>ye might advise</i>
Mön-ērēt, <i>he might advise.</i>	Mön-ērent, <i>they might advise</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Mön-uērim, <i>I may</i>	<i>P.</i> Mön-uērimūs, <i>We may</i>
Mön-uēris, <i>thou mayst</i>	Mön-uēritīs, <i>ye may</i>
Mön-uērit, <i>he may</i>	Mön-uērint, <i>they may</i>
	<i>have advised.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i> Mön-uissēm, <i>I should</i>	<i>P.</i> Mön-uissēmūs, <i>We should</i>
Mön-uissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>	Mön-uissētīs, <i>ye would</i>
Mön-uissēt, <i>he would</i>	Mön-uissent, <i>they would</i>
	<i>have advised.</i>

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

<i>PRES. and IMP.</i>	Mön-ērē, <i>to advise.</i>
<i>PERF. and PLUP.</i>	Mön-uissē, <i>{ to have advised.</i>
<i>FUTURE.</i>	Mön-ītūrūs <i>{ to be about to advise.</i>
	essē,

SUPINES.

Mön-ītum,	<i>to advise.</i>
Mön-ītū,	<i>in advising, or to be advised.</i>

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> Mön-endī,	<i>of advising</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Mön-endō,	<i>for advising</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Mön-endum,	<i>advising</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Mön-endō,	<i>by advising.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRESENT.</i>	Mön-ens, -entis, <i>advising.</i>
<i>FUTURE.</i>	Mön-ītūrūs, (ā, um), <i>about to advise.</i>

Obs. Mönītūrūs may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, mōnītūrūs sum, *I am about to advise*; mōnītūrūs eram, *I was about to advise, &c.* This is called the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation*.

XXI.—THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.— ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē,—to rule. Stem : rēg-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-o, I rule, or am</i>	<i>ruling.</i>	<i>P. Rēg-īmūs, We rule, or are</i>	<i>ruling.</i>
<i>Rēg-īs, thou rulest, or art</i>		<i>Rēg-ītīs, ye rule, or are</i>	
<i>Rēg-īt, he rules, or is</i>		<i>Rēg-unt, they rule, or are</i>	

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-ēbam, I was ruling</i>	<i>P. Rēg-ēbāmūs, We were ruling</i>
<i>Rēg-ēbās, thou wast ruling</i>	<i>Rēg-ēbātīs, ye were ruling</i>
<i>Rēg-ēbāt, he was ruling.</i>	<i>Rēg-ēbant, they were ruling.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-am, I shall rule</i>	<i>P. Rēg-ēmūs, We shall rule</i>
<i>Rēg-es, thou wilt rule</i>	<i>Rēg-ētīs, ye will rule</i>
<i>Rēg-ēt, he will rule.</i>	<i>Rēg-ent, they will rule.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rex-I, I have ruled, or I ruled</i>	<i>P. Rex-īmūs, We have ruled, or we ruled</i>
<i>Rex-istī, thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst</i>	<i>Rex-istīs, ye have ruled, or ye ruled</i>
<i>Rex-īt, he has ruled, or he ruled.</i>	<i>Rex-ērunt or rex-ērē, } they have ruled, or they ruled.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rex-ēram, I had ruled</i>	<i>P. Rex-ērāmūs, We had ruled</i>
<i>Rex-ērās, thou hadst ruled</i>	<i>Rex-ērātīs, ye had ruled</i>
<i>Rex-ērāt, he had ruled.</i>	<i>Rex-erant, they had ruled.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rex-ēro, I shall have ruled</i>	<i>P. Rex-ērīmūs, We shall have ruled</i>
<i>Rex-ērīs, thou wilt have ruled</i>	<i>Rex-ērītīs, ye will have ruled</i>
<i>Rex-ērīt, he will have ruled.</i>	<i>Rex-erint, they will have ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-ē, Rule thou.</i>	<i>P. Rēg-ītē, Rule ye.</i>
-----------------------------	-----------------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-īto, Thou shalt or must rule</i>	<i>P. Rēg-ītōtē, Ye shall or must rule</i>
<i>Rēg-īto, he shall or must rule.</i>	<i>Rēg-unto, they shall or must rule.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-am,	<i>I may rule</i>	P. Rēg-āmūs,	<i>We may rule</i>
Rēg-ās,	<i>thou mayst rule</i>	Rēg-ātis,	<i>ye may rule</i>
Rēg-āt,	<i>he may rule.</i>	Rēg-ant,	<i>they may rule.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ērem,	<i>I might rule</i>	P. Rēg-ērēmūs,	<i>We might rule</i>
Rēg-ērēs,	<i>thou mightst rule</i>	Rēg-ērētis,	<i>ye might rule</i>
Rēg-ērēt,	<i>he might rule.</i>	Rēg-ērent,	<i>they might rule.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ērim,	<i>I may</i>	P. Rex-ērimūs,	<i>We may</i>
Rex-ēris,	<i>thou mayst</i>	Rex-ēritis,	<i>ye may</i>
Rex-ērīt,	<i>he may</i>	Rex-ērint,	<i>they may</i>
	<i>have ruled.</i>		<i>have ruled.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-issēm,	<i>I should</i>	P. Rex-issēmūs,	<i>We should</i>
Rex-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst</i>	Rex-issētis,	<i>ye would</i>
Rex-issēt,	<i>he would</i>	Rex-issent,	<i>they would</i>
	<i>have ruled.</i>		<i>have ruled.</i>

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP.	Rēg-ērē,	<i>to rule.</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	Rex-issē,	<i>to have ruled.</i>
FUTURE.	Rec-tūrūs essē,	<i>to be about to rule.</i>

SUPINES.

Rec-tum,	<i>to rule</i>
Rec-tū,	<i>in ruling, or to be ruled.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. Rēg-endī,	<i>of ruling</i>
Dat. Rēg-endō,	<i>for ruling</i>
Acc. Rēg-endum,	<i>ruling</i>
Abl. Rēg-ondō,	<i>by ruling.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	Rēg-ens, -entis,	<i>ruling</i>
FUTURE.	Rec-tūrūs (ā, um),	<i>about to rule.</i>

Obs. Rectūrūs may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, rectūrūs sum, *I am about to rule*; rectūrūs eram, *I was about to rule*, &c. This is called the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation*.

XXII.—FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audivi, auditum, audirē,—to hear. Stem : audi-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-io, <i>I hear, or am</i>	} <i>hearing.</i>	P. Aud-imūs, <i>We hear, or are</i>	} <i>hearing.</i>
Aud-is, <i>thou hearest, or art</i>		Aud-itīs, <i>ye hear, or are</i>	
Aud-it, <i>he hears, or is</i>		Aud-iunt, <i>they hear, or are</i>	

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iēbam, <i>I was hearing</i>	}	P. Aud-iēbāmūs, <i>We were hearing</i>	}
Aud-iēbās, <i>thou wast hearing</i>		Aud-iēbātīs, <i>ye were hearing</i>	
Aud-iēbāt, <i>he was hearing.</i>		Aud-iēbant, <i>they were hearing.</i>	

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. Aud-iam, <i>I shall hear</i>	}	P. Aud-iēmūs, <i>We shall hear</i>	}
Aud-iēs, <i>thou wilt hear</i>		Aud-iētīs, <i>ye will hear</i>	
Aud-iēt, <i>he will hear.</i>		Aud-ient, <i>they will hear.</i>	

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivī, <i>I have heard, or</i>	}	P. Aud-ivīmūs, <i>We have heard,</i>	}
Aud-ivistī, <i>I heard</i>		Aud-ivistīs, <i>ye have heard, or</i>	
Aud-ivīt, <i>thou hast heard,</i>		Aud-ivērunt, <i>they have heard,</i>	
<i>or thou heardst</i>		<i>or -ivērē, } or they heard.</i>	
<i>he has heard, or</i>			
<i>he heard.</i>			

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivēram, <i>I had heard</i>	}	P. Aud-ivērāmūs, <i>We had heard</i>	}
Aud-ivērās, <i>thou hadst heard</i>		Aud-ivērātīs, <i>ye had heard</i>	
Aud-ivērāt, <i>he had heard.</i>		Aud-ivērant, <i>they had heard.</i>	

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivēro, <i>I shall</i>	} <i>have</i>	P. Aud-ivērīmūs, <i>We shall</i>	} <i>have</i>
Aud-ivērīs, <i>thou wilt</i>		Aud-ivēritīs, <i>ye will</i>	
Aud-ivērit, <i>he will</i>		Aud-ivērint, <i>they will</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-I, <i>Hear thou.</i>	}	P. Aud-itē, <i>Hear ye.</i>	}

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-ito, <i>Thou shalt or must</i>	}	P. Aud-itōtē, <i>Ye shall or must</i>	}
Aud-ito, <i>he shall or must</i>		Aud-iunto, <i>they shall or must</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iam,	<i>I may hear</i>	P. Aud-iāmūs,	<i>We may hear</i>
Aud-iās,	<i>thou mayst hear</i>	Aud-iātīs,	<i>ye may hear</i>
Aud-iāt,	<i>he may hear.</i>	Aud-iant,	<i>they may hear.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-irem,	<i>I might hear</i>	P. Aud-irēmūs,	<i>We might hear</i>
Aud-irēs,	<i>thou mightst hear</i>	Aud-irētīs,	<i>ye might hear</i>
Aud-irēt,	<i>he might hear.</i>	Aud-irent,	<i>they might hear</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivērim,	<i>I may</i>	P. Aud-ivērimus,	<i>We may</i>
Aud-ivēris,	<i>thou mayst</i>	Aud-ivēritīs,	<i>ye may</i>
Aud-ivērit,	<i>he may</i>	Aud-ivērint,	<i>they may</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivissem,	<i>I should</i>	P. Aud-ivissēmūs,	<i>We should</i>
Aud-ivissēs,	<i>thou wouldst</i>	Aud-ivissētīs,	<i>ye would</i>
Aud-ivissēt,	<i>he would</i>	Aud-ivissent,	<i>they would</i>

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP.	Aud-irē,	<i>to hear.</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	Aud-ivissē,	<i>{to have heard.</i>
FUTURE.	Aud-itūrūs	<i>{to be about</i>
	essē,	<i>{to hear.</i>

SUPINES.

Aud-itum,	<i>to hear.</i>
Aud-itū,	<i>in hearing, or</i>
	<i>to be heard.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. Aud-iendī,	<i>of hearing</i>
Dat. Aud-iendō,	<i>for hearing</i>
Acc. Aud-iendum,	<i>hearing</i>
Abl. Aud-iendō,	<i>by hearing.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	Aud-iens, -entis,
	<i>hearing.</i>
FUTURE.	Aud-itūrūs (ā, um).
	<i>about to hear.</i>

Obs. Audītūrūs may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: as, *audītūrūs sum, I am about to hear*; *audītūrūs eram, I was about to hear*, &c. This is called the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation*.

NOTE.—In all the Perfect Tenses *v* is frequently omitted before *e* and *i*. The two *ii* are often contracted into *i*: as,

audīvisti becomes	audīstī or audisti	audivēram becomes	audīeram
audīvisti	audīstīs	audivērim	audīerim
audīvīt	or audīstīs	audivissem	audīdissem or audissem
audivērunt	audīrūt	audivissē	audīdisse or audisssē.
audivēro	audīrō		

PR. L. L.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXV.

The Present, Imperfect, and Future-Simple Tenses, Indicative

A.—1. Ego te laudabam, tu me vituperabas. 2. Ego te laudabo, tu me vituperabis. 3. Bonos semper laudabo, improbos semper vituperabo. 4. Si virtutem amabitis, omnes boni vos amabunt. 5. Dum nos placidus somnus recreabat, vos vigilabatis. 6. Quum milites urbem intrabant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Hieme in urbe habitamus, aestate autem in hortis habitabimus. 8. Probitate, non fraude amicos parabis. 9. Graeci partem praedae Diis dabant. 10. Multi homines aedificant domos, in quibus non habitabunt.

1. He was building a house in the city. 2. I shall always praise the good; I shall always find-fault-with the bad. 3. The Romans gave the greatest honours to good citizens. 4. By virtue they-are-getting to themselves (*sibi*) a renowned name. 5. While the soldiers were refreshing themselves, the enemy (*pl.*) were awake. 6. We (*nos*) build houses; others will dwell in them. 7. The general will give the booty to the soldiers. 8. You (*sing.*) find-fault-with yourself (*te*), I (*do*) not find-fault-with you. 9. All persons praise diligence and honesty. 10. While the citizens were watching, the soldiers were preparing their arms.

The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Tenses, Indicative.

RULE 11.—When two Nouns refer to the same person or thing, they are said to be in *Apposition*, and are put in the same case: as, Rōmūlūs rex, *Romulus, the king.*

B.—1. Ego ambulavi, tu vigilavisti, ventus flavit. 2. Ego ambulaveram, tu vigilaveras, ventus flaverat. 3. Ego te laudavero, tu me vituperaveris, frater judicaverit. 4. Praeceptores meos semper amavi. 5. Romani Corinthum, opulentam Graeciae urbem, expugnaverunt. 6. Quum milites urbem intraverant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Si unum castigaveris centum emendabis. 8. Si animum virtutibus ornaveris, semper beatus eris. 9. Quum exercitus urbem oppugnavit, nos jam emigraveramus. 10. Quum hostes agros vastaverint, urbem oppugnabunt.

1. The Romans assaulted the city. 2. The soldiers laid-waste the lands (*agros*) and assaulted the city. 3. Cicero, the orator, got for himself a renowned name. 4. They had adorned the city (*of*)

Corinth with most splendid buildings. 5. When the army has (*fut. perf.*) laid-waste the lands, the general will assault the city. 6. When thou hast improved (*fut. perf.*) thy life, thou wilt have gained for thyself (*dative*) true praise. 7. I have built for myself a splendid house; I have gained very many friends. 8. I have praised you (*sing.*), not found-fault-with you (*sing.*). 9. The army had entered the city and had laid-waste all (things). 10. If thou hast gained for thyself true friends, thou art happy.

Imperative Mood.

NOTE.—Not in prohibitions is always **NE**.

C.—1. Amato patrem et matrem! 2. Omnes homines ama! 3. Mores vestros mutare, amici! 4. Diligenter cura, amice, valetudinem tuam! 5. Amate litteras, o pueri! 6. Discipulus amato praeceptores! 7. Laudatote probos homines, vituperatote improbos! 8. Omnes homines amanto Deum! 9. Ne nomen muta; muta mores.

1. Enter (*pl.*), O friends! 2. Improve (*pl.*) those ill manners of yours,* scholars! 3. O my son, love (thy) mother! 4. Change not this law, citizens. 5. Praise thou the just and good (*pl.*). 6. Change not (your) friends. 7. While the soldiers are fighting, the citizens must watch. 8. Good and upright citizens must be at-the-head-of the commonwealth. 9. Get not to thyself a name by guilt.

* Translate *those-of-yours*, by *istos*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The Indicative Mood speaks of a thing without any condition or doubt: as, *aedifico dōmum*, *I am building a house*; *hābitābo in ēā*, *I shall dwell in it*.

The Subjunctive Mood speaks of a thing with some condition or doubt: as, [*aedifico dōmum*] *ūt in ēā hābitēm*, [*I am building a house*], *in order that I may dwell in it*. Here there is no doubt about the act of *building*; but whether the person building will *dwell* in the house or not is uncertain, and depends upon circumstances.

The translation of the Subjunctive Mood with *may* and *might* is only an approximation to its meaning. Very often it has to be rendered in English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative Mood, as in the whole of Exercise E.

NOTE.—The Rule for the sequence of tenses in the Subjunctive Mood is given on p. 95.

RULE 12.—The Conjunctions *ut, that, in-order-that*, and *nē, lest, in-order-that-not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

The Present and Imperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.

D.—1. Laudat puerum, ut litteras amet. 2. Laudavit puerum, ut litteras amaret. 3. Omnes parentes optant, ut filii litteras diligenter tractent. 4. Saepe majores nostri dimicaverunt, ut patriam suam liberarent. 5. Amo te, ut me redames. 6. Amavi te, ut me redamares. 7. Dux imperavit ut milites stationes suas servarent. 8. Ita judicat judex justus, ut in omni re rectam conscientiam servet. 9. Heri ambulabam, ut tristem animum exhilararem. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ne urbem hostes expugnarent.

1. I often walked in the fields that I might refresh my mind. 2. Who does not fight that he may preserve his country? 3. They were fighting that they might preserve their freedom. 4. He chastises the boy in-order-that he may improve him. 5. He was chastising the boy in-order-that he might improve him. 6. We fight in-order-that the enemy (*pl.*) may not (*ne*) lay-waste our lands. 7. The husbandmen were preparing arms in-order-that the soldiers might not enter their lands. 8. We prepare (our) arms that we may save the city. 9. We often walked in the garden in order that we might refresh ourselves (*nos*). 10. We were building and were adorning dwelling-places, in-order-that others might dwell in them.

RULE 13.—*Quin* is used with the Subjunctive Mood after *nōn dūbīto, I do not doubt*; *nēmo dūbītāt, no one doubts*; *quīs dūbītāt? who doubts?* *nōn est dūbīum, it is not doubtful*, or, *there is no doubt*; and is translated in English by *that*.

After such expressions as these, the Subjunctive must be translated into English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative: as, *nēmo dūbītāt quin sit justum, no one doubts that it is just*.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.

E.—1. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaverint. 2. Non dubitabam, quin milites nostri hostes superavissent. 3. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaturi sint.* 4. Quis dubitat, quin bonos semper laudaverimus? 5. Non est dubium, quin fidem semper servaveritis. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin hostes urbem expugnassent. 7. Non est dubium, quin malos semper vituperaverimus. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin Hannibal fortissime pugnasset.

* The *Periphrastic Conjugation*, consisting of the Future Participle in *turus* with the Verb *sum*, denotes intention or futurity. See p. 39, *Obs.*

9. Non est dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupaverit.
 10. Non erat dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupavisset.

In the following Exercise the verbs in *Italics* are to be rendered in Latin by the corresponding Tenses of the Subjunctive.

1. There was no doubt that the enemy *had entered* the city.
 2. There is no doubt that our soldiers *have fought* bravely. 3. I do not doubt that *ye have* always *praised* the good. 4. There is no doubt that our (men) *overcame* the enemy. 5. There was no doubt that *they had prepared* arms. 6. Who doubts that the enemy *have prepared* arms? 7. I have no doubt that our soldiers *have taken-by-storm* the city. 8. Who doubts that our men *fought* bravely? 9. There is no doubt that *he has improved* his manners. 10. Who doubts that a good citizen will fight (*pres. subj.*) for (*prō* with *abl.*) his native-land?

Infinitive Mood and Participles.

RULE 14.—The latter of two verbs is put in the Infinitive Mood: as, *Caesār hostēs sūpērārē pōtest, Caesar is able to overcome the enemy.*

Pōtest, (he, she, it) is able.

Possunt, (they) are able.

F.—1. *Milites urbem expugnare possunt.* 2. *Caesar sibi amicos parare potest.* 3. *Naturam mutare difficile est.* 4. *Errare humanum est.* 5. *Luscinia cantans animos nostros delectat.* 6. *Hostes adventant expugnaturi urbem nostram.*

1. *Caesar is able to take-by-storm the city.* 2. *Our (men) are able to overcome the enemy.* 3. *It is difficult to change bad manners.* 4. *It is easy to overcome the enemies.* 5. *The general entered the city, carrying (his) sword.* 6. *They were walking in the garden, singing and adorning themselves with flowers.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVI.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

- A.**—1. *Ego te monebam, tu flebas.* 2. *Ego te monebo, tu flebis.*
 3. *Arbores vere florent.* 4. *Tempus omnia opera hominum delet.*
 5. *Romani primis temporibus parebant regi'us.* 6. *Gaudebam quod tu valebas.* 7. *Præceptor gaudebat, quod vos ejus præceptis parebatia.* 8. *Tibi placebas, aliis displicebas.* 9. *Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parebunt.* 10. *Vires vestras semper exercete, pueri!*

1. *We* (nos) shall rejoice, *you* (vos) will weep. 2. The young-man obeys not the laws of the commonwealth. 3. Weep not, O my sons; the commonwealth rejoices. 4. A good king is not always pleasing to his citizens. 5. I rejoice, because the state flourishes. 6. The same (things) do not always please the same persons. 7. The commonwealth was flourishing. 8. The good citizens were rejoicing; the bad were weeping. 9. Obey the laws of your country, citizens. 10. The enemy was destroying the houses.

B.—1. Graecia omnibus artibus floruit. 2. Multum iis debemus, qui nos virtutem docuerunt. 3. Fortes milites! laudem meruistis. 4. Cantus avium maximam nobis praeberunt voluptatem. 5. Bonae leges Solonis Atheniensibus placuerunt. 6. Divitiae multis hominibus nocuerunt. 7. Magistri vos linguam Latinam docuerunt. 8. Equites Caesaris Pompeium ejusque amicos terruerunt. 9. Haec civitas diu floruerat, quia semper legibus paruerat. 10. Tu nobis nocueras, quia temeritatem tuam non coërcueras.

1. Rashness has often been hurtful to generals. 2. We owe very many-things to our parents. 3. Who taught you the Latin language, boy? 4. Curb the tongue; the tongue has been hurtful to very many (persons). 5. Cicero exhibited to his (fellow) citizens a memorable example of integrity. 6. Set (*praebeo*) a good example to thy (fellow) citizens. 7. Destroy ye not the city, soldiers! 8. Solon the Athenian furnished most excellent laws for his (fellow) citizens. 9. That man often curbs his tongue. 10. To whom do not the songs of birds afford pleasure?

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Curo ut pueri corpus exerceam. 2. Curabam ut pueri corpus exercebam. 3. Cura ut pueri corpus exerceas. 4. Curabam ut pueri corpus exerceas. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum semper bene monuerim. 6. Nemo dubitavit quin ego puerum semper bene monuissem. 7. Non dubito quin dux temeritatem militum coërcuerit. 8. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coërciturus sit. 9. Miserum est habuisse, et nihil habere. 10. Bonis placuisse maxima laus est.

1. Who doubts that rashness has been hurtful to generals? 2. It is difficult to curb the tongue; it is more difficult to curb anger. 3. There is no doubt that to curb anger is most difficult. 4. There is no doubt that they entered the city weeping. 5. To do good to very many is true glory. 6. That tongue of yours (*iste*) is destined-to-hurt (*fut. part.*) yourself. 7. I will take care to* set a good example to my children. 8. A son ought to obey (his) father. 9. There is no doubt that the laws of Solon were serviceable to the Athenians. 10. Who doubts that anger has hurt very many?

* *Obs.* To set = that I may set: ut with Subjunctive. When the English Infinitive Mood expresses a purpose, it must be translated in Latin by ut and the Subjunctive.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVII.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Omnem hunc mundum Deus regit. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducet. 3. Semper dicam quod verum est. 4. Dum ego scribebam, tu legebas et frater pingebat. 5. Miles corpus pallio suo teget. 6. Hostes aciem instruebant. 7. Disce, puer! 8. Coelestia semper spectato, humana contemnito. 9. Vos, viri fortissimi, urbem templaque deorum defendetis. 10. Tu exercitum duces, multasque urbes expugnabis.

1. Hannibal will lead his army into the Roman territory (*agri, pl.*). 2. We were leading the army into the Roman territory. 3. We were defending the city and the temples of the gods. 4. I was writing; you were reading; (*my*) brother was painting. 5. A good citizen will never abandon the commonwealth. 6. The state defends us. 7. I will cover the bodies of the boys with (*my*) cloak. 8. Learn the song, boys; (*it*) is very beautiful (*pulcher*). 9. Brave men despise death and danger. 10. Tell * me (*dat.*), (*my*) son; what has hurt you?

B.—1. Tarquinius Priscus Romam urbem muris cinxit. 2. Xerxes, Persarum rex, Hellespontum ponte junxit. 3. Imperator exercitum duxit, multasque urbes expugnavit. 4. Cicero multas pulcherrimas orationes scripserat. 5. Cicero conjurationem Catilinae detexerat. 6. Simulac litteras scripserimus, ambulabimus. 7. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpserat. 8. Camillum triumphantem albi traxerunt equi. 9. Xerxes, Persarum rex, innumeras copias contraxit. 10. Vix Caesar aciem instruxerat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. The fire consumed the third part of the city. 2. The general led a great army into Italy. 3. The Cimbri brought-together innumerable forces. 4. Caesar arranged his line-of-battle. 5. Caesar threw a bridge across the river (*say, joined the river by a bridge*). 6. As soon as I have written (*fut. perf.*) the letter, I will take-a-walk. 7. We discovered the conspiracy of Catiline. 8. I defended the commonwealth (*when*) a young man. 9. White horses had drawn Camillus triumphing. 10. We have despised human (*things*) (*neut. pl.*).

* The verbs dico, dīco, fācio, drop the final *e* in the imperative mood: hence dic, tell thou; duc, lead thou; fac, do thou.

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnet. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam duxit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnaret. 3. Cura ut pueri animum excolas. 4. Curabam ut pueri animum excoleres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum diligenter correxerim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin ego puerum diligenter correxissem. 7. Narrate nobis, quid parentes scripserint. 8. Quis dubitat, quin hostes urbem obsidione cincturi sint. 9. Difficile est regere hominum animos. 10. Emere facilius est quam solvere.

1. I will take care to cultivate (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boy's mind. 2. There is no doubt that he has carefully cultivated his mind. 3. Take care to be well (*ut* and *Subj.*). 4. Who doubts that it is very difficult to rule the minds of men? 5. Who doubts that we have obeyed the laws? 6. Caesar drew together his forces with-the-intention-of-assaulting (*fut. part.*) the town. 7. White horses drew the chariot of Camillus (when) triumphing. 8. It is difficult to learn many things. 9. There is no doubt that we ought always to-be-learning (*pres. inf.*). 10. I will take care to correct (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boys.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Mors finiet nostram vitam. 2. Leones non reperitis in Gallia. 3. Discipulos diligentes non puniemus. 4. Persae castra muniebant et custodiebant. 5. Dum tu dormiebas, ego te custodiebam. 6. Scio multas res, quas olim nesciebam. 7. Dum tu dormies, ego te custodiam. 8. Praeceptor puerorum mentes erudit. 9. Liberi parentibus obediunt. 10. Qui Deo obedit, etiam hominibus obedit.

1. The soldiers were fortifying the camp. 2. Cornelia trained her children carefully. 3. My son, obey thy mother. 4. While the citizens were keeping-guard, the soldiers were sleeping. 5. We will keep-guard, and you shall sleep. 6. Now I know these things; yesterday I was-ignorant-of them. 7. You will not easily find a lion in Europe. 8. Death puts-an-end-to all the hopes of this life. 9. Carefully train your children; praise the good; punish the bad. 10. Thou shalt not bury (*fut. imper.*) a dead man within (in) the city.

B.—1. Natura Italiam Alpibus munivit. 2. Cicero domum suam muniverat et firmaverat. 3. Magister puniebat eos discipulos, qui non obediverant. 4. Vincite eos, qui non obediverunt. 5. Claram nocem hujus avis non audivisti? eam non audiui. 6. Servi domini sepeliverunt. 7. Vix milites castra muniverant, quum Caesar aciem instruxit. 8. Quum milites castra muniverint, dormient. 9. Natura oculos membranarum tenuissimis vestivit. 10. Parentes mei pauperem hunc puerum nutriverant.

1. A good father will nurture, clothe, (and) train-up his children. 2. Who did not hear that very clear (*superl.*) song of the nightingale? 3. Nature has fortified the earth with mountains. 4. They bound the men with the hardest chains. 5. Lictor, bind the man! 6. Very delicate membranes clothe the eyes. 7. Punish thou the bad; give honour to the good; in-that-way thou wilt be serviceable to the commonwealth. 8. He will bind the citizens with the strongest (*validissimus*) chains. 9. That cruel mother did not nurture her own children. 10. Bind not the man, soldier! he is a Roman citizen.

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Curo ut pueri mentem erudiam. 2. Curabam, ut pueri mentem erudirem. 3. Obedit aliis, ut sibi quoque alii obediant. 4. Obediebam aliis, ut mihi quoque alii obedirent. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum gnaviter custodi(v)erim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin puerum gnaviter custodi(v)isses. 7. Non dubito quin longinquitas temporis dolorem tuum mollitura sit. 8. Milites urbem custodire debent. 9. Nihil scire turpe est. 10. Venio auditorurus, quid pater scripserit.

1. There is no doubt that length of time will assuage (*Periphrastic Conjugation*) your grief. 2. It is easy to exercise the body; it is difficult to train the mind. 3. Who doubts that the father carefully trained the mind of his son? 4. I will take pains to assuage (*ut* and *Subj.*) the pain of the wound. 5. I have no doubt that he is going-to-train-up (*Periphrastic Conjugation*) the boy most carefully. 6. To punish is not to train-up. 7. He bound the men with chains, that they might learn to obey. 8. It is easy to obey the feelings (*animus**). 9. There is no doubt that length of time assuages both grief and anger (*dolorem iramque*). 10. (He) who knows not (*nescio*) (how) to obey, knows not (how) to command.

* Use the Singular.

XXIII.—FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Āmōr, āmātūs sum or fui, āmārī,—to be loved. Stem: āma-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Ām-ōr,	<i>I am loved</i>	P. Ām-āmūr,	<i>We are loved</i>
Ām-ārīs or	{ <i>thou art loved</i>	Ām-āmīnī,	<i>ye are loved</i>
ām-ārē,		Ām-antūr,	<i>they are loved.</i>
Ām-ātūr,	<i>he is loved.</i>		

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Ām-ābār,	{ <i>I was being loved</i>	P. Ām-ābāmūr,	{ <i>We were being loved</i>
Ām-ābārīs or	{ <i>thou wast being loved</i>	Ām-ābāmīnī,	{ <i>ye were being loved</i>
ām-ābārē,		Ām-ābantūr,	
Ām-ābātūr,	{ <i>he was being loved.</i>		

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. Ām-ābōr,	<i>I shall be loved</i>	P. Ām-ābīmūr,	<i>We shall be loved</i>
Ām-ābērīs or	{ <i>thou wilt be loved</i>	Ām-ābīmīnī,	<i>ye will be loved</i>
ām-ābērē,		Ām-ābuntūr,	<i>they will be loved.</i>
Ām-ābītūr,	<i>he will be loved.</i>		

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Ām-ātūs sum	{ <i>I have been loved, or fui, or was loved</i>	P. Ām-āti sūmūs	{ <i>We have been loved, or fuimūs, or were loved</i>
or fui,		or fuimūs,	
Ām-ātūs ēs	{ <i>thou hast been loved, or wast loved</i>	Ām-āti estīs	{ <i>ye have been loved, or were loved</i>
or fuistī,		or fuistīs,	
Ām-ātūs est	{ <i>he has been loved, or fuit, or was loved.</i>	Ām-āti sunt,	{ <i>they have been loved, or fuerunt, or fuerē,</i>
or fuit,		fuerunt, or	
		fuerē,	<i>loved.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Ām-ātūs ēram	{ <i>I had been loved or fuēram,</i>	P. Ām-āti ērāmūs	{ <i>We had been loved or fuērāmūs,</i>
or fuēram,		or fuērāmūs,	
Ām-ātūs ērās	{ <i>thou hadst been loved or fuērās,</i>	Ām-āti ērātīs	{ <i>ye had been loved or fuērātīs,</i>
or fuērās,		or fuērātīs,	
Ām-ātūs ērāt	{ <i>he had been loved or fuērāt,</i>	Ām-āti ērant	{ <i>they had been loved or fuērant,</i>
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Ām-ātūs ēro	{ <i>I shall have been loved or fuēro,</i>	P. Ām-āti ērīmūs	{ <i>We shall have been loved or fuērīmūs,</i>
or fuēro,		or fuērīmūs,	
Ām-ātūs ērīs	{ <i>thou wilt have been loved or fuērīs,</i>	Ām-āti ērītīs	{ <i>ye will have been loved or fuērītīs,</i>
or fuērīs,		or fuērītīs,	
Ām-ātūs ērīt	{ <i>he will have been loved or fuērīt,</i>	Ām-āti ērunt	{ <i>they will have been loved or fuērunt,</i>
or fuērīt,		or fuērunt,	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. *Ām-ārē*, *Be thou loved.* | P *Ām-āmīni*, *Be ye loved.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. *Ām-ātōr*, *Thou must be loved*
Ām-ātōr, *he must be loved.* | P. *Ām-antōr*, { *They must be*
loved.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. *Ām-ēr*, *I may be loved* | P. *Ām-ēmūr*, *We may be loved*
Ām-ērīs or } *thou mayst be* | *Ām-ēmīni*, *ye may be loved*
ām-ērē, } *loved* | *Ām-entūr*, *they may be loved.*
Ām-ētūr, *he may be loved.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. *Ām-ārēr*, *I might be loved* | P. *Ām-ārēmūr*, *We might be loved*
Ām-ārērīs or } *thou mightst be* | *Ām-ārēmīni*, *ye might be loved*
ām-ārērē, } *loved* | *Ām-ārentūr*, *they might be loved.*
Ām-ārētūr, *he might be loved.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. *Ām-ātūs sim* } *I may have been* | P. *Ām-āti simūs* } *We may have*
or *fuērīm*, } *loved* | or *fuērīmūs*, } *been loved*
Ām-ātūs sis } *thou mayst have* | *Ām-āti sitīs* } *ye may have*
or *fuērīs*, } *been loved* | or *fuērītīs*, } *been loved*
Ām-ātūs sīt } *he may have been* | *Ām-āti sint* } *they may have*
or *fuērīt*, } *loved.* | or *fuērint*, } *been loved.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. *Ām-ātūs essem* } *I should have* | P. *Ām-āti essēmūs* } *We should have*
or *fuissēm*, } *been loved* | or *fuissēmūs*, } *been loved*
Ām-ātūs essēs } *thou wouldst* | *Ām-āti essētīs* } *ye would have*
or *fuissēs*, } *have been loved* | or *fuissētīs*, } *been loved*
Ām-ātūs essēt } *he would have* | *Ām-āti essent* } *they would have*
or *fuissēt*, } *been loved.* | or *fuissent*, } *been loved.*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP. *Ām-ārī*, *to be loved.*
PERF. and PLUP. *Ām-ātūs (a, um) essē or fuissē*, *to have been loved.*
FUTURE *Ām-ātum irī* (not declined), *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. *Ām-ātūs (a, um)*, *loved or having been loved.*
GERUNDIVE. *Ām-andūs (a, um)*, *meet to be loved.*

XXIV.—SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Mōneor, mōnītūs sum or fui, mōnerī,—to be advised. Stem: mōne-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-eor,	<i>I am advised</i>	P. Mōn-ēmūr,	<i>We are advised</i>
Mōn-ērīs or	<i>thou art advised</i>	Mōn-ēmīnī,	<i>ye are advised</i>
mōn-ērē,		Mōn-entūr,	<i>they are advised.</i>
Mōn-ētūr,	<i>he is advised.</i>		

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbār,	<i>I was being advised</i>	P. Mōn-ēbāmūr,	<i>We were being advised</i>
Mōn-ēbārīs or	<i>thou wast being advised</i>	Mōn-ēbāmīnī,	<i>ye were being advised</i>
mōn-ēbārē,		Mōn-ēbantūr,	<i>they were being advised.</i>
Mōn-ēbātūr,	<i>he was being advised.</i>		

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbōr,	<i>I shall be advised</i>	P. Mōn-ēbīmūr,	<i>We shall be advised</i>
Mōn-ēbōrīs or	<i>thou wilt be advised</i>	Mōn-ēbīmīnī,	<i>ye will be advised</i>
mōn-ēbōrē,		Mōn-ēbuntūr,	<i>they will be advised.</i>
Mōn-ēbītūr,	<i>he will be advised.</i>		

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs sum	<i>I have been advised, or was advised</i>	P. Mōn-ītī sūmūs	<i>We have been advised, or were advised</i>
or fui,	<i>thou hast been advised, or wast advised</i>	Mōn-ītī estīs	<i>ye have been advised, or were advised</i>
Mōn-ītūs ēs		or fuistīs,	<i>advised</i>
or fuistī,	<i>he has been advised, or was advised.</i>	Mōn-ītī sunt,	<i>they have been advised, or were advised.</i>
Mōn-ītūs est		fuērunt, or	
or fuīt,		fuērē,	

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs ēram	<i>I had been advised</i>	P. Mōn-ītī ērāmūs	<i>We had been advised</i>
or fuēram,	<i>thou hadst been advised</i>	Mōn-ītī ērātīs	<i>ye had been advised</i>
Mōn-ītūs ērās		Mōn-ītī ērant	<i>they had been advised.</i>
or fuērās,	<i>he had been advised.</i>	or fuērant,	
Mōn-ītūs ērāt			
or fuērāt,			

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs ēro	<i>I shall have been advised</i>	P. Mōn-ītī ērimūs	<i>We shall have been advised</i>
or fuēro,	<i>thou wilt have been advised</i>	Mōn-ītī ēritīs	<i>ye will have been advised</i>
Mōn-ītūs ērīs		Mōn-ītī ērunt	<i>they will have been advised.</i>
or fuērīs,	<i>he will have been advised.</i>	or fuērint,	
Mōn-ītūs ērīt			
or fuērīt,			

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mön-ärä, *Be thou advised.* | P. Mön-ēmīni, *Be ye advised.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mön-ētör, *Thou must be advised*
Mön-ētör, *he must be advised.* | P. Mön-entör, { *They must be ad-*
vised.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mön-eär,	{ <i>I may be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>	P. Mön-eämür,	{ <i>We may be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>
Mön-eärīs or	{ <i>thou mayst be</i> <i>advised</i>	Mön-eāmīni,	{ <i>ye may be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>
mön-eärē,	{ <i>he may be ad-</i> <i>vised.</i>	Mön-eantür,	{ <i>they may be ad-</i> <i>vised.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ērēr,	{ <i>I might be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>	P. Mön-ērēmür,	{ <i>We might be</i> <i>advised</i>
Mön-ērērīs or	{ <i>thou mightst be</i> <i>advised</i>	Mön-ērēmīni,	{ <i>ye might be ad-</i> <i>vised</i>
mön-ērērē,	{ <i>he might be ad-</i> <i>vised.</i>	Mön-erentür,	{ <i>they might be</i> <i>advised.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītūs sim	{ <i>I may have been</i> <i>advised</i>	P. Mön-ītī simūs	{ <i>We may have</i> <i>been advised</i>
or fuërim,	{ <i>thou mayst have</i> <i>been advised</i>	Mön-ītī sītīs	{ <i>ye may have</i> <i>been advised</i>
Mön-ītūs ais	{ <i>he may have</i> <i>been advised.</i>	Mön-ītī sint	{ <i>they may have</i> <i>been advised.</i>
or fuëris,		or fuërint,	
Mön-ītūs sīt			
or fuërit,			

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ītūs essem	{ <i>I should have</i> <i>been advised</i>	P. Mön-ītī essēmūs	{ <i>We should have</i> <i>been advised</i>
or fuissēm,	{ <i>thou wouldst</i> <i>have been ad-</i> <i>vised</i>	Mön-ītī essētīs	{ <i>ye would have</i> <i>been advised</i>
Mön-ītūs essēs	{ <i>he would have</i> <i>been advised.</i>	Mön-ītī essent	{ <i>they would have</i> <i>been advised.</i>
or fuissēs,		or fuissent,	
Mön-ītūs essēt			
or fuissēt,			

VERB INFINITIVE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP. Mön-ēri, *to be advised.*
 PERF. and PLUP. Mön-ītūs (a, um) essē or fuissē, *to have been advised.*
 FUTURE. Mön-ītum iri (not declined), *to be about to be ad-*
[vised.]

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Mön-ītūs (a, um), *advised, or having been advised.*
 GERUNDIVE. Mön-endūs (a, um), *meet to be advised.*

XXV.—THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

Rēgōr, reotūs sum or fui, rēgī,—to be ruled. Stem: rēg-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ōr,	<i>I am ruled</i>	P. Rēg-īmūr,	<i>We are ruled</i>
Rēg-ēris or	<i>thou art ruled</i>	Rēg-īmīni,	<i>ye are ruled</i>
rēg-ērē,		Rēg-untūr,	<i>they are ruled.</i>
Rēg-itūr,	<i>he is ruled.</i>		

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ēbār,	<i>I was being ruled</i>	P. Rēg-ēbāmūr,	<i>We were being ruled</i>
Rēg-ēbāris or	<i>thou wast being ruled</i>	Rēg-ēbāmīni,	<i>ye were being ruled</i>
rēg-ēbārē,		Rēg-ēbantūr,	<i>they were being ruled.</i>
Rēg-ēbātūr,	<i>he was being ruled.</i>		

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. Rēg-ār,	<i>I shall be ruled</i>	P. Rēg-ēmūr,	<i>We shall be ruled</i>
Rēg-ēris or	<i>thou wilt be ruled</i>	Rēg-ēmīni,	<i>ye will be ruled</i>
rēg-ērē,		Rēg-entūr,	<i>they will be ruled.</i>
Rēg-ētūr,	<i>he will be ruled.</i>		

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs sum	<i>I have been ruled, or was ruled</i>	P. Rec-tī sūmūs	<i>We have been ruled, or were ruled</i>
or fui,		or fuimūs,	
Rec-tūs ēs or	<i>thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled</i>	Rec-tī estīs	<i>ye have been ruled, or were ruled</i>
fuistī,		or fuistīs,	
Rec-tūs est or	<i>he has been ruled, or was ruled.</i>	Rec-tī sunt,	<i>they have been ruled, or were ruled.</i>
fuīt,		fuērunt, or	
		fuērē,	

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs ēram	<i>I had been ruled</i>	P. Rec-tī ērāmūs	<i>We had been ruled</i>
or fuēram,		or fuērāmūs,	
Rec-tūs ērās	<i>thou hadst been ruled</i>	Rec-tī ērātīs	<i>ye had been ruled</i>
or fuērās,		or fuērātīs,	
Rec-tūs ērāt	<i>he had been ruled.</i>	Rec-tī ērant	<i>they had been ruled.</i>
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs ēro	<i>I shall have been ruled</i>	P. Rec-tī ērimūs	<i>We shall have been ruled</i>
or fuēro,		or fuērimūs,	
Rec-tūs ēris	<i>thou wilt have been ruled</i>	Rec-tī ēritīs	<i>ye will have been ruled</i>
or fuērīs,		or fuēritīs,	
Rec-tūs ērit	<i>he will have been ruled.</i>	Rec-tī ērunt	<i>they will have been ruled.</i>
or fuērīt,		or fuērīnt,	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ērē, Be thou ruled. | P. Rēg-īmīni, Be ye ruled.

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-ītōr, Thou must be ruled | Rēg-ītōr, he must be ruled. | P. Rēg-untōr, They must be ruled.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ār, I may be ruled | P. Rēg-āmūr, We may be ruled
Rēg-ārīs or } thou mayst be
rēg-ārē, } ruled
Rēg-ātūr, he may be ruled. | Rēg-āmīni, ye may be ruled
Rēg-antūr, they may be ruled.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ērēr, I might be ruled | P. Rēg-ērēmūr, We might be ruled
Rēg-ērērīs or } thou mightst be
rēg-ērērē, } ruled
Rēg-ērētūr, he might be ruled. | Rēg-ērēmīni, ye might be ruled
Rēg-ērentūr, they might be ruled

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs sim or } I may have been
fuērim, } ruled
Rec-tūs sis or } thou mayst have
fuērīs, } been ruled
Rec-tūs sit or } he may have been
fuērīt, } ruled. | P. Rec-tī simūs } We may have
or fuērimūs, } been ruled
Rec-tī sitīs or } ye may have been
fuēritīs, } ruled
Rec-tī sint or } they may have
fuērint, } been ruled.

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs essem } I should have been
or fuissem, } ruled
Rec-tūs essēs } thou wouldst have
or fuissēs, } been ruled
Rec-tūs essēt } he would have been
or fuissēt, } ruled. | P. Rec-tī essēmūs } We should have
or fuissēmūs, } been ruled
Rec-tī essētīs } ye would have
or fuissētīs, } been ruled
Rec-tī essent } they would have
or fuissent, } been ruled.

VERB INFINITIVE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP. Rēg-I, to be ruled.
PERF. and PLUP. Rec-tūs (a, um) essē or fuissē, to have been ruled.
FUTURE. Rec-tum irī (not declined), to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Rec-tūs (a, um), ruled or having been ruled
GERUNDIVE Rēg-endūs (a, um), meet to be ruled.

XXVI.—FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audiōr, auditus sum or fui, audiri,—to be heard. Stem: audi-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iōr,	<i>I am heard</i>	P. Aud-imūr,	<i>We are heard</i>
Aud-irīs or	} <i>thou art heard</i>	Aud-imīni,	<i>ye are heard</i>
aud-irē,		Aud-iuntūr,	<i>they are heard.</i>
Aud-itūr,	<i>he is heard.</i>		

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iēbār,	{ <i>I was being heard</i>	P. Aud-iēbāmūr,	{ <i>We were being heard</i>
Aud-iēbārīs or	} <i>thou wast being heard</i>	Aud-iēbāmīni,	{ <i>ye were being heard</i>
aud-iēbārē,		Aud-iēbantūr,	{ <i>they were being heard.</i>
Aud-iēbātūr,	<i>he was being heard.</i>		

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. Aud-iār,	<i>I shall be heard</i>	P. Aud-iēmūr,	<i>We shall be heard</i>
Aud-iērīs or	} <i>thou wilt be heard</i>	Aud-iēmīni,	<i>ye will be heard</i>
aud-iērē,		Aud-ientūr,	<i>they will be heard.</i>
Aud-iētūr,	<i>he will be heard.</i>		

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs sum	{ <i>I have been heard, or was heard</i>	P. Aud-itī sūmūs	{ <i>We have been heard, or were heard</i>
or fui,		or fuimūs,	
Aud-itūs ēs or	{ <i>thou hast been heard, or wast heard</i>	Aud-itī estīs	{ <i>ye have been heard, or were heard</i>
fuiſtī,		or fuiſtīs,	
Aud-itūs est	{ <i>he has been heard, or was heard.</i>	Aud-itī sunt,	{ <i>they have been heard, or were heard.</i>
or fuiſt,		fuērunt, or fuērē,	

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs ēram	{ <i>I had been heard</i>	P. Aud-itī ērāmūs	{ <i>We had been heard</i>
or fuēram,		or fuērāmūs,	
Aud-itūs ērās	{ <i>thou hadst been heard</i>	Aud-itī ērātīs	{ <i>ye had been heard</i>
or fuērās,		or fuērātīs,	
Aud-itūs ērāt	{ <i>he had been heard.</i>	Aud-itī ērant	{ <i>they had been heard.</i>
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs ēro	{ <i>I shall have been heard</i>	P. Aud-itī ērimūs	{ <i>We shall have been heard</i>
or fuēro,		or fuērimūs,	
Aud-itūs ērīs	{ <i>thou wilt have been heard</i>	Aud-itī ēritīs	{ <i>ye will have been heard</i>
or fuērīs,		or fuēritīs,	
Aud-itūs ērit	{ <i>he will have been heard.</i>	Aud-itī ērunt	{ <i>they will have been heard.</i>
or fuērīt,		or fuērint,	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-irě, *Be thou heard.* | **P. Aud-imīni,** *Be ye heard.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-itōr, *Thou must be heard* | **P. Aud-iuntōr,** *They must be heard.*
Aud-itōr, *he must be heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iār, *I may be heard* | **P. Aud-iāmūr,** *We may be heard*
Aud-iāris or *thou mayst be* | **Aud-iāmīni,** *ye may be heard*
aud-iārě, } *heard* | **Aud-iantūr,** *they may be heard.*
Aud-iātūr, *he may be heard.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-irēr, *I might be heard* | **P. Aud-irēmūr,** *We might be heard*
Aud-irēris or *thou mightst be* | **Aud-irēmīni,** *ye might be heard*
aud-irērě, } *heard* | **Aud-irentūr,** *they might be heard.*
Aud-irētūr, *he might be heard.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs sim } *I may have been* | **P. Aud-itī simūs** } *We may have*
or **fuērīm,** } *heard* | or **fuērīmūs,** } *been heard*
Aud-itūs sis } *thou mayst have* | **Aud-itī sitīs** } *ye may have*
or **fuērīs,** } *been heard* | or **fuērītīs,** } *been heard*
Aud-itūs sit } *he may have been* | **Aud-itī sint** } *they may have*
or **fuērīt,** } *heard.* | or **fuērint,** } *been heard.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūsessem } *I should have* | **P. Aud-itī essēmūs** } *We should have*
or **fuiſsem,** } *been heard* | or **fuiſſēmūs,** } *been heard*
Aud-itūs essēs } *thou wouldst have* | **Aud-itī essētīs** } *ye would have*
or **fuiſſēs,** } *been heard* | or **fuiſſētīs,** } *been heard*
Aud-itūs essēt } *he would have* | **Aud-itī essent** } *they would have*
or **fuiſſēt,** } *been heard.* | or **fuiſſent,** } *been heard.*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP. Aud-irī, *to be heard.*
PERF. and PLUP. Aud-Itūs (a, um) essē or fuiſſē, *to have been heard.*
FUTURE. Aud-Itum irī (not declined), *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Aud-itūs (a, um), *heard or having been heard.*
GERUNDIVE. Aud-iendūs (a, um), *meet to be heard.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

RULE 15.—A proposition in the active voice may also be expressed by the passive voice, the accusative being changed into the nominative, and the nominative into the ablative. If the ablative denotes a living being, the preposition *ā* or *āb* is prefixed. Thus *māgistr̄ puērū laudāt*, *the master praises the boy*, becomes in the passive, *puēr ā māgistrō laudātūr*, *the boy is praised by the master*.

EXERCISE XXIX.

A.—1. Multi milites in proelio vulnerabantur. 2. Pueri attentī a magistris laudabantur. 3. Troja a Graecis expugnata est. 4. Leges egregiae a Lycurgo datae sunt. 5. Duces exercitus nostri in proelio vulnerati sunt. 6. Antiocho regi pax a Romanis data est. 7. Fugari et superari dulce non est. 8. Puer bene educator. 9. Puer, bene educatus, omnibus placet. 10. Quum rex urbem intravit, omnium civium domus floribus ornatae erant.

1. The good (men) are praised; the bad are blamed. 2. He was severely wounded. 3. In the first battle the Romans were overcome. 4. Immense forces had been raised (paro) by the enemy. 5. The temple of Vesta was built by Numa Pompilius. 6. Antiochus was overcome by the Roman general. 7. The town was assaulted. 8. The city was not taken-by-storm by Hannibal. 9. It is a small-thing to be adorned with gold and silver. 10. The whole land (ager) was laid-waste by the enemy.

B.—1. Pater curat ut ego bene edūcer. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego bene educarer. 3. Curo, ut puer bene educetur. 4. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur. 5. Non dubito quin hostes a militibus nostris superati sint. 6. Non dubitabam, quin hostes a militibus nostris superati essent. 7. Nemo dubitat quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata sit. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata esset. 9. Exercitus noster pugnat, ut urbs servetur. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ut urbs servaretur.

1. Cornelia took-care that her children should be well educated. 2. Who doubts that the boy has been carefully educated? 3. I will take-care that the girl may be adorned with good-qualities. 4. There is no doubt that the city has been assaulted. 5. To be put-to-flight is not always to be overcome. 6. Arms must be prepared (*Imper.*); the gates of the city must be strengthened (*Imper.*). 7. The general takes-care that the gates may be strengthened. 8. The good must not be blamed (*Imper.*); the bad must not be praised (*Imper.*)! 9. We were put to flight, but we were not overcome. 10. There is no doubt that Pompey was overcome by Caesar.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXX.

A.—1. Discipuli a magistro docentur. 2. Amari major est laus quam timeri. 3. Fortis vir nullis periculis movebitur. 4. Nero ab omnibus Romanis timebatur. 5. Incolae illius urbis hostium adventu territi sunt. 6. Moniti sumus, ut diligentiores essemus. 7. Puer strenue exercetor. 8. Hostes territi in urbe manserunt. 9. Pueri in litterarum studiis gnauiter exerciti sunt. 10. Monemini ut diligentiores sitis.

1. The pupil is taught by the master. 2. The walls were destroyed. 3. The citizens had been terrified. 4. You have been taught by your father. 5. It is a great thing to be well taught. 6. All the citizens were terrified by his (ejus) arrival. 7. Nero was grievously feared (*imperf.*) by all the citizens. 8. It is not pleasant to be feared by the good; it is very-pleasant to be feared by the bad. 9. The bodies of the children must be actively exercised (*Imper.*). 10. You had been warned, but you did not obey.

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego strenue exercear. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego strenue exercecerer. 3. Curo, ut strenue exerceare. 4. Curabam, ut strenue exercecerere. 5. Curo ut puer strenue exerceatur. 6. Curabam ut puer strenue exerceceretur. 7. Nemo dubitat quin puer a me semper bene monitus sit. 8. Nemo dubitavit quin puer a me semper bene monitus esset. 9. Non est dubium quin milites subito periculo territi sint. 10. Non erat dubium quin milites subito periculo territi essent.

1. He was taking-care that his body might be vigorously exercised. 2. I will take-care that the boys are taught (*subj.*) carefully. 3. A good mother will take-care that her daughter is carefully taught. 4. I do not doubt that the whole city was terrified by his arrival. 5. There is no doubt that the citizens were alarmed by the sudden danger. 6. Let not the citizens be troubled (moved) by the arrival of the enemy. 7. (Our) father took-care that we might be carefully taught. 8. I have taken-care that my sons should (*pres. subj.*) be carefully taught. 9. Brave men will not be suddenly terrified. 10. Virtue is the most beautiful (*fem.*) of (all) things; take-care that it is diligently exercised (*pres. subj.*).

NOTE.—In all Tenses compounded of the Perfect Participle and the verb sum, the Participle agrees in Gender and Number with the subject of the verb: as,

Puer āmātūs est,
Puellā āmātā est,
Bellum āmātum est,
Puērī āmātī sunt,
Puellae āmātae sunt,
Bellā āmātā sunt,

the boy was loved.
the girl was loved.
war was loved.
the boys were loved.
the girls were loved.
wars were loved.

H 2

THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

A.—1. Omnis hic mundus a Deo regitur. 2. Respublica Romana a consulibus regebatur. 3. Ripae Rheni ponte junguntur. 4. Urbs muro cincta erat. 5. Graecia perversis suis consiliis afflicta est. 6. Si semper bene vixeris, ab omnibus diligere. 7. Quum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabatur, a civibus defendebatur. 8. Conjunctio Catilinae a Cicerone detecta est. 9. Multae fabulae a poetis fictae sunt. 10. Vix acies a Caesare instructa erat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. Hannibal was conquered by Scipio. 2. The commonwealth was severely cast-down. 3. He was esteemed and was loved by all. 4. This story was invented by the poets. 5. The memory of the man will always be cherished (colo) by his fellow-citizens. 6. The conspiracy is discovered; the commonwealth is preserved. 7. You will be loved by many. 8. The town is being assaulted indeed (quidem), but it is not taken. 9. In that most celebrated (nobilis) battle Carthage was cast-down. 10. A bridge was thrown over the Rhine by Caesar. (Say, the river Rhine was joined with a bridge by Caesar.)

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego probe excolar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego probe excolerer. 3. Curo, ut puer probe excolatur. 4. Curabam, ut puer probe excoleretur. 5. Phaethon vehementer optat, ut patris curru vehatur. 6. Phaethon vehementer optavit, ut patris curru vereretur. 7. Dicit mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum sit.* 8. Dixit mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum esset.* 9. Puer probe excolitor. 10. Sapientes semper ratione regi student.

1. I will take-care that he may be rightly cultivated. 2. He took-care that the boy might be rightly cultivated. 3. We vehemently wish that the enemy may be conquered. 4. Cicero vehemently desired that all (things) might be discovered. 5. Let-us-be-zealous to be ruled by reason. 6. All are zealous to rule, not to be ruled. 7. Tell me (*dat.*) what (*quae, neuter plural*) was written (*perfect subj.**) to thee. 8. He told me (*dat.*) what (*quae*) had been written (*pluperf. subj.**). 9. The boy wishes that he may ride in the chariot. 10. The boy was wishing that he might ride in the chariot.

* The rule for this use of the Subjunctive is given subsequently. See p. 95. The indicative must be used in translating into English.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXII.

A.—1. Pueri a magistris erudiuntur. 2. Improbi homines a Deo puniuntur. 3. Bellum Punicum secundum finitum est a Scipione Africano. 4. Omnes dolores morte finiuntur. 5. Pisces in mari, aves in aëre a Deo nutriuntur. 6. Oculi tenuissimis membranis a natura vestiti sunt. 7. Veteres Britanniae incolae pellibus vestiebantur. 8. Corpora eorum, qui in pugna ceciderunt, sepeliuntur. 9. Urbes munitae ab hostibus non expugnabantur. 10. Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia vestra finita erunt (*prius quam*, before that).

1. The Britons used-to-clothe-themselves (*imperf. pass.*) with skins. 2. The cities had been fortified with stone (*adj.*) walls. 3. The sons of Tiberius Gracchus had been carefully trained by their mother. 4. The bodies were buried with the highest honours. 5. The generals were punished because they had not buried the bodies. 6. These two boys had been trained by their mother carefully. 7. The camp had not been fortified. 8. This life of-ours (*nostra*) will be found exceedingly-short (*superl.*). 9. When the city has been fortified (*fut. perf.*), the citizens will defend it. 10. The city is fortified and strengthened with guards.

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego diligenter erudiar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego diligenter erudirer. 3. Curo, ut diligenter erudiare. 4. Curabam, ut diligenter erudirere. 5. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur, strenue exerceretur, probe excoleretur, diligenter erudiretur. 6. O puer, diligenter eruditor! 7. Bonus discipulus litterarum cognitione erudiri studet. 8. Homo eruditus non solum sibi, sed etiam aliis prodest. 9. Nemo dubitat, quin puer a me guaviter custoditus sit. 10. Nemo dubitavit, quin puella a me guaviter custodita sit.

1. The boys must be carefully trained (*Imper.*). 2. Let not the boys be trained (*pres. subj.*) by wicked men. 3. I will take care that my son is carefully trained. 4. I took care that my son should not be trained by a wicked master. 5. There is no doubt that the boys have been carefully trained. 6. Who doubts that it is better to be trained by a good master than by a bad one? 7. Who doubts that Socrates was unjustly punished? 8. It is not disgraceful to be unjustly punished. 9. Take care that the boy is well trained. 10. Well trained boys love their master.

XXVII.—THIRD CONJUGATION (WITH **I** IN CERTAIN TENSES).

Căpio, cēpi, captum, cāpērē, —to take. Stem: cāp- or cāpi-

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Căp-io, I take		Căp-īmūs, We take
	Căp-is, thou takest		Căp-itīs, ye take
	Căp-īt, he takes.		Căp-iunt, they take.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	Căp-iēbam, I was taking.
<i>Future.</i>	Căp-iam, I shall take.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Căp-iam, I may take.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Căp-ērem, I might take.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Căp-ē, take thou.
<i>Future.</i>	Căp-ito, thou shalt or must take

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	Căp-ērē, to take.
-----------------	--------------------------

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Present.</i>	Căp-iens, taking.
-----------------	--------------------------

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	Căp-iendi, of taking.
-------------	------------------------------

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Căp-īor, I am taken		Căp-īmūr, We are taken
	Căp-ēris, thou art		Căp-īmīnī, ye are taken
	or -ērē, taken		Căp-iuntūr, they are taken.
	Căp-itūr, he is taken.		

<i>Future.</i>	Căp-iār, I shall be taken.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Căp-iēbar, I was being taken.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Căp-iār,	<i>I may be taken.</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Căp-ērēr,	<i>I might be taken.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Căp-ērē,	<i>be thou taken.</i>
<i>Futura.</i>	Căp-itōr,	<i>thou must be taken.</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	Căp-I,	<i>to be taken.</i>
-----------------	---------------	---------------------

NOTE.—The Perfect Tenses are not given, as their conjugation is quite regular: cēp-I, cēp-eram, cēp-ero, etc.

The Verbs conjugated like cāpio are :

facio,	fēcī,	factum,	facērē,	<i>to make.</i>
jacio,	jēcī,	jactum,	jacērē,	<i>to throw.</i>
fugio,	fūgī,	fūgtum,	fūgērē,	<i>to flee.</i>
fodio,	fodī,	fossum,	fodērē,	<i>to dig.</i>
rāpio,	rāpuī,	raptum,	rāpērē,	<i>to seize.</i>
pārio,	pēpērī,	partum,	pārērē,	<i>to bring forth.</i>
quātio,	(no perfect,)	quassum,	quātērē,	<i>to shake.</i>
cūpio,	cūpivī,	cūpitum,	cūpērē,	<i>to desire.</i>
sāpio,	sāpivī,	—	sāpērē,	<i>to savour of, be wise.</i>
lacio,	—	—	lācērē,	<i>to draw</i> } only in com-
spēcio,	—	—	spēcērē,	<i>to look</i> } pounds.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Urbs capitur; fugiunt cives, rapiuntur omnia. 2. Curabit dux strenuus ne milites sui fugiant. 3. Scribebam ego versus, tu pingebas, et frater in horto fodiebat. 4. Quis dubitat quin absurdum sit malos versus facere? 5. Poeta versus faciebat quum hostes urbem intrabant. 6. Ne fugiant milites, saepe tutius est pugnare quam fugere. 7. Non omnes eadem cupimus. 8. Curavit ut oratio sua Ciceronem saperet. 9. Quis dubitat quin milites bona nostra rapturi sint? 10. Ne facite absurda, cives! Sapite et iram coercete.

1. Birds make their nests in trees. 2. An eagle had made her nest in a tall tree. 3. We desire very many things which are not needful to us. 4. It is easy to make verses; it is not easy to make good (ones). 5. The enemy flee, and the camp is taken. 6. Flee not, soldiers! It is safer to fight than to flee. 7. We will dig in the earth, in order that we may find metals. 8. Men do not dig in the ground to (ut) find (subj.) pearls. 9. A strong wind was shaking the trees. 10. That whole oration savours-of the poets (acc.).

Deponent Verbs have a Passive form,

I. Hortör, hortätüs sum, hortäri, to exhort, like ämör.

II. Vëreör, vëritüs sum, vërerü, to fear, „ möneör.

	I			II		
INDICATIVE MOOD.	Present.	Hort-ör,	{ I exhort, or am exhorting.	Vër-ör,	{ I fear, or am fearing.	
		Hort-äris (ärë), &c.	{ thou exhortest. &c.	Vër-ëris (ërë), &c.	{ thou fearest. &c.	
	Imperfect.	Hort-äbär,	{ I was exhorting.	Vër-ëbär,	{ I was fearing.	
	Future-Simple.	Hort-äbör,	{ I shall exhort.	Vër-ëbör,	{ I shall fear.	
	Perfect.	Hort-ätüs sum,	{ I have exhorted, or I exhorted.	Vër-itüs sum,	{ I have feared, or I feared.	
	Pluperfect.	Hort-ätüs eram,	{ I had exhorted.	Vër-itüs eram,	{ I had feared.	
	Post. Perfect.	Hort-ätüs ëro,	{ I shall have exhorted.	Vër-itüs ëro,	{ I shall have feared.	
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	Present.	Hort-ër,	{ I may exhort.	Vër-ër,	{ I may fear.	
	Imperfect.	Hort-ärër,	{ I might exhort.	Vër-ërër,	{ I might fear.	
	Perfect.	Hort-ätüs sim,	{ I may have exhorted.	Vër-itüs sim,	{ I may have feared.	
	Pluperfect.	Hort-ätüs essem,	{ I should have exhorted.	Vër-itüs essem,	{ I should have feared.	
IMPERATIVE.	Present.	Hort-ärë,	{ exhort thou.	Vër-ärë,	{ fear thou.	
	Future.	Hort-ätör,	{ thou shalt or must exhort.	Vër-ëtör,	{ thou shalt or must fear.	
INFINITIVE.	Pres. & Imperf.	Hort-äri,	{ to exhort.	Vër-ëri,	{ to fear.	
	Perf. & Plup.	Hort-ätüs essë,	{ to have exhorted.	Vër-itüs essë,	{ to have feared.	
	Future.	Hort-ätürüs essë,	{ to be about to exhort.	Vër-itürüs essë,	{ to be about to fear.	
PARTICIPLES.	Present.	Hort-ans,	{ exhorting.	Vër-ens,	{ fearing.	
	Future.	Hort-ätürüs,	{ about to exhort.	Vër-itürüs,	{ about to fear.	
	Perfect.	Hort-ätüs,	{ having exhorted.	Vër-itüs,	{ having feared.	
	Gerundive.	Hort-andüs,	{ meet to be exhorted.	Vër-endüs,	{ meet to be feared.	
SUPINES.		Hort-ätum,	{ to exhort.	Vër-itum,	{ to fear.	
GERUND.		Hort-ätü,	{ to be exhorted.	Vër-itü,	{ to be feared.	
		Hort-andi, &c.	{ of exhorting. &c.	Vër-endi, &c.	{ of fearing. &c.	

Besides the Passive forms, the Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that have a Perfect Participle Active: *am, hortätüs, having exhorted.*

but an Active meaning.

III. Lōquōr, lōcūtūs sum, lōquī, to speak, like rēgōr.

IV. Partīōr, partītūs sum, partīrī, to divide, „ audiōr.

III.			IV.		
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ōr,	{ I speak, or am speaking.	Part-iōr,	{ I divide, or am dividing.	INDICATIVE MOOD.
	Lōqu-ērīs (ērē), &c.	{ thou speakest. &c.	Part-irīs (irē), &c.	{ thou dividest. &c.	
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Lōqu-ēbār,	I was speaking.	Part-iēbār,	I was dividing.	
<i>Fut.-Simple.</i>	Lōqu-ār,	I shall speak.	Part-iār,	I shall divide.	
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lōcū-tūs sum,	{ I have spoken, or I spoke.	Part-itūs sum,	{ I have divided, or I divided.	SENTENTIVE MOOD.
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	Lōcū-tūs ēram,	I had spoken.	Part-itūs ēram,	I had divided.	
<i>Fut. Perfect.</i>	Lōcū-tūs ēro,	I shall have spoken.	Part-itūs ēro,	I shall have divided.	
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ār,	I may speak.	Part-iār,	I may divide.	IMPERATIVE.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Lōqu-ērēr,	I might speak.	Part-irēr,	I might divide.	
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lōcū-tūs sim,	{ I may have spoken.	Part-itūs sim,	{ I may have divided.	
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	Lōcū-tūs essem,	I should have spoken.	Part-itūs essem,	I should have divided.	
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ērē,	speak thou.	Part-irē,	divide thou.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Future.</i>	Lōqu-itōr,	{ thou shalt or must speak.	Part-itōr,	{ thou shalt or must divide.	
<i>Pres. & Imp.</i>	Lōqu-i,	to speak.	Part-irī,	to divide.	
<i>Perf. & Plup.</i>	Lōcū-tūs essē,	{ to have spoken.	Part-itūs essē,	{ to have divided.	
<i>Future.</i>	Lōcū-tūrūs essē,	to be about to speak.	Part-itūrūs essē,	to be about to divide.	PARTICIPLES.
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ens,	speaking.	Part-iens,	dividing.	
<i>Future.</i>	Lōcū-tūrūs,	about to speak.	Part-itūrūs,	about to divide.	
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lōcū-tūs,	having spoken.	Part-itūs,	having divided.	
<i>Gerundive.</i>	Lōqu-endūs,	meet to be spoken.	Part-iendūs,	meet to be divided.	
<i>SUPINES.</i>	Lōcū-tum,	to speak.	Part-itum,	to divide.	
	Lōcū-tū,	to be spoken.	Part-itū,	to be divided.	
<i>GERUND.</i>	Lōqu-endi,	of speaking.	Part-iendi,	of dividing.	
	&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.	

The Gerundive, and occasionally the Perf. Participle, are the only forms in the Deponent that ever have a passive meaning.

Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u* and no Gerundive.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

Dependent Verbs of the First Conjugation.

1. Admiramur cantum avium illarum. 2. Admiramini Dei potentiam. 3. Animalia quaedam vocem humanam imitantur. 4. Caesar milites hortatus est, ut fortiter pugnarent. 5. Hannibal Alpes superare conatus est. 6. Hortabor patrem ut pueri mentem probe excolat. 7. Quid meditaris, carissime amice? 8. Contemplor pulchram hanc imaginem. 9. Venerare Deum, venerare parentes. 10. Tum demum beatus eris, quum aspernatus eris voluptatem.

1. Who does not admire the song of the nightingale? 2. Meditate on these things. 3. Observe (carefully) this beautiful image. 4. It does-good to the mind to contemplate lofty things. 5. Contemplate, citizens, the examples of the ancients! 6. Then at length will ye be happy when ye have learnt (*fut. perf.*) to despise pleasure. 7. I will encourage the boy to (ut) contemplate those things. 8. Attempt great things; thou wilt do great things. 9. I will take care that my son may admire those things (*ea, n. pl.*) which are fit-to-be-admired. 10. There is no doubt that the Romans admired Cicero.

EXERCISE XXXV.

Dependent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

RULE 16.—Verbs signifying *to remember, to forget, to pity*, are in Latin commonly followed by the Genitive.

1. Veremini, O pueri, senectutem! 2. Darius Alexandro magnam partem Asiae pollicitus est. 3. Plinius scribit: nunc pueri omnia sciunt, neminem verentur, imitantur neminem. 4. Tuebimur miseros, quorum agros vastavistis. 5. Incolae hoc facinus fatebuntur. 6. Comites, qui salutem regis tuiti erant, maximum praemium acceperunt. 7. Seelerum suorum recordabuntur. 8. Reus facinus confessus est. 9. Jucundum est mare a terra intueri. 10. Semper miserorum hominum miserebimur.

1. We reverence the power of God. 2. Guard the king, soldiers! 3. Confess the truth (true things), boy; it is better to be punished than to deceive. 4. Look-into these things carefully. 5. The general has promised rewards to the soldiers. The generals have promised rewards to the soldiers. 6. He has confessed the crime, and will be punished. 7. It is pleasant to call-to-mind past dangers. 8. Ye will call-to-mind these things, citizens, when I am cast forth (*fut. perf.*) from the city. 9. Have-pity-on the accused (man), judges! 10. He reverences the gods.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

DepONENT Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

RULE 17.—*Ūtor, fruor, vescor, fungor*, govern the **Ablative Case**. To these add *pōtior*, *I obtain-possession-of* (4 Conj.).

A.—1. Si morimur, corpus tantum moritur, non animus. 2. Dux maximam adeptus est gloriam. 3. Cives, libertatem adepti, summa laetitia fruentur. 4. Virtutis viam semper sequemur. 5. Cura ut bene moriaris. 6. Audi multa, loquere pauca. 7. Per multos annos pace usi sunt. 8. Lacte, caseo, carne vescuntur. 9. Munere tuo bene fungere! 10. Aliquando oculi non funguntur munere suo.

1. By this death he obtained the freedom of his country. 2. By this death he has obtained immortal glory. 3. It is a small-thing to enjoy life; it is a great-thing to discharge the duties of life. 4. Take-care that you always follow (*subj.*) the path (way) of virtue. 5. You will enjoy all these good (things). 6. When the body has died (*fut. perf.*), then indeed shall we enjoy true life. 7. The Britons used-to-feed (*imperfect*) on milk, flesh, (and) cheese. 8. He used the greatest freedom in his oration. 9. Use riches, do not abuse (them). 10. Follow us; we will protect you.

B.—1. Sapienter utimini tempore. 2. Clarissimus hic dux consulatu functus est. 3. Qui nimis cupit honores, raro eos adipiscitur. 4. Caesar duas legiones ad Labienum proficisci jubet, ipse in Menapiorum fines profectus est. 5. Bellum gerimus, ut pace fruamur. 6. Alexander immortalitatis gloriam adeptus est. 7. Augustus omnes cives benigne alloquebatur. 8. Eodem die, quo Dianae templum deflagavit, Alexander Magnus natus est. 9. Regulus omnes cruciatus Poenorum fortiter passus est. 10. Hannibal milites adhortatus est, ut reminiscerentur pristinae virtutis suae, neve (*and not*) liberorum obliviscerentur.

1. Thou hast wisely discharged thine office-of-consul. 2. Generals often exhort their soldiers to (*ut*) remember their wives and children. 3. Remember (*your*) ancient valour, soldiers! 4. Caesar orders these two legions to set out. 5. It is a small thing to speak kindly (*benigne*) to (*one's*) fellow-citizens. 6. That most famous (*nobilis*) battle was fought near the lake Trasimenus. 7. Caesar himself set out for (*into*) the territories of the Menapii. 8. Now we have peace; shortly we shall carry-on war. 9. Regulus endured bravely the utmost tortures. 10. On the same day (see Latin No. 8), on which that most famous battle was fought, the poet Euripides was born.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

DepONENT Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

1. Milites belli fortunam experiuntur. 2. Epaminondas nunquam mentiebatur. 3. Senes multa experti sunt in longa vita. 4. Magnos viros virtute metimur, non fortuna. 5. Voluptas blanditur sensibus

nostris. 6. Frons, oculi, vultus saepe mentiuntur. 7. Tarquinius Superbus potitus est regno. 8. Puniemini, quod mentiti estis. 9. Bellum civile in Italia orsum est. 10. Patres bona sua cum liberis partiuntur.

1. We will try the fortune of war. 2. The Romans often tried the fortune of war. 3. It is extremely-base (*superl.*) to lie. 4. We will share our goods with our children. 5. There is no doubt that the enemy (*pl.*) have-obtained-possession-of the city. 6. Let us try our valour; let us obtain-possession-of the camp of the enemy. 7. There is no doubt that pleasure wins-upon our senses. 8. We ought to measure men by (their) virtue, not by (their) fortune. 9. Very many (people) measure all things by fortune. 10. The consuls will measure (out) lands to the soldiers.

XXIX.—PREPOSITIONS.

Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or Ablative.

I. With the Accusative alone.

Ad,	to.	Ob,	on account of.
Adversus,	} towards, against.	Pēnēs,	in the power of.
Adversum,		Pēr,	through.
Antē,	before.	Pōnē,	behind.
Apūd,	at, near.	Post,	after.
Circā, circum,	around.	Praetēr,	beside.
Circitēr,	about.	Prōpē,	near.
Cis & citrā,	on this side of.	Proptēr,	on account of.
Contrā,	against, contrary to.	Sēcundum,	{ following, in accord-
Ergā,	towards (only of the		ance with.
Extrā,	outside of. [feelings].	Suprā,	above.
Infrā,	below.	Trans,	across.
Intēr,	between, among.	Ultrā,	on the farther side of.
Intrā,	inside of, within.	Versūs,	towards (only of place
Juxtā,	near, hard by, next to.		or direction).

Versūs is put after the word it governs.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Exercitus hostium ad portas urbis venit. 2. Multi homines contra naturam vivunt. 3. Iudices secundum leges hunc hominem puniverunt. 4. Multae aves ante hiemem in alias terras migrant. 5. Hac aestate extra urbem habitabimus. 6. Romani trans Rhenum multa oppida vastaverunt. 7. Hoc bellum intra paucos dies finitum erit. 8. Vir sapiens non propter metum legibus parebit. 9. Rhodanus primo occidentem versus fluit. 10. Equitatur praeter fluminis ripas contra hostem ducit

1. Hannibal led (his) army to the gates of the city. 2. Who doubts that it is contrary-to virtue to lie? 3. All these things are in-the-power-of the consuls. 4. The general led his army towards the river. 5. Very many birds migrate into Britain in the summer. 6. The river Rhone flows through the lake. 7. A good judge will judge in-accordance-with the laws. 8. We (nos) shall dwell within the city, but you (vos) will depart into the country (agri). 9. The camp of Hannibal was near the walls of the city. 10. The night-gale migrates across the sea in winter.

II. With the Ablative alone.

Ā, āb, or abs,	<i>by or from.</i>	Ex or ē,	<i>out of.</i>
Absquē (rare),	<i>without.</i>	Prae,	<i>before, in comparison with.</i>
Cōram,	<i>in the presence of.</i>	Prō,	<i>before, for, on behalf of.</i>
Cum,	<i>with.</i>	Sīnē,	<i>without.</i>
Dē,	<i>down from, from, concerning.</i>	Tēnūs,	<i>reaching to, as far as.</i>

Tēnūs is put after the word it governs.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Magna cum voluptate avium cantum audivimus. 2. A Ciccone liber de senectute scriptus est. 3. Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit. 4. Romani ex Gallia trans Rhenum veniunt. 5. Pro salute reipublicae et pro liberis pugnabimus. 6. Magna gloria nemini venit sine virtute. 7. Coram parentibus dixi quae scripseram. 8. Incolae urbis de pace legatos ad Caesarem miserunt. 9. Cato in senectute prae ceteris floruit. 10. Alexander omnes terras Oceano tenus vicit.

1. The songs of birds are heard with pleasure by all. 2. Cicero has written a very beautiful book concerning old age. 3. The ocean separates Britain from Gaul. 4. He said these things in-the-presence-of all the soldiers. 5. The general marched (duco) his army out of the city. 6. Before all others Demosthenes and Cicero are the most renowned orators. 7. There is no true glory without virtue. 8. Along with thee (tecum*) we will depart into another land. 9. We are fighting for (pro) our country, for our wives, for our children. 10. He has said this in-the-presence-of his father.

III. With the Accusative or Ablative.

In, in, into.	Subter, under, beneath.
Sūb, up to, under, beneath; of time, about.	Clām, secretly, without the knowledge of.
Sūper, over.	

In and *Sub* with the *Acc.* answer to the question *Whither?* with the *Abl.*, the question *Where?*

* *Mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum,* are used instead of *cum mecum* etc.

EXERCISE XL.

1. Multi homines in varias terras itinera faciunt. 2. In magno flumine magni capiuntur pisces. 3. In hortum meum non venisti, in urbe autem fuisti. 4. Sub terra est magna rerum utilium multitudo. 5. Equitatus hostium sub noctem in castra venit. 6. Plurimae aves sub hiemem in alias terras volant. 7. Pompeius in Aegypto sub oculis uxoris et liberorum mortuus est. 8. Caesar super Indos proferet imperium. 9. Super tabernaculum Darii imago solis fulgebat. 10. Etiam sub marmore et auro habitat servitus.

1. We were coming into the city; you were dwelling in it. 2. The camp of Hannibal was under the walls of Rome. 3. We were walking in the garden. 4. It is not pleasant to all to dwell in the city. 5. Large fishes are not caught in a small river. 6. The nightingale does not always remain in the same lands. 7. They slay Pompey beneath the very (ipse) eyes of his wife. 8. The Romans will extend their empire beyond the boundaries of Europe. 9. Beneath the earth (there) are many beautiful things. 10. Towards (versus) winter these birds migrate into other lands.

XXX.—ADVERBS.

Adverbs are formed from Adjectives and Participles, by means of the terminations *-ē* and *-tēr*. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the First and Second Declensions end in *-ē*, as *doctē*, *learnedly*, from *doctus*. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the Third Declension end in *-tēr*, as *fortitēr*, *bravely*, from *fortis*.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in *iūs*.

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into *ē*.

ADJECTIVES.

ADVERBS.

		Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
doctus,	<i>learned.</i>	doctē,	<i>learnedly.</i>	doctius	doctissimē
libēr,	<i>free.</i>	libērē,	<i>freely.</i>	libērius	liberrimē
pulchēr,	<i>beautiful.</i>	pulchrē,	<i>beautifully.</i>	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortis,	<i>brave.</i>	fortitēr,	<i>bravely.</i>	fortius	fortissimē
similis,	<i>like.</i>	similitēr,	<i>alike.</i>	similius	simillimē
acer,	<i>keen.</i>	acritēr,	<i>keenly.</i>	acrius	acerrimē
felix,	<i>lucky.</i>	feliciter,	<i>luckily.</i>	felicius	felicissimē
prudens,	<i>prudent</i>	prudenter,	<i>prudently.</i>	prudentius	prudētissimē

Adverbs are irregular in their Comparison, if the Adjectives from which they are derived are also irregular.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.			
		<i>Positive.</i>		<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>
bōnus,	<i>good.</i>	bēnē,	<i>well.</i>	mēlius	optimē
mālus,	<i>bad.</i>	mālē,	<i>badly, ill.</i>	pējus	pessimē
multus,	<i>much, many.</i>	multum,	<i>much.</i>	plūs	plūrimum
magnus,	<i>great.</i>	magnōpērē,	<i>greatly.</i>	māgis	maximē
prōpinquus,	<i>near.</i>	prōpē,	<i>near, nearly.</i>	prōpius	proximē
(prō)	<i>before.</i>	—		prius	primum & [primō]

EXERCISE XLI.

A.—1. Germani cum Romanis fortiter pugnauerunt. 2. Milites audacious resistere ac fortius pugnare incipiunt. 3. Miles hostibus fortissime restitit. 4. Galli Italiam longe lateque vastaverunt. 5. Cicero Roscium audacissime defendit. 6. Judicem ii timere debent, qui male egerunt. 7. Deus mundum sapientissime regit. 8. Leones facilius vincuntur quam tigres. 9. Nunquam jucundius viximus quam nunc. 10. Orationes Demosthenis ab Atheniensibus attentissime audiebantur.

1. Fight bravely, soldiers; ye are fighting for your country. 2. Now we shall live most delightfully. 3. The Germans fought very bravely. 4. Hear the speech more attentively, citizens! 5. The Gauls laid waste the lands (ager) of the Romans far and wide. 6. Ye have acted most wisely, citizens! 7. Who doubts that the soldiers have fought most bravely? 8. In this matter (res) Cicero acted most prudently. 9. The Gauls were not easily conquered. 10. Who doubts that God rules the world most wisely?

B.—1. Non satis est vivere, debemus bene vivere. 2. Multum prodest juventuti libros veterum legere. 3. Eo tempore Cicero maxime omnium reipublicae profuit. 4. Quis reipublicae plus quam Cicero profuit? 5. Orator est (*he is*) magis quam poeta. 6. Hannibal, dux Poenorum, proxime ad urbem accessit. 7. Primum Latinam linguam discere incipiam. 8. Propius ad portas urbis accessit Hannibal quam Hasdrubal. 9. Pessime omnium egisti! bonos cives perdidisti; improbis bene fecisti. 10. Prius linguam Latinam quam Graecam didicit.

1. It is easy to write; it is not easy to write well. 2. (He) who does not read attentively, reads ill. 3. It was difficult to approach near to the gates. 4. Hannibal approached very-near to (ad) the gates of Rome. 5. There is no doubt that you have acted very-ill. 6. You have acted worse (pejus) than all the others. 7. It is not a great thing to write much, it is a very-great thing to write well. 8. First of all (things), reverence the celestial gods. 9. We have lived most pleasantly. 10. There is no doubt that to write well is extremely-difficult.

XXXI.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

1. Possum, pōtui, possē, —to be able ; can.

[Possum is compounded of pot (pōtis, *able*) and sum, *I am*, the *t* in *pot* being changed into *s* before another *s*.]

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. Present.

S. Pos-sum	Pos-sim
Pōt-ēs	Pos-sis
Pōt-est	Pos-sit
P. Pos-sūmūs	Pos-simūs
Pōt-estīs	Pos-sitīs
Pos-sunt	Pos-sint

2. Imperfect.

S. Pōt-eram	Pos-sem
Pōt-ērās	Pos-sēs
Pōt-ērāt	Pos-sēt
P. Pōt-erāmūs	Pos-sēmūs
Pōt-erātīs	Pos-sētīs
Pōt-erant	Pos-sent

3. Future-Simple.

S. Pōt-ero	(wanting.)
Pōt-erīs	
Pōt-erīt	
P. Pōt-erimūs	
Pōt-eritīs	
Pōt-erunt	

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. Perfect.

S. Pōt-ui	Pōt-uērim
Pōt-uistī	Pōt-uērīs
Pōt-uīt	Pōt-uērīt
P. Pōt-uimūs	Pōt-uērimūs
Pōt-uistīs	Pōt-uērītīs
Pōt-uērunt (ērē)	Pōt-uērint

5. Pluperfect.

S. Pōt-uēram	Pōt-nissem
Pōt-uērās	Pōt-nissēs
Pōt-uērāt	Pōt-nissēt
P. Pōt-uērāmūs	Pōt-nissēmūs
Pōt-uērātīs	Pōt-nissētīs
Pōt-uērant	Pōt-nissent

6. Future-Perfect.

S. Pōt-uēro	(wanting.)
Pōt-uērīs	
Pōt-uērīt	
P. Pōt-uērimūs	
Pōt-uērītīs	
Pōt-uērint	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imp.—Possē. *Perf. and Plup.*—Pōtuissē. *Future*—wanting.
(Participle pōtens, used only as Adjective, *powerful*.)

EXERCISE XLII.

1. Ego possum legere, tu potes scribere, soror potest acu pingere.
2. Tyrannus animum sapientis infringere non poterat. 3. Cur heri nobiscum ambulare non poterat? 4. Cura, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere. 5. Nemo dubitat, quin milites urbem defendere possint. 6. Mores tyranni ei amicos parare non potuerunt. 7. Non dubitamus, quin urbs a civibus defendi potuerit. 8. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, quum hostes impetum fecerunt. 9. Quid melius hominibus dari potuit quam ratio? 10. Virtutis splendor nunquam obscurari poterit.

1. We are all able to be serviceable to (our) friends. 2. You will not be able to be a friend to all. 3. Hannibal was not able to

obtain-possession-of the city. 4. Cornelia was able to train her sons most wisely. 5. No one doubted that the soldiers were able to defend the city. 6. We cannot all be kings; we can all be good citizens. 7. You will not be able to read Sallust easily: he is a difficult author. 8. Caesar was able to conquer his enemies; he was not able to conquer envy. 9. Those wicked men will not be able to leave life with even mind. 10. Restrain (thy) tongue; so thou wilt be able to restrain also thy temper (animus).

2. Völo, völuī, vellē,—to be willing, to wish.
 3. Nölo, nöluī, nollē,—to be unwilling, not to wish [non völo].
 4. Mälo, mäluī, mallē,—to be more willing, to prefer, to have rather [māgis völo].

INDICATIVE.

1. Present.

<i>Sing.</i> Völo	Nölo	Mälo
Vis	Nön vis	Mävis
Vult	Nön vult	Mävult
<i>Plur.</i> Völümūs	Nölümūs	Mälümūs
Vultīs	Nön vultīs	Mävultīs
Völunt	Nölunt	Mälunt

2. Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i> Völ-ēbam	Nöl-ēbam	Mäl-ēbam
Völ-ēbās	Nöl-ēbās	Mäl-ēbās
Völ-ēbāt	Nöl-ēbāt	Mäl-ēbāt
<i>Plur.</i> Völ-ēbāmūs	Nöl-ēbāmūs	Mäl-ēbāmūs
Völ-ēbātīs	Nöl-ēbātīs	Mäl-ēbātīs
Völ-ēbant	Nöl-ēbant	Mäl-ēbant

3. Future-Simple.

<i>Sing.</i> Völ-am	Nöl-am	Mäl-am
Völ-ēs	Nöl-ēs	Mäl-ēs
Völ-ēt	Nöl-ēt	Mäl-ēt
<i>Plur.</i> Völ-ēmūs	Nöl-ēmūs	Mäl-ēmūs
Völ-ētīs	Nöl-ētīs	Mäl-ētīs
Völ-ent	Nöl-ent	Mäl-ent

4. Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i> Völ-uī	Nöl-uī	Mäl-uī
Völ-uistī	Nöl-uistī	Mäl-uistī
Völ-uīt	Nöl-uīt	Mäl-uīt
<i>Plur.</i> Völ-uīmūs	Nöl-uīmūs	Mäl-uīmūs
Völ-uistīs	Nöl-uistīs	Mäl-uistīs
Völ-uērunt or -uērē	Nöl-uērunt or -uērē	Mäl-uērunt or -uērē

PR. L. I.

I

5. *Pluperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Völ-uëram	Nöl-uëram	Mäl-uëram
	Völ-uëräs	Nöl-uëräs	Mäl-uëräs
	Völ-uërät	Nöl-uërät	Mäl-uërät
<i>Plur.</i>	Völ-nëramüs	Nöl-nëramüs	Mäl-nëramüs
	Völ-uërätis	Nöl-uërätis	Mäl-uërätis
	Völ-uërant	Nöl-uërant	Mäl-uërant

6. *Future-Perfect.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Völ-uëro	Nöl-uëro	Mäl-uëro
	Völ-uërís	Nöl-uërís	Mäl-uërís
	Völ-uërít	Nöl-uërít	Mäl-uërít
<i>Plur.</i>	Völ-nërimüs	Nöl-nërimüs	Mäl-nërimüs
	Völ-uëritís	Nöl-uëritís	Mäl-uëritís
	Völ-uërint	Nöl-uërint	Mäl-uërint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Vël-im	Nöl-im	Mäl-im
	Vël-is	Nöl-is	Mäl-is
	Vël-ít	Nöl-ít	Mäl-ít
<i>Plur.</i>	Vël-imüs	Nöl-imüs	Mäl-imüs
	Vël-ítis	Nöl-ítis	Mäl-ítis
	Vël-int	Nöl-int	Mäl-int

2. *Imperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Vel-lem	Nol-lem	Mal-lem
	Vel-lës	Nol-lës	Mal-lës
	Vel-lët	Nol-lët	Mal-lët
<i>Plur.</i>	Vel-lëmüs	Nol-lëmüs	Mal-lëmüs
	Vel-lëtis	Nol-lëtis	Mal-lëtis
	Vel-lent	Nol-lent	Mal-lent

3. *Perfect.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Völ-uërim	Nöl-uërim	Mäl-uërim
	Völ-uërís	Nöl-uërís	Mäl-uërís
	Völ-uërít	Nöl-uërít	Mäl-uërít
<i>Plur.</i>	Völ-nërimüs	Nöl-nërimüs	Mäl-nërimüs
	Völ-uëritís	Nöl-uëritís	Mäl-uëritís
	Völ-uërint	Nöl-uërint	Mäl-uërint

4. *Pluperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Völ-uissëm	Nöl-uissëm	Mäl-uissëm
	Völ-uissës	Nöl-uissës	Mäl-uissës
	Völ-uissët	Nöl-uissët	Mäl-uissët
<i>Plur.</i>	Völ-uissëmüs	Nöl-uissëmüs	Mäl-uissëmüs
	Völ-uissëtis	Nöl-uissëtis	Mäl-uissëtis
	Völ-uissent	Nöl-uissent	Mäl-uissent

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

(wanting.)	Nöl-I Nöl-itš	(wanting.)
------------	------------------	------------

Futura.

(wanting.)	Nöl-Ito Nöl-Ito Nöl-itšötš Nöl-unto	(wanting.)
------------	--	------------

INFINITIVE.

Present and Imperfect.

Vel-lš	Nol-lš	Mal-lš
--------	--------	--------

Perfect and Pluperfect.

Völ-uissš	Nöl-uissš	Mäl-uissš
-----------	-----------	-----------

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Völ-ens	Nöl-ens	(wanting.)
---------	---------	------------

EXERCISE XLIII.

A.—1. Ego volo legere, tu vis scribere, frater vult pingere. 2. Ego domi sedere nolo, tu ambulare non vis. 3. Tu ambulare mavis quam domi sedere. 4. Soror saltare mavult quam ambulare. 5. Oro te, ut mecum ludere velis. 6. Dic, cur me comitari nolis. 7. Orabam te, ut mecum ludere velles. 8. Nesciebam, cur me comitari nolles. 9. Si beati esse volumus, sorte nostra contenti esse debemus. 10. Si vis amari, ama!

1. We do not wish to walk in the fields; we prefer to remain at home. 2. We wished to read, you wished to write, (our) brother wished to paint. 3. I knew-not (how) to dance; I preferred to write and to read. 4. I wished to read; but my sister wished to sing and to dance. 5. If you wish to be happy, imitate the examples of good men. 6. Alexander wished to extend his empire beyond the Indi. 7. We do not all obtain those-things which we wish. 8. I had-rather (*pres.*) fight (*inf.*) against enemies than against envy. 9. Pompey was unwilling to depart from the city. 10. I entreat you to (ut) be willing to accompany me.

B.—1. Ego tibi prodesse malo quam obesse. 2. Non dubito, quin mihi prodesse malis quam obesse. 3. Non dubitabam, quin prodesse mihi malles quam obesse. 4. Amicus maluit diligi quam metui. 5. Secundum naturam volent vivere. 6. Cato esse quam videri bonus malebat. 7. Boni esse mavultis quam nobiles et divites. 8. Pythagoras Apollini hostiam immolare noluit. 9. Nolite alicui nimis indulgere. 10. Amici eadem velle debent.

1. I prefer to be good (rather) than to seem (so). 2. Do not* deceive; do not* lie; those things (res) very greatly injure friendship. 3. Epaminondas was unwilling to lie. 4. You wish the same things which I (wish). 5. We had-rather (*pres.*) be (*inf.*) useful to our country than be (*inf.*) rich. 6. A good man will prefer to be loyed (rather) than to be feared. 7. I had-rather be loved by true friends than be rich. 8. The ancient Romans sacrificed very many victims to the gods. 9. Pythagoras was unwilling to indulge anger: he preferred to restrain it. 10. Be unwilling to follow bad examples, my son!

* Say, Be unwilling to Compare No. 9 of the Latin sentences.

5. Fēro, tūli, ferrē, lātum,—to bear, carry, endure.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. Present.		4. Perfect.	
S. Fēr-o	Fēr-am	S. Tūl-I	Tūl-ērim
Fer-s	Fēr-ās	Tūl-istī	Tūl-ērīs
Fer-t	Fēr-āt	Tūl-it	Tūl-ērīt
P. Fēr-imūs	Fēr-amūs	P. Tūl-imūs	Tūl-ērimūs
Fer-tīs	Fēr-ātīs	Tūl-istīs	Tūl-ērītīs
Fēr-unt	Fēr-ant	Tūl-ērunt or ērē	Tūl-ērint
2. Imperfect.		5. Pluperfect.	
S. Fēr-ēbam	Fer-rem	S. Tūl-ēram	Tūl-issem
Fēr-ēbās	Fer-rēs	Tūl-ērās	Tūl-issēs
Fēr-ēbāt	Fer-rēt	Tūl-ērāt	Tūl-issēt
P. Fēr-ēbāmūs	Fer-rēmūs	P. Tūl-ērāmūs	Tūl-issēmūs
Fēr-ēbātīs	Fer-rētīs	Tūl-ērātīs	Tūl-issētīs
Fēr-ēbant	Fer-rent	Tūl-ērant	Tūl-issent
3. Future-Simple.		6. Future-Perfect.	
S. Fēr-am	(wanting.)	S. Tūl-ēro	(wanting.)
Fēr-ēs		Tūl-ērīs	
Fēr-ēt		Tūl-ērīt	
P. Fēr-ēmūs		P. Tūl-ērimūs	
Fēr-ētīs		Tūl-ērītīs	
Fēr-ent		Tūl-ērint	

IMPERATIVE.	
Present.	Fēr
	Fer-tē
Future	Fer-to
	Fer-to
	Fer-tōtē
	Fēr-unto
INFINITIVE.	
Pres. and Imp.	Fer-rē
Perf. and Plup.	Tūl-issē
Future.	Lātūrūs essē

PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	Fēr-ans
Future.	Lātūrūs (a, um)
SUPINES.	
	Lātum
	Lātū
GERUND.	
Gen.	Fēr-endi
	&c.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. <i>Present.</i>		4. <i>Perfect.</i>	
S. Fēr-ōr	Fēr-ār	S. Lātūs sum	Lātūs sim
Fer-rīs, -rē	Fēr-ārīs, -ārē	Lātūs es	Lātūs sis
Fer-tūr	Fēr-ātūr	Lātūs est	Lātūs sit
P. Fēr-īmūr	Fēr-āmūr	P. Lāti sumūs	Lāti simūs
Fēr-īmīni	Fēr-āmīni	Lāti estīs	Lāti sitīs
Fēr-untūr	Fēr-antūr	Lāti sunt	Lāti sint
2. <i>Imperfect.</i>		5. <i>Pluperfect.</i>	
S. Fēr-ēbār	Fer-rēr	S. Lātūs eram	Lātūs essem
Fēr-ēbārīs, -ārē	Fer-rērīs, -ērē	Lātūs erās	Lātūs esses
Fēr-ēbātūr	Fer-rētūr	Lātūs erāt	Lātūs essēt
P. Fēr-ēbāmūr	Fer-rēmūr	P. Lāti eramūs	Lāti essemūs
Fēr-ēbāmīni	Fer-rēmīni	Lāti erātīs	Lāti essētīs
Fēr-ēbantūr	Fer-rentūr	Lāti erānt	Lāti essent
3. <i>Future-Simple.</i>		6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>	
S. Fēr-ār	(wanting.)	S. Lātūs ēro	(wanting.)
Fēr-ērīs, -ērē		Lātūs erīs	
Fēr-ētūr		Lātūs erīt	
P. Fēr-ēmūr		P. Lāti erīmūs	
Fēr-ēmīni		Lāti erītīs	
Fēr-entūr		Lāti erunt	
IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>	Fer-rē Fēr-īmīni	<i>Pres. and Imp.</i>	Fer-ri
<i>Future.</i>	Fer-tōr Fer-tōr Fēr-untōr	<i>Perf. and Plup.</i>	Lātūs essē
		<i>Future.</i>	Lātum iri
		PARTICIPLES.	
		<i>Perfect.</i>	Lātūs (a, um)
		<i>Gerundive.</i>	Fēr-endūs (a, um)

The Compounds of fēro are conjugated in the same way, e. g. :

Affēro (ad, fero),	attūli,	allātum,	afferrē,	bring to.
Aufēro (ab, fero),	abstūli,	ablātum,	auferrē,	carry away.
Effēro (ex, fero),	extūli,	ēlātum,	efferrē,	carry out.
Infēro (in, fero),	intūli,	illātum,	inferrē,	carry into.
Offēro (ob, fero),	obtūli,	oblātum,	offerrē,	present.
Perfēro (per, fero),	pertūli,	perlātum,	perferrē,	bear through,
Praefēro (prae, fero),	praetūli,	praelātum,	praeferrē,	prefer. [endure.
Rēfēro (re, fero),	{rētūli rettūli}	rēlātum,	rēferrē,	bring back.

EXERCISE XLIV.

1. Senectus affert prudentiam. 2. Laudo vos, quod misero atque inopi auxilium fertis. 3. Ferre laborem consuetudo docet. 4. Nihil

potest praeferri virtuti. 5. Curabamus, ut vobis auxilium ferremus. 6. Rex curabat, ut inopibus civibus auxilium ferretur. 7. Non omnis ager, qui seritur, fert fruges. 8. Agricola paupertatis onus patienter tulit. 9. Fer patienter laborem. 10. Milites in itineribus multas aerumnas pertulerunt.

1. Socrates bore hardships most patiently. 2. Learn thou to bear well pleasure and pain. 3. Cato bore old age excellently-well (*superl.* of bene). 4. There is no doubt that old age brings many sorrows with it (*secum*). 5. Caesar ordered two cohorts to bring assistance to the cavalry. 6. I have learned to bring assistance to the wretched. 7. A sailor ought to be able to bear patiently the hardships of the sea. 8. A good man is able to bear with even mind the hardships of life. 9. Who can endure the discourse of this unlearned man? 10. The Romans knew (how) to bear with even mind the greatest disasters.

6. *Ēo, ivi or ii, Irē, Itum,—to go.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S.	Ē-o	E-am		S.	Ī-vī or Ī-i	Ī-vērim or Ī-ērim	
	Ī-s	E-ās			Ī-vistī	&c. Ī-vērīs	&c.
	Ī-t	E-āt			Ī-vīt	&c. Ī-vērīt	&c.
P.	Ī-mūs	E-āmūs		P.	Ī-vimūs	&c. Ī-vērimūs	&c.
	Ī-tis	E-ātīs			Ī-vistīs	&c. Ī-vērītīs	&c.
	E-unt	E-ant			Ī-vērunt	&c. Ī-vērint	&c.
				or Ī-vērē			
2. <i>Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Pluperfect.</i>			
S.	Ī-bam	Ī-rem		S.	Ī-vēram or Ī-vissem, Ī-issem,		
	Ī-bās	Ī-rēs			Ī-eram	or Ī-ssem	
	Ī-bāt	Ī-rēt			Ī-vērās	&c. Ī-vissēs	&c.
P.	Ī-bāmūs	Ī-rēmūs			Ī-vērāt	&c. Ī-vissēt	&c.
	Ī-bātīs	Ī-rētīs		P.	Ī-vērāmūs	&c. Ī-vissēmūs	&c.
	Ī-bant	Ī-rent			Ī-vērātīs	&c. Ī-vissētīs	&c.
					Ī-vērant	&c. Ī-vissent	&c.
3. <i>Future-Simple.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Ī-bo	(wanting.)		S.	Ī-vēro or Ī-ēro	(wanting.)	
	Ī-bīs				Ī-vērīs	&c.	
	Ī-bīt				Ī-vērīt	&c.	
P.	Ī-bimūs			P.	Ī-vērimūs	&c.	
	Ī-bītīs				Ī-vērītīs	&c.	
	Ī-bunt				Ī-vērint	&c.	

IMPERATIVE.

Present.		Future.	
	<i>Ī</i>		<i>Ī-to</i>
	<i>Ī-tē</i>		<i>Ī-to</i>
			<i>Ī-tētē</i>
			<i>Ī-unto</i>

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Pres. and Imp.</i>	<i>Ī-rē</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Ī-ans (Gen. ĭ-antis)</i>
<i>Perf. and Plup.</i>	<i>Ī-vissē, ĩssē, or issē</i>	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Ī-tūrus (ā, um)</i>
<i>Futura.</i>	<i>Ī-tūrus essē</i>		
GERUND.		SUPINE.	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ī-undi, &c.</i>		<i>Ī-tum</i>

The Compounds of *ēo* are conjugated in the same way. The following are the principal:—

<i>āb-ēo,</i>	<i>āb-ī,</i>	<i>āb-ītum,</i>	<i>to go away.</i>
<i>ād-ēo,</i>	<i>&c.</i>		<i>to go to.</i>
<i>cō-ēo,</i>	<i>&c.</i>		<i>to join together.</i>
<i>ex-ēo,</i>	<i>&c.</i>		<i>to go out.</i>
<i>in-ēo, intrō-ēo,</i>	<i>&c.</i>		<i>to go into, enter.</i>
<i>intēr-ēo,</i>	<i>&c.</i>		<i>to perish.</i>
<i>ōb-ēo,</i>	<i>&c.</i>		<i>to meet; esp. to meet death; to die.</i>
<i>pēr-ēo,</i>	<i>&c.</i>		<i>to perish.</i>
<i>prae-ēo,</i>	<i>&c.</i>		<i>to go before.</i>
<i>praetēr-ēo,</i>	<i>&c.</i>		<i>to pass by.</i>
<i>rēd-ēo,</i>	<i>&c.</i>		<i>to return.</i>
<i>sūb-ēo,</i>	<i>&c.</i>		<i>to go up to.</i>
<i>trans-ēo,</i>	<i>&c.</i>		<i>to cross over.</i>

N.B. In the Compounds the form *ī* is used in preference to *iv*.

EXERCISE XLV.

1. Ego abeo, tu ex itinere redis. 2. Post mortem corpus interit, animus nunquam interibit. 3. Quum animi nostri ex corporibus exierint, non interibunt. 4. In pugna atrocissima multi fortissimi milites perierunt. 5. Curare debemus, ne vitam ignave transeamus. 6. Milites e castris redeuntes occisi sunt. 7. Socrates aequo atque hilari animo diem supremum obiit. 8. Magna pars militum fame et frigore interiit. 9. Alpes nemo unquam ante Hannibalem cum exercitu transierat. 10. Alexander adire ad Jovis oraculum statuit.

1. Very many (persons) spend (transeo) their life indolently. 2. Let us go-out (*pres. subj.*) from the camp; let us return (*pres. subj.*) into the city. 3. Caesar threw a bridge over the river, in-order-that his soldiers might cross on foot (*pedibus*). 4. A brave man will meet his last day with even mind. 5. Fifteen thousand of the Romans perished in that sanguinary battle. 6. We ought all to be able to meet (our) last day with even mind. 7. After the battle very many perished of hunger (*abl.*) and cold (*abl.*). 8. Let us go-to (*pres. subj.*) the temples of the gods. 9. I pass-by very many things in silence. 10. Italy is fortified by the Alps, (those) most lofty mountains, which an army will not easily cross-over,

7. *Fio, factus sum, fieri*,—to become, or be made, to happen.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				3. <i>Future.</i>			
S. <i>Fi-o</i>		<i>Fi-am</i>		S. <i>Fi-am</i>		(wanting.)	
<i>Fi-s</i>		<i>Fi-ās</i>		<i>Fi-ēs</i>			
<i>Fi-t</i> or <i>fi-t</i>		<i>Fi-āt</i>		<i>Fi-ēt</i>			
P. [<i>Fi-mūs</i>]		<i>Fi-āmūs</i>		P. <i>Fi-ēmūs</i>			
[<i>Fi-tīs</i>]		<i>Fi-ātīs</i>		<i>Fi-ētīs</i>			
<i>Fi-unt</i>		<i>Fi-ant</i>		<i>Fi-ent</i>			
2. <i>Imperfect.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S. <i>Fi-ēbam</i>		<i>Fi-ērem</i>		<i>Factūs sum, &c.</i>		<i>Factūs sim, &c.</i>	
<i>Fi-ēbās</i>		<i>Fi-ērēs</i>		5. <i>Pluperfect.</i>			
<i>Fi-ēbāt</i>		<i>Fi-ērēt</i>		<i>Factūs eram, &c.</i>		<i>Factūs essem, &c.</i>	
P. <i>Fi-ēbāmūs</i>		<i>Fi-ērēmūs</i>		6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
<i>Fi-ēbātīs</i>		<i>Fi-ērētīs</i>		<i>Factūs ero, &c.</i>		(wanting.)	
<i>Fi-ēbant</i>		<i>Fi-erent</i>					

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Present.	<i>Fi, Fi-tē</i>	Pres. and Imp.	<i>Fi-ēri</i>
PARTICIPLES.		Perf. and Plup.	<i>Factus essē</i>
Perfect.	<i>Factus (a, um)</i>	Future.	<i>Factum iri</i>
Gerundive.	<i>Faciendūs (a, um)</i>		

Fio is used as the Passive of *facio*.

EXERCISE XLVI.

1. Nemo fit casu bonus. 2. Ex amico inimicus, ex inimico amicus fieri potest. 3. Senectute prudentior fis. 4. Nemo ignavia immortalis factus est. 5. Deus dixit: fiat, et factus est mundus. 6. Apud veteres Romanos ex agricolis fiebant consules. 7. Themistoclis consilio factum est, ut Athenienses urbem relinquerent. 8. Onus quod bene fertur leve fit. 9. Quod factum est, infectum fieri non potest. 10. Qui noxium adjuvabit, fiet socius culpae.

1. No one becomes altogether-base (*superl.*) by chance. 2. This heavy burden was made light by patience. 3. There is no doubt that the heaviest griefs become lighter by patience. 4. Bear these things through, citizens: (things) done cannot be made undone. 5. In time our soldiers will be made more daring. 6. Two consuls were appointed (made). 7. There is no doubt that the danger has become more severe with time. 8. In the winter (*hibernus, adj.*) time the days become shorter and the nights longer. 9. In the time of Philip, the Athenians had become the allies of the Romans. 10. Do not assist a guilty-person; in-that-way you will become a partner in (= of) his fault.

8. NEUTER-PASSIVE VERBS.

Besides *Fio* several other Intransitive Verbs form their Perfect tenses after the manner of Passives. The principal of these are the following:—

<i>Audeo, ausus sum, audēre,</i>	<i>to dare, venture.</i>
<i>Fido, fisis sum, fidēre (usu. with Dat.),</i>	<i>to trust.</i>
<i>Gaudeo, gāvisus sum, gaudēre,</i>	<i>to rejoice.</i>
<i>Sōleo, sōlītus sum, sōlēre,</i>	<i>to be accustomed.</i>

So too *coeno*, *to sup* or *dine*, often takes *coenātus sum*, and *jūro*, *to swear*, *jurātus sum*, instead of *coenāvi*, *jurāvi*. Such Verbs are called Semi-Deponents or Neuter-Passives.

NOTE.—The Future Infinitive of these Verbs is formed as in the Active voice : *ausūrus essē*, &c.

EXERCISE XLVII.

1. Nonnullae aves prope ad domicilia hominum accedere audent. 2. Optimus ille vir mori ausus est; non autem mentiri. 3. Canes solebant currentes bibere in flumine Nilo. 4. Jam coenati eramus, et in horto ambulabamus. 5. Maxime gavisus sunt cives quod urbs servata erat. 6. In has leges jurati estis, et debetis jusjurandum vestrum conservare. 7. Solitus est Solon aliquid quotidie addiscere. 8. Multum gavisus sunt Romani quod Poenos navali praelio vicerant. 9. Caesar fisis est rebus suis. 10. Gavisus est consul quod illum tam fidelem socium repererat.

1. The ancient Britons were accustomed to clothe themselves with skins. 2. Some animals are accustomed to dwell both (et) in the water and on (in) land. 3. The Helvetii were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them). 4. The Romans rejoiced when Cicero returned to the city. 5. The general trusted to himself. 6. Dare to die, citizens! 7. When you return (*fut.-perf.*), we shall already have dined. 8. All the magistrates had sworn to (*in* with *acc.*) the laws. 9. We ought to rejoice because the war has been brought-to-an-end (*finis*): 10. The whole city rejoiced that (*quod*) the conspiracy had been discovered.



XXXII.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs :—

I. VERBS WHICH DENOTE MENTAL STATES.

Děošť, děouřt, děoěřě,	<i>it is seemly, becomes.</i>
Děděošť, děděouřt, děděoěřě,	<i>it is unseemly, unbecomingly.</i>
Líbět, líbuřt & líbitum est, líběřě,	<i>it pleases. [coming.]</i>
Lícět, lícuřt & lícitur est, lícoěřě,	<i>it is lawful, it is allowed.</i>
Líquět, líquěřě,	<i>it is clear.</i>
Mísěřět or mísěřětūr, mísěřitum est, mísěřěřě,	<i>it excites pity.</i>
Ōportět, ōportuřt, ōportěřě,	<i>it behoves; (one) ought.</i>
Pígět, píguřt & pígitum est, pígěřě,	<i>it vexes.</i>
Plácět, plācuřt or plācitur est, plācoěřě,	<i>it pleases.</i>
Poenítět, poenítuřt, poenítěřě,	<i>it causes sorrow, repents.</i>
Pūdět, pūduřt or pūdītum est, pūděřě,	<i>it shames.</i>
Taědět, (pertaesum est,) taěděřě,	<i>it disgusts, wearies.</i>

The Persons are expressed in the following way:—

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	Pūdět mē, <i>it shames me, or I am ashamed.</i>
	Pūdět tē, <i>it shames thee, or thou art ashamed.</i>
	Pūdět eum, <i>it shames him, or he is ashamed.</i>
	Pūdět nōs, <i>it shames us, or we are ashamed.</i>
	Pūdět vōs, <i>it shames you, or ye are ashamed.</i>
	Pūdět eōs, <i>it shames them, or they are ashamed.</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Pūdēbāt mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs, <i>it shamed me, thee, him, us, &c., or I, thou, he, we, &c., were ashamed.</i>
<i>Fut.-Simp.</i>	Pūdēbīt mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs, <i>it will shame me, thee, him, us, &c., or I, thou, he, we, &c., will be ashamed.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	Pūduřt mē, tē, eum, &c., <i>I, thou, he, &c., was ashamed.</i>
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	Pūduěřāt mē, tē, eum, &c., <i>I, thou, he, &c., had been ashamed.</i>
<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	Pūduěřīt mē, tē, eum, &c., <i>I, thou, he, &c., will have been ashamed.</i>

And similarly for the Subjunctive Mood. The Imperative is not found; the Pres. of the Subjunctive being used instead; as, pudeat te, *let it shame thee, or be ashamed!*

All these Verbs govern the subject in the Accusative Case, except libet, licet, liquet, and placet, which govern the Dative: as, mihi libet, *it pleases me; mihi licet, it is lawful for me, I am at liberty, &c.*

II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

Grandînăt, ăvît, ărě,	<i>it hails.</i>
Ningît, ninxît, ningěrě,	<i>it snows.</i>
Plăit, plăit or plăvît, pluěrě,	<i>it rains.</i>
Tônăt, tōnuît, tōnărě,	<i>it thunders.</i>
Lūcescît, (illuxit,) lūcescěrě,	<i>it becomes light.</i>
Vespěrascît, vespěravît, vespěrascěrě,	<i>evening comes on.</i>

EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. Me pudet poenitetque stultitiae meae. 2. Homines infamiae suae neque pudet neque taedet. 3. Nos oportet hoc facere. 4. Nobis non licebit castris exire. 5. Me civitatis morum piget taedetque. 6. Oratorem irasci minime decet. 7. Non libet mihi deplorare vitam. 8. Placuit Caesari, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret. 9. Pueros decet tacere. 10. Si forte tonuerat, veteres tribuere solebant Jovi.

1. That wicked man (*acc.*) repents not of his crime (*scelus*). 2. What does it behove us to do? 3. It behoved you to maintain the laws. 4. It-is-unbecoming-in a citizen to deceive his fellow-citizens. 5. I am vexed and disgusted at the folly (*gen.*) of these men. 6. In the winter it seldom thunders; in the summer it seldom snows. 7. Evening-is-coming-on; let us go-out-from the fields and let us return to the city. 8. On the same day it thundered, hailed, snowed, (and) rained. 9. You may (it is allowed to you) go forth (*inf.*) from the city, citizens! 10. Dare to be free, Romans! it is allowed to all to die!

PART II

SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

The pupil should repeat the Syntactical Rules already given:—

Page				Page				Page			
RULE 1	..	..	4	RULE 7	..	..	13	RULE 13	..	..	48
" 2	..	..	4	" 8	..	21	(22)	" 14	..	..	49
" 3	..	..	4	" 9	..	25	(26)	" 15	..	..	62
" 4	..	..	4	" 10	..	..	36	" 16	..	..	70
" 5	..	..	6	" 11	..	..	46	" 17	..	..	71
" 6	..	..	10	" 12	..	..	48				

XXXIII.—THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE COMPARATIVE.

RULE 18.—After Adjectives in the Comparative degree *quam* may be omitted and the Ablative used instead of the Nominative or Accusative: *as, vilius argentum est auro, silver is more common than gold.*

EXERCISE XLIX.

1. *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.* 2. *Deus major et potentior est cunctis.* 3. *Nihil est majus amicitia, nihil jucundius.* 4. *Homini Deus nihil mente praestabilius dedit.* 5. *Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior esse videtur scientia.* 6. *Elephanto nulla belluarum prudentior est.* 7. *Tullus Hostilius non solum proximo regi dissimilis, sed ferocior etiam Romulo fuit.* 8. *Humana omnia inferiora sunt virtute.* 9. *Phidiae simulacris nihil est perfectius.* 10. *Sol major et splendidior est luna.*

1. What is brighter than the sun? What more excellent than virtue? 2. Who doubts that the sun is larger than the moon? 3. The earth is greater than the moon; the sun than the earth. 4. Silver and gold are brighter than iron. 5. The elephant is more sagacious than all (other) beasts. 6. There is no doubt that the knowledge of these things is better than the ignorance (of them). 7. Caesar was more powerful than all (the rest of) the citizens.

8. What is commoner than water? yet (*autem*) what is more useful? 9. Hatred is better than pretence of friendship. 10. No-one of the Athenians is more renowned than Socrates.

XXXIV.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

RULE 19.—When a subordinate clause has a different subject from the subject of the principal clause, the English Verb in the subordinate clause is in Latin expressed by a Substantive and Participle in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the **ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE**: as, *sōlē ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vidērunt*, *when the sun had risen* [lit. *the sun having risen*] *the Romans saw the enemy*.

There is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs. But the English Perfect Participle Active may often be expressed by means of the Latin Perfect Participle Passive, in the Ablative Absolute: as, *Caesār, expōsītō exercitū, ad hostēs contendit*, *Caesar, having landed the army* [lit. *the army having been landed*], *hastens against the enemy*.

N.B. The pupil must carefully observe that it is not the Subject of the principal sentence, but the Accusative after the Verb which becomes the Ablative Absolute.

EXERCISE L.

A.—1. Sole oriente, nox fugit. 2. Recuperatā pace, artes efflorescunt. 3. Alpius superatis, Hannibal in Italiam venit. 4. Labitur aetas, nobis non sentientibus. 5. Pompeius, ineunte vere, bellum suscepit. 6. His paratis rebus, Caesar milites naves conscendere jubet. 7. Cognito hostium adventu, Caesar naves ex portu educit. 8. Caesar, exposito exercitu, ad hostes contendet. 9. Nivibus solutis, intumescere solent flumina. 10. Solon et Pisis-tratus, Servio Tullio regnante, vixerunt.

NOTE.—In the two following Exercises, the words which are to be expressed by the Ablative Absolute are put in italics.

1. *When the sun rises (the sun rising)*, all (things) become brighter. 2. *When the moon had risen*, the night was made brighter. 3. *When Cato was slain*, the commonwealth perished. 4. *When these things were done*, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark. 5. *Caesar, after he had overcome the Gauls*, waged war with Pompeius. 6. *Having heard these things*, he led his army to the banks of the river. 7. *Whilst Servius Tullius was king (Serv. Tull. being-king)*, the city was fortified with a wall of stone. 8. *Having learned these things*, he hastened into the territory of the enemy.

9. *Having thrown a bridge across the river (the river being joined by a bridge)*, he orders the soldiers to cross. 10. *Having disembarked his soldiers*, he began to lay waste the lands of the enemy.

B.—1. Bello Punico confecto, triumphavit Scipio cum summo honore. 2. Dario apud Arbela victo, Alexander Asia potitus est. 3. His literis perlectis, consul comprehendit eos jubet. 4. Conjuratōne detecta, jam servata esse videbatur civitas. 5. Senatu convocato, Cicero literas recitat quas de conjuratione acceperat. 6. His rebus paratis, contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in agros Helvetiorum. 7. Delectu habito, consul ad exercitum statim proficiscitur. 8. Catone mortuo, nulla jam erat respublica. 9. Caesare occiso, gravissime vexata est respublica bello civili. 10. Proelio commisso, conantur Galli aciem Romanorum perrumpere.

1. *Having learned these things*, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark immediately. 2. *Having learned their (eorum) plan*, Caesar led his army into the territories of Cassivellaunus. 3. Caesar, *having sent forward his cavalry*, ordered the legions immediately to follow up. 4. Our men, *having slain many of (ex) the enemy*, returned to the camp. 5. Cassivellaunus, *having heard of this disaster*, sends ambassadors to (ad) Caesar concerning peace. 6. *Having extended (his) empire as far as the Indus*, Alexander returned towards the west. 7. *When this war is finished*, we shall be able to enjoy peace. 8. (*With you (for) our leader*), we shall be safe. 9. *When old age is attained (adeptus*)*, our bodies become more feeble. 10. *Having slain many of (ex) the enemy*, he led his army into winter quarters.

* *Adeptus*, with a few other Perf. Participles of Deponent Verbs, is used both in an Active and Passive sense.

XXXV.—THE ACCUSATIVE EXPRESSING DURATION OR EXTENT OF TIME, DISTANCE, AND DIMENSION.

RULE 20.—The answers to the questions, *How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How old?* are put in Latin in the Accusative case: as, *sex et viginti annos regnavit*, he reigned twenty-six years; *aggērem lātum pēdēs trēcentōs*, altum pēdēs quinquāgintā exstruxērunt, they heaped up a mound 300 feet broad and 50 feet high.

The Accusative, answering the question *How long?* is called the accusative of duration of time.

EXERCISE LI.

1. Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit. 2. Quaedam bestiolae unum diem vivunt. 3. Augustus septem horas dormiebat. 4. Troja decem annos a Graecis obsessa est. 5. Cato annos quinque et octoginta natus excessit e vita. 6. Dionysius annos quinque et

iginti natus dominatum occupavit. 7. Turris pedes ducentos alta est. 8. Saguntini aggerem duxerunt trecentos pedes longum et viginti pedes altum. 9. Hanno tria passuum millia ab ipsa urbe castra posuit. 10. Campus Marathon abest ab oppido Atheniensium circiter millia passuum decem.

1. Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh king of the Romans, reigned twenty four years. 2. They build a wall fifty feet high, and eight feet broad. 3. The walls of Athens were distant about four thousand paces (*gen.*) from the sea. 4. The towers were about a hundred feet high. 5. Socrates was put-to-death, aged seventy years. 6. Plato lived eighty one years. 7. It is not enough to have lived many years; it behoves (us) to have lived (them) well. 8. The city (of) Troy was besieged ten years on-account-of (ob) a single (unus) woman. 9. Socrates lived seventy years. 10. Some men live a hundred years.

XXXVI.—CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

RULE 21.—In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative case without prepositions: as, Consul Rōmam prōfectūs est, *the Consul set out for Rome.*

In like manner are used, dōmum (*to one's*) home; rūs, *to the country.*

In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative case without prepositions: as, Consul Rōmā Athēnās prōfectūs est, *the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

In like manner are used, dōmō, *from home*; rūrē, *from the country.*

EXERCISE LII.

1. Curius primus Romam elephantos quattuor duxit. 2. Pompeius Luceriā proficiscitur Canusium. 3. Lycurgus Cretam profectus est, ibique perpetuum exilium egit. 4. Aeschines cessit Athenis et se Rhodum contulit. 5. Legati Atheniensium Lacedaemonem profecti sunt, ut auxilium contra Persas peterent. 6. Acceptis mandatis, Roscius cum Lucio Caesare Capuam pervenit. 7. Alcibiades, maximis rebus gestis, domum reversus est. 8. Leonidas cum trecentis iis, quos eduxerat Spartā, se opposuit hostibus. 9. Tiberius domo cessit, et se rus contulit. 10. Alexander, Dario apud Arbelam victo, Babylonem profectus est.

1. In the summer I shall set out for Venusia. 2. He departed from Athens and returned to Rome. 3. We will go to Crete, you to Rhodes, but the others will remain in the city. 4. Caesar having done these things (*ablative absolute*), returned immediately home. 5. He departed from Rome and set out for Luceria. 6. I will

betake myself to Lacedaemon; there I shall be safe. 7. Do not set out to the country. 8. The consuls had already arrived at Luceria (*acc.*). 9. The ambassadors of the Carthaginians came to Rome in-order-to (ut) seek-for peace. 10. Pompeius having been slain (*abl. absol.*), Caesar was unwilling to return immediately to Rome.

RULE 22.—In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive case, if the Noun be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition; as,

Rōmæ Consulēs, Athēnīs Archontes, Carthāgīnē Suffētēs, sive iudicēs, quōtannīs creābantur, *At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually.*

Diōnysiūs Cōrīnthī puērōs docēbāt, *Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*

In like manner are used hūmī, *on the ground*; dōmī, *at home*; rūrī, *in the country*.

EXERCISE LIII.

1. Pompeius hiemare Dyrrachii et Apolloniae constituerat. 2. Delphis Apollinis oraculum fuit. 3. Conon plurimum Cypri vixit, Timotheus Lesbi. 4. Multos annos domi nostrae vixit. 5. Alexander Magnus Babylone morbo consumptus est. 6. Dionysius multos annos Corinthi vixit. 7. Horatius Venusiae natus est. 8. Catilina humi jacet. 9. Talis (*such*) Romae Fabricius, qualis (*as*) Aristides Athenis fuit. 10. Lycurgus Cretae perpetuum exilium egit.

1. Marius and Cicero were born at Arpinum. 2. Atticus, a friend of Cicero, lived many years at Athens. 3. Your friend lived many years at my house. 4. Dionysius, having been driven-out-of Syracuse, used-to-teach (*imperf.*) boys at Corinth. 5. Many apples and pears lay on the ground. 6. At Cannae a sanguinary battle was fought (*committo*) between the Romans and Hannibal. 7. I had-rather dwell* at home than in the country. 8. Tiberius retired from Rome and lived in exile at Rhodes. 9. Very many great generals, few poets were born at Rome. 10. At Lacedaemon, both (*et*) boys and girls were most carefully trained up (*imperf.*).

* Say, *I prefer to dwell.*

XXXVII.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AND INFINITIVE.

RULE 23.—The Accusative Case and the Infinitive are used:

I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing*: as, histōriā narrāt Rōmā ā Rōmūlō conditam essē, *history relates that Rome was founded by Romulus*; sentīimūs cālērē ignem,

nivem esse albam, dulcē (essē) mēl, *we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.*

- II. After such expressions as nōtum est, *it is known*; justum est, *it is just*; vērissimilē est, *it is probable*; constāt, *it is agreed, it is certain, &c.*: as, constāt Rōmam & Rōmūlō conditam esse, *it is agreed that Rome was founded by Romulus.*

EXERCISE LIV.

A.—1. Equitatum Caesaris advenire videmus. 2. Thales aquam dixit esse initium rerum. 3. Selon rempublicam praemiis et poenis contineri dixit. 4. Nemo negabit mundum a Deo conservari. 5. Vox quondam audita est, Romam a Gallis captum iri. 6. Epaminondas animadvertibat, totum exercitum propter ducum imprudentiam peritum esse. 7. Pollicebaris te venturum esse. 8. Helvetii polliciti sunt se Caesari obsides dāturos (esse). 9. Videmus aves auctumno in alias terras migrare. 10. Scio haec vera esse.

1. We know that the sun is larger than the moon. 2. Caesar learns that the enemy are-gathering-together all their forces. 3. The oracle of Delphi said that Socrates was (*infin. pres.*) the wisest of all men. 4. We see that the flowers blossom forth. 5. We know that the body perishes, but that the soul is immortal. 6. Socrates thought (*imperf.*) that knowledge was more excellent than all (other) things. 7. Who has not heard that the Romans were conquered by Hannibal at (*apud*) Cannae? 8. We see that all things are done by the wisdom of God. 9. We know that the sun is very-far distant (*absum*) from the earth. 10. We promise that we will be faithful to you.

B.—1. Credibile est hominum causā factum esse mundum. 2. Verum est amicitiam nisi inter bonos esse non posse. 3. Traditum est Homerum caecum fuisse. 4. Hannibalem in Asia mortuum esse constat. 5. Bestiis rationem deesse manifestum est. 6. Omnes cives legibus parere aequum est. 7. Certum est liberos a parentibus amari. 8. Sororem tuam hac aestate reversuram esse non verisimile est. 9. Constat Romanos eodem anno duas urbes florentissimas, Carthaginem et Corinthum, delevisse. 10. Memoriae proditum est, Latonam confugisse Delum atque ibi Apollinem Dianamque peperisse.

1. It is just that you (should) punish me. 2. It is probable that the stars are suns. 3. It is true that we have been conquered. 4. It has been handed down to us that Socrates was the wisest of all the Greeks. 5. It is manifest that the world was not made by chance. 6. It is agreed amongst all writers that Romulus was (*perf.*) the first king of the Romans. 7. It is manifest that you make-a-mistake. 8. It is handed down (*perf.*) to us by the poets that a woman was the cause of the Trojan war. 9. It is certain that the soul ought to obey reason. 10. It is manifest that we shall be conquered unless we remain (*fut.-perf.*) in the city.

XXXVIII.—DIRECT QUESTIONS.

RULE 24.—Questions are usually put in Latin with the help of Interrogative words or particles: as, *Quid agis?* *What are you doing?* *Pūtas-nē?* *Do you think?* *Non-nē pūtās?* *Do you not think?*

The principal Interrogative particles are *nē*, *num*, *utrum*, *ān*. Of these *nē* is always written as an enclitic like the Conjunction *que*. *Utrum* and *ān* are used only when two alternatives are spoken of; and *an* always with the second alternative.

Nē does not need to be expressed by any English word, as *Visnē?* *Do you wish?* *Nonnē pūtās?* *Do you not think?*

Utrum . . . *ān* may be translated by *whether* . . . or, as *Utrum sōl ān lūnā mājōr est?* *Whether is the sun or the moon the greater?*

Num has a negative force, as *Num itā pūtās = You don't think so, do you?* and is to be used when the answer *No* is looked for.

EXERCISE LV.

A.—1. *Estne voluptas summum bonum?* 2. *Nonne fuit Socrates antiquorum sapientissimus?* 3. *Nonne sol longe major est quam luna?* 4. *Num ita audes dicere?* 5. *Utrum est aurum gravius an argentum?* 6. *Utrum Socrates an Plato sapientior fuit?* 7. *Suntne haec vera bona?* 8. *Num tu has res melius quam magister tuus intelligis?* 9. *Nonne omnes discere oportet vitam tranquillo animo relinquere?* 10. *Num putas argentum et aurum cariora esse virtute et prudentiā?*

1. Are these things true? 2. Do you believe that pain is the greatest evil? 3. Was not (begin with *nonne*) Pythagoras a very great (*summus*) philosopher? 4. You don't think that I am a liar, do you? 5. Is gold more excellent than wisdom? (No.) 6. Are you wiser than (your) father? (No.) 7. Whether is iron or gold more useful? 8. Is not (begin with *nonne*) iron far more useful than gold? 9. Whether do you prefer this or that? 10. Is not (begin with *nonne*) the world governed by the Divine wisdom?

B.—1. *Nonne urbs Roma a Gallis capta et direpta est?* 2. *Nonne omnes consentiunt Scipionem primum fuisse virum?* 3. *Num audes dicere haec benevolo animo facta esse?* 4. *Utrum Romae an ruri hibernis mensibus manere mavis?* 5. *Utrum est turpitudine omnium malorum maximum an non?* 6. *Utrum haec benevolo an malevolo animo fecisti?* 7. *Utrum Cato an Caesar tibi praestantior et clarior vir esse videtur?* 8. *Utrum esse an videri bonus mavis?*

9. Num audes dicere, Lucreti, haec casu facta esse? tune ita credis?
 10. Estne verum, quod nonnulli dicunt, animos ex aliis (*corporibus*) in alia corpora migrare?

1. Is it true that the sun is made-of-fire? 2. Is not Plato the most eloquent of philosophers? 3. Are not Livy and Sallust most elegant writers? 4. Does it not do good to all to read the works [books] of that (*ille*) most excellent writer? 5. Are you so foolish that (*ut*) you should believe all these things to have been made by chance? 6. Is the body mortal? Is the soul immortal? 7. Are not the books of Plato full of these subjects (*res*)? 8. Is Sallust or Livy (begin with *utrum*) the more elegant writer? Are-you-able to answer? 9. Does it (*num*) become a philosopher to lament-over his life? Does it not behove him to act bravely? 10. Do all the philosophers agree concerning these subjects?

XXXIX.—INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

RULE 25.—Indirect questions are those which are quoted as having been asked, or are dependent upon some word expressing doubt, uncertainty, or wonder, in the former part of the sentence: as, Rōgābo quid factum sit, *I will ask what has been done*; Mirum est quae fūerit causā, *It is strange what the reason may have been*; Vidēbo num rediērit, *I will see whether he has returned*. The dependent verb is always put in the Subjunctive Mood.

RULE 26.—The Tense of the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood is determined by that of the verb in the former part of the sentence upon which it depends. (1.) If the verb in the former clause expresses *Present* or *Future Time*, the verb in the dependent clause is put in the Present or Perfect Tense Subjunctive. (2.) If the verb in the principal clause expresses *Past Time*, the verb in the dependent clause is put in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense Subjunctive.

Present, Perfect, and Future Time.

PRESENT: { Scio quid agās,
 { Scio quid egēris,
 { Scio quid actūrus sis,

I know what you are doing.
I know what you have done.
I know what you are going to do.

PERFECT: { Cognōvi quid agās,
 { Cognōvi quid egēris,
 { Cognōvi quid actūrus sis,

I have learnt what you are doing.
I have learnt what you have done.
I have learnt what you are going to do.

FUTURE.	Audiam quid agās,	<i>I shall hear what you are doing.</i>
	Audiam quid egēris,	<i>I shall hear what you have done.</i>
	Audiam quid actūrus sis,	<i>I shall hear what you are going to do.</i>

Past Time.

IMPERF.	Sciēbam quid agērēs,	<i>I knew what you were doing.</i>
	Sciēbam quid egīssēs,	<i>I knew what you had done.</i>
	Sciēbam quid actūrus essēs,	<i>I knew what you were going to do.</i>
PERFECT.	Cognōvī quid agērēs,	<i>I learnt what you were doing.</i>
	Cognōvī quid egīssēs,	<i>I learnt what you had done.</i>
	Cognōvī quid actūrus essēs,	<i>I learnt what you were going to do.</i>
PLUP- PERFECT.	Cognōvēram quid agērēs,	<i>I had learnt what you were doing.</i>
	Cognōvēram quid egīssēs,	<i>I had learnt what you had done.</i>
	Cognōvēram quid actūrus essēs,	<i>I had learnt what you were going to do.</i>

The same Rule is applicable to the sequence of Tenses in the Subjunctive Mood universally. See Exercises xxv., xxvi., xxvii., xxviii. (the Subjunctive Mood).

N.B. In single Indirect Questions *whether* is generally expressed by *num*, which then ceases to have a negative force. In double Indirect Questions it is expressed either by *utrum* or *-ne*.

EXERCISE LVI.

N.B. In the following examples the Subjunctive *must* in English be rendered by the Indicative.

A.—1. Rogo quid agatis. 2. Rogavit quid agerent. 3. Rogavit quid egissent. 4. Roga tu quid acturi sint. 5. Nescio quare me ex civitate expuleritis. 6. Cognoscere non potuit quanta essent hostium copiae. 7. Speculabimur quot homines in urbem incant et quot excant. 8. Dic mihi, Catilina, cur patriam prodere volueris. 9. Dic mihi, Blaese, ubi corpus abjeceris. 10. Chaerephon ex oraculo quaesivit quis omnium Graecorum sapientissimus esset.

1. I will ask how great the forces of the enemy are. 2. Xenophon inquired of (ex) the oracle what it behoved him to do. 3. I wish to learn where the camp of the enemy is. 4. I do-not-know what it behoves me to do. 5. Tell me, my son, what you are going to do. 6. The son was unwilling to tell what he was going-to-do. 7. Count how many darts have been thrown (*conjicio*) into the tent. 8. I will inquire which-of-the-two has conquered. 9. Socrates used-to-inquire (*imperf.*) what was just, what unjust. 10. It is a great thing to know what things are just, what unjust.

B.—1. Quacram num omnia feliciter evenerint. 2. Jussit eos speculari num hostes ex castris exirent. 3. Visam num adventent

hostes. 4. Subdificilis est quaestio num unquam novi amici sint veteribus antepoenendi? 5. Rogavit nonne haec improba et infamia essent? 6. Rogabo num credat omnia casu facta esse? 7. Quaesivit ex oraculo Croesus, utrum ipse an Cyrus superaturus esset. 8. Saepenumero quaerebant antiqui philosophi mortalitatisne esset animus an immortalis. 9. Num dubium est casune an consilio factus sit mundus? 10. Plane incertum est vicerintne hostes an victi sint.

1. Inquire of (*ex*) him whether he knows these things. 2. It is doubtful whether these things are true. 3. It is uncertain whether (*utrum* or *ne*) he is a good man or a wicked (one). 4. It is doubtful whether he deserve praise (*laudemne*) or blame. 5. He asked whether the dead felt cold and hunger. 6. I know not whether you are sleeping or waking. 7. I doubt whether he will return (*subj.-pres.*) immediately. 8. He asked whether the city was very strongly fortified. 9. This I ask you, whether you were or not (*nonne*) that (*ille*) night in the house of M. Laeca? 10. Do you doubt whether it behoves a good citizen to side-with his country in time of danger?

XL.—ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

RULE 27.—Besides *ut*, *nē*, and *quān* (see Ex. xxv., &c.), the Conjunctions *quō*, *that*, and *quōminūs*, *that not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

1. *Ūt* = *that*, *in order that*, *granting that*, is used to express either a *purpose* or a *consequence*: as, *ēo ūt spectem lūdōs*, *I am going in order that I may look at the games*; *accidit ūt nōn dōmī essem*, *it happened that I was not at home*.

2. *Nē* = *that not*, is used to express a *purpose*, but not a mere consequence: as, *Haec faciō nē mē inimicum tibi pūtēs*, *these things I do that you may not think me your enemy*; but, *sēquitur ūt haec nōn vērā sint*, *it follows that these things are not true*.

Obs. After verbs of *fearing*, *ut* has the meaning of *that not*, and *nē* of *that*: as, *tīmēo ūt dux milītēs ē castris ēducāt*, *I fear that the general will not lead the soldiers out of the camp*; *tīmēo nē dux milītēs ē castris ēducāt*, *I fear that the general will lead the soldiers out of the camp*.

3. *Quān* is used after *negative propositions* and *propositions expressing doubt*: as, *dies nullus est, quān littēras scribam*,

there is no day that I do not write a letter ; nōn dūbīto quīn vērūm dixērīs, I do not doubt you have spoken the truth. (See Ex. xxv., C, &c.)

4. Quō is used for *ut* *ēō*, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that* : haec lex dātā est, quō mālēfīci dēterrērentūr, *this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred* ; portās oppīdī obstruxīt, quō fāciliūs impētum hostium rētardārēt, *he barricaded the gates of the town in order that he might more easily retard the attack of the enemy.*

5. Quōmīnūs, *that not*, is used after verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting, &c.*, and must be frequently translated in English by *from* with a verbal substantive : as, aetās nōs non impēdit quōmīnūs littēras tractēmus, *age does not prevent us from cultivating literature.*

EXERCISE LVII.

A.—1. Enitar ut in omnibus rebus tibi prosim. 2. Hoc te rogo atque oro, ne rempublicam deseras. 3. Contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in fines Nerviorum ut consilia eorum praeveniret. 4. Magnopere tibi suadeo ne improbis illis hominibus confidas. 5. Accidit ut milites impransi essent quum signum datum est. 6. Milites cohortatus est ut fortiter castra defenderent. 7. Nonne omnes cives oportet eniti ut reipublicae prosint? 8. Accidit ut inter Labienum et hostes esset flumen praealtum. 9. Sequitur ut non possim tibi confidere. 10. Enitar ne possis mihi diffidere.

1. I will strive-hard to (*ut*) persuade him. 2. It follows that pleasure is not the highest good. 3. I entreat you to (*ut*) learn to bear patiently bad fortune. 4. We ought to strive-hard that we may be serviceable to (our) native-country. 5. The Helvetii determined to depart from their own territories, in order that they might obtain-possession-of all Gaul. 6. Does it not follow that these things are unjust? 7. So it came to pass (*fio*) that out of (them) all, no one returned to the city. 8. The Helvetii have been so trained (*instituto*) by their ancestors that they are accustomed to receive hostages, not to give them. 9. I will strive earnestly that you may be able to think me a friend. 10. The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to Rome to (*ut*) beg-for peace.

N.B. In future the pupil will be left to himself to discover when the English infinitive denotes a purpose, and must therefore be translated with *ut*.

B.—1. Constituit Caesar pontem in flumine Rheno facere, quo copias suas transduceret. 2. Milites cohortatus est quo mortem fortius obirent. 3. Quid obstat quominus moenia statim oppugne-

mus? 4. Nullo modo introire possum quin me videant. 5. Nullo modo exire potuit quin eum viderent. 6. Minimum abest quin sim miserrimus. 7. Dies fere nullus est quin Satrius domum meam ventitet. 8. Facere non possum quin tibi dolores meos enarrem. 9. Quis dubitat quin omnes oporteat patriae suae adesse? 10. Recusare non possum quin me comiteris.

1. He resolved to carry a wall round the camp that (*quo*)* the army might be more secure (*tutus*). 2. He fortified the camp that he might the more easily keep off the enemy. 3. There is no day that I do not hear many wonderful things. 4. Who can doubt that Hannibal was a very great (*summus*) general? 5. There was nobody who did not (*quin*) rejoice greatly. 6. I cannot but hope that we shall be conquerors. 7. Nobody is so brave but (*quin*) he sometimes feels fear. 8. We are preparing arms, not that (*ut*) we may attack others, but that (*quo*) we may better defend our country. 9. There was nothing wanting *that* I should be very wretched. 10. Our soldiers could not go forth from the camp *but* (*quin*) they were overwhelmed with missiles.

* *Quo* is used in preference to *ut* when there is a comparative in the clause which it introduces.

C.—1. Per Trebonium stetit quominus oppido potirentur. 2. Me infirmitas valetudinis tenuit quominus ad ludos venirem. 3. Hiems prohibuit quominus a te literas haberemus. 4. Bibulum deterruerunt quominus domo exiret. 5. Deterrent me latrones quominus in illam partem urbis eam. 6. Quid tibi obstabat quominus nobiscum adesses? 7. Quis audebit miseros prohibere quominus fleant? 8. Legem brevem esse oportet quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. 9. Unum vereor ne senatus Pompeium nolit dimittere. 10. Quis est quin cernat quanta vis sit in sensibus?

1. It was owing to you (*per te stetit*) that we did not obtain-possession-of the town. 2. No weakness of health shall prevent me *from* coming to you. 3. Nothing ought to deter a citizen *from* siding-with his country in time of danger. 4. They attempted to deter Cato *from* appearing (*adsum*) in the forum. 5. Nothing shall prevent me *from* siding-with you. 6. Nobody can prohibit us *from* worshipping God. 7. Nothing ought to deter children *from* obeying their parents. 8. I fear *that* we may be cast out of the city. 9. I fear *that* we may *not* be able to defend ourselves and our country. 10. I cannot but think that Caesar was the greatest of the Romans.

XLI.—USE OF THE SUPINES.

RULE 28.—The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion: *as, Lacedaemoniī Agēsilaūm bellātum in Āsiam misērunt, the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war.*

The Supine in *ū* is used after many adjectives: *as, facilis, easy, difficilis, difficult, dulcis, sweet, &c., and with fas est, it is lawful, nefas est, it is unlawful, opus est, it is necessary: as, res difficilis factū est, the thing is difficult to be done.*

EXERCISE LVIII.

1. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convenit, ludos publicos spectatum. 2. Veientes, pacem petitem, oratores Romam mittunt. 3. Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, rogatum auxilium. 4. Milites pabulum et aequum longius progressi erant. 5. Divitiacus Romam ad senatum venit, auxilium postulat. 6. Athenienses miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. 7. Pira dulcia sunt gustatu. 8. Difficile dictu est. 9. Quod optimum factu videbitur, facies. 10. Nefas est dictu, miseram fuisse Fabii Maximi senectutem.

1. We will set out for Rome, to look-at the games. 2. Croesus sent ambassadors to Delphi to inquire concerning the fortune of the war. 3. Chaerephon went-to (adeo) Delphi to ask who was (*subj.*) the wisest of men. 4. The general dismissed the soldiers to forage and get-water. 5. These things are very difficult to be done. 6. Very many things are easier to be said than done. 7. Old wines are not always sweet to taste (*supine in u*). 8. The Romans sent ambassadors to Carthage to inquire concerning Hannibal and the Saguntines. 9. It would be impious to say that the life of a good man can be miserable. 10. We have come to consult you (as to) what may be best to be done.

XLII.—USE OF THE GERUND.

RULE 29.—The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Noun, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns in *ing*; as *writing, walking.*

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in

the Nominative case, the Present of the Infinitive taking the place of the Nominative : as,

Nom. Lēgere pulchrā carminā suāve est, *reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.*

Gen. Ars puerōs ēdūcandī diffīcilis est, *the art of educating boys is difficult.*

Dat. Scribendō op̄eram dāt, *he devotes his care to writing.*

Acc. Nātūs ad āgendum, *born for acting.*

Abl. Littērās tractandō mens ācūtūr, *the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.*

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Present Infinitive is used: as, disco nātāre, *I learn swimming.*

EXERCISE LIX.

1. Saepissime perniciosa est plura habendi cupiditas. 2. Vehementer ardebat juvenis studio omnia cognoscendi et experiendi. 3. Quidam canes venandi gratia comparantur. 4. Beate vivendi studiosi sumus omnes. 5. Aqua marina haud utilis est bibendo. 6. Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt. 7. Hominis mens discendo et cogitando alitur. 8. Caesari dare jucundissimum erat. 9. Inter bibendum de variis rebus colloquebamur. 10. Quid potest esse jucundius quam inter ambulandum libere de variis rebus colloqui?

1. Very many persons burn with the desire of having more (*pl.*). 2. Epaminondas was eager-after hearing (*gen.*). 3. All are not zealous of living well. 4. He got together very many horses and (*que*) dogs for-the-sake-of hunting. 5. Do not attempt to obtain friends by flattering. 6. Do not attempt to preserve your life by lying. 7. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 8. The soul is nourished by thinking (*cogito*), feeling, acting. 9. Conversing (*infin.*) about (*de*) these things is most delightful. 10. It is becoming in a youth (*acc.*) to burn with a zeal for knowledge (*gen.* of *gerund*).

XLIII.—USE OF THE GERUNDIVE.

RULE 30.—The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective: as, scribendus, a, um, *to be written, necessary or fit to be written.*

The Gerundive may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, āmandūs sum, *I am to be loved*, or *I ought to be loved*; āmandūs eram, *I was to be loved*, or *I ought to have been loved*, &c. This is called the *Passive Periphrastic Conjugation*.

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nomi-

native Case of its Noun : as, *scribenda est mihi epistolā, a letter must be or ought to be written by me, or I must or ought to write a letter.*

The person by whom the thing-is to be done is put in the Dative (see preceding example).

EXERCISE LX.

1. Diligenter sunt emendandi puerorum mores. 2. Sapientia non solum paranda est nobis, sed etiam fruenda. 3. Præ omnibus rebus adhibenda est prudentia. 4. Agenda est omnibus aetas non sine periculis. 5. Ciceroni in arduis temporibus gerenda erat respublica. 6. Strenue nobis excolenda sunt corpus, mens, animus. 7. Habendus est delectus, comparandae sunt naves. 8. Non sunt ea nobis contemnenda; sunt diligentissime providenda. 9. Præ omnibus aliis observandi et colendi sunt pueris parentes. 10. Utrum amandi an timendi reges sunt?

1. Virtue must be cultivated. 2. Who doubts that the gods are to be feared? 3. A parent (*dat.*) ought so (*ita*) to train-up (*his*) son that he may obey the laws of virtue. 4. Those persons are to be admired who have dared to die for (*pro*) their-country. 5. (We) must preserve the state; (we) must crush the conspiracy. 6. Virtue must not only be cultivated, but also loved. 7. These things must not be passed over by us (*dat.*). 8. Before (*præ*) all other things (*res*) the war must be carried on vigorously. 9. We (*dat.*) ought to read the orators and poets. 10. A man (*dat.*) should not despise death.

RULE 31.—But when the Verb from which the Gerundive comes is intransitive or governs any other Case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Nominative Case Singular Neuter. The Object is put in the case which the Verb governs, and the Subject in the Dative Case: as, *obtempĕrandum est nobis (dative) virtūtis praeceptis (dative), we must obey the lessons of virtue: cuique (dative) utendum est iudiciō suo (ablative), each one must use his own judgment.*

N.B. The Dative of the Agent is not always expressed.

EXERCISE LXI.

1. Omnibus moriendum est. 2. Ita bellandum est ut pax peti videatur. 3. Mihi utendum est iudicio meo. 4. Nobis quoque ingrediendum est istuc quo pervenisti. 5. Ita nobis vivendum est ut ad mortem parati simus. 6. Non longius progrediendum est, commilitones, ne com meatibus nostris intercludamur. 7. Non

dubium est quin bono civi legibus sit obtemperandum. 8. Proficiscendum mihi erat illo ipso die. 9. Magnopere est curandum ne nobis consilium defuisse videatur. 10. Cognoscendum est quid de illo homine factum sit.

1. Must (we) not (nonne) all die? 2. We must die bravely, fellow-soldiers! 3. Boys ought to strive-hard to please their parents. 4. We must strive with (our) utmost zeal that the commonwealth may be preserved. 5. We must not believe all men in everything. 6. We must set out immediately. 7. It is greatly to be desired that the war may be brought-to-an-end. 8. We must take great care (see No. 9 above) that we are not (ne) shut off from all help. 9. What must we do, citizens? Which-of-the-two (dat.) should we trust? 10. We ought so to learn as (ut) not immediately to forget.

EXERCISE LXII.

N.B. The Gerundive is employed more frequently than the Gerund. The Gerund is chiefly used where an ambiguity would be occasioned by the use of the Gerundive: as, *stûdium plûrâ cognoscendî*, the desire of learning more, rather than *stûdium plûrium cognoscendûrum*, which would leave it doubtful whether *things* or *men* were meant.

1. Bellum suscepit Catilina reipublicae delendae causa. 2. Timotheus erat civitatis regendae peritus. 3. Consilium iniit Catilina urbis incendendae. 4. Conservandae libertatis gratiâ initio creabantur consules. 5. Tiberius quasi ad firmandam valetudinem in Campaniam concessit. 6. Occupatus sum in litteris scribendis. 7. Studiosi solent esse juvenes equorum canumque alendorum. 8. Consilium inierunt Brutus et Cassius libertatis recuperandae. 9. Hostes in spem venerant potiendorum castrorum. 10. Oculis probe affectus est ad suum munus fungendum.

1. The Roman youth (*pl.*) were trained-up for (ad) managing the commonwealth. 2. Cicero formed a plan for crushing the conspiracy (*gen.*). 3. Nature has endowed (instruo) the mind with senses prepared for perceiving objects (*res*). 4. He burned with the desire of destroying his country. 5. Those wicked men formed a design of slaying the consul. 6. Virtue is especially (*maxime*) discerned in despising pleasure. 7. The first book is written (*perf.*) on-the-subject-of (*de*) despising death. 8. The utmost pleasure is derived (*cipio*) from (*ex*) reading books. 9. A husbandman ought (*oportet*) to devote himself to cultivating his lands. 10. Cicero devoted himself with the utmost zeal to preserving the commonwealth.

A SHORT SYNTAX.

A RECAPITULATION OF THE RULES ALREADY GIVEN.

First Concord.

§ 1. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in Number and Person: as, *puellā currīt, the girl runs; puellae currunt, the girls run.*

Second Concord.

§ 2. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in Gender, Number, and Case: as, *servūs timīdūs, a timid slave; puellā timīdā, a timid girl; parvum oppīdum, a small town.*

Third Concord.

§ 3. The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case: as, *Felix est rex quem omnēs civēs laudant, Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

Apposition.

§ 4. When two Nouns refer to the same person or thing, they are put in the same case by *Apposition*: as, *Rōmūlūs, rex Rōmānōrum, Romulus, king of the Romans.*

Nominative Case.

§ 5. The Nominative case denotes the Subject.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by *sum, fio, vīdēor, vōcōr*, and similar Verbs, they are put in the same case: as, *Britanniā est insulā, Britain is an island.*

Accusative Case.

§ 6. The Accusative case denotes the Object.—Transitive Verbs govern the Accusative: as, *āquilā alās habēt, the eagle has wings.*

§ 7. The answers to the questions, *How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How old?* are put in the Accusative: as, *sex et viginti annōs regnāvīt, he reigned twenty-six years; aggērem lātum pēdēs trēcentōs, altum pēdēs quinquāgintā exstruxērunt, they heaped up a mound 300 feet broad and 50 feet high.*—The Accusative, answering the question *How long?* is called the Accusative of *duration of time.*

Genitive Case.

§ 8. The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive when one is dependent upon the other: as, *Britanniā est insulā Europae*, *Britain is an island of Europe*.

§ 9. Verbs signifying *to remember, to forget, to pity*, are commonly followed by the Genitive: as, *misērorum hōmīnum misērēbimūr*, *we will pity the wretched men*.

Dative Case.

§ 10. The Dative indicates the person who gains or receives anything: as, *māgistēr cōlumbam pūērō dāt*, *the master gives a dove to the boy*.

Ablative Case.

§ 11. The Ablative indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done: as, *dōmīnūs hastā servum occidit*, *the lord kills the slave with a spear*.

(2) The time when something is done or takes place: as, *noctēs hiēmē longae sunt*, *the nights are long in winter*.

§ 12. But when the Ablative indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition *in, in*: as, *hostēs in plānitīe erant*, *the enemies were in the plain*.

§ 13. *Ūtōr, frūōr, vescōr, fungōr*, govern the Ablative: as, *sāpientēr ūtīmīni tempōrē*, *use time wisely*.

§ 14. When a subordinate clause has a different subject from the subject of the principal clause, the English Verb in the subordinate clause is in Latin often expressed by a Substantive and Participle in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE: as, *sōlē ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vidērunt*, *when the sun had risen [lit. the sun having risen], the Romans saw the enemy*. (See also p. 89.)

Construction of the Names of Towns.

§ 15. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without prepositions: as, *Consul Rōmam prōfectūs est*, *the Consul set out for Rome*.

§ 16. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative without prepositions: as, *Consul Romā Athēnās prōfectūs est*, *the Consul set out from Rome to Athens*.

§ 17. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Noun be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition; as, *Rōmae Consūlēs, Athēnīs Archontes, Carthāginē Suffētēs, sīvē jūdicēs, quōtannīs crēabantūr, At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually; Diōnysīūs Cōrinthī puērōs docēbāt, Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*

Comparative Degree.

§ 18. The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin *quam*: as, *aestātē diēs longiōrēs sunt quam noctēs, in summer the days are longer than the nights.*

§ 19. The Ablative is also used after the Comparative instead of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative: as, *viliūs argentum est aurō, silver is more common than, gold.*

Indicative Mood.

§ 20. The Indicative Mood speaks of a thing without any condition or doubt: as, *aedificō dōmum, I am building a house; hābitābo in eā, I shall dwell in it.*

Subjunctive Mood.

§ 21. The Subjunctive Mood speaks of a thing with some condition or doubt: as, [*aedificō dōmum*] *ūt in eā hābitem, [I am building a house] in order that I may dwell in it.* Here there is no doubt about the act of *building*; but whether the person building will *dwell* in the house or not is uncertain and depends upon circumstances.

§ 22. The Conjunctions *ūt, that, in order that, and nē, that not,* are construed with the Subjunctive: as, *eo ūt spectem lūdōs, I am going in order that I may look at the games; haec facio nē mē inimicum tibi pūtēs, these things I do that you may not think me your enemy.*

§ 23. The Conjunction *quīn* is used with the Subjunctive after *negative propositions and propositions expressing doubt*: as, *diēs nullūs est, quīn littērās scribam, there is no day that I do not write a letter; nōn dubito quīn vērūm dixērīs, I do not doubt that you have spoken the truth.*

§ 24. The Conjunction *quō* is used for *ūt eō* with the

Subjunctive, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that*: *haec lex datā est, quō mālēfici dēterrērentūr, this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred.*

§ 25. The Conjunction *quōmīnūs*, *that not*, is used with the Subjunctive after verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting, &c.*, and must be frequently translated in English by *from* and a verbal substantive: *as, aetās nōs non impēdit quōmīnūs littērās tractēmūs, age does not prevent us from cultivating literature.*

§ 26. The Subjunctive is used in an Indirect Question; that is, a question quoted as having been asked, or one dependent upon some word expressing doubt, uncertainty, or wonder, in the former part of the sentence: *as, Rōgābo quīd factum sīt, I will ask what has been done; Mirum est quae fūerīt causā, It is strange what the reason may have been; Vidēbo num rediērīt, I will see whether he has returned.*

NOTE.—The Rule for the sequence of tenses in the Subjunctive Mood is given on pp. 95, 96.

The Infinitive.

§ 27. The latter of two verbs is put in the Infinitive: *as, Caesār hostēs sup̄erārē pōtest, Caesar is able to overcome the enemy.*

§ 28. The Accusative Case and the Infinitive are used:

I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing*: *as, histōriā narrāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam essē, history relates that Rome was founded by Romulus: sentimūs cālērē ignem, nīvem essē albam, dulcē (essē) mēl, we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.*

II. After such expressions as *nōtum est, it is known; justum est, it is just; vērīsīmīlē est, it is probable; constāt, it is agreed, it is certain*, etc.: *as, constāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam essē, it is agreed that Rome was founded by Romulus.*

The Supines.

§ 29. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion: *as, Lācēdaemōnii Āgēsīlāum bellātum īn Āsiam misērunt, the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war.*

The Supine in *ū* is used after many adjectives: *as, fācīlīs,*

easy, difficilis, difficult, dulcis, sweet, &c., and with fas est, it is lawful, nefas est, it is unlawful, opus est, it is necessary: as, res difficilis factū est, the thing is difficult to be done.

The Gerund.

§ 30. The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Noun, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns in *ing*; as *writing, walking*.

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in the Nominative case, the Present of the Infinitive taking the place of the Nominative: as,

Nom. Lēgere pulchrā carminā suāve est, *reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.*

Gen. Ars puerōs edūcandi difficilis est, *the art of educating boys is difficult.*

Dat. Scribendō opēram dāt, *he devotes his care to writing.*

Acc. Nātūs ad agendum, *born for acting.*

Abl. Littērās tractandō mens acūitūr, *the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.*

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Present Infinitive is used: as, *disco natāre, I learn swimming.*

The Gerundive.

§ 31. The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective: as, *scribendus, a, um, to be written, necessary or fit to be written.*

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative Case of its Noun: as, *scribenda est mihi epistolā, a letter must be or ought to be written by me, or I must or ought to write a letter.*

The person by whom the thing is *to be done* is put in the Dative (see preceding example).

§ 32. But when the Verb from which the Gerundive comes is intransitive or governs any other case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Nominative Case Singular Neuter. The Object is put in the case which the Verb governs, and the Subject in the Dative Case: as, *obtemp̄randum est nobis (dative) virtūtis praeceptis (dative), we must obey the lessons of virtue: cuique (dative) utendum est iudiciō suō (ablative), each one must use his own judgment.*

N.B. The Dative of the Agent is not always expressed.

APPENDIX.

A. GREEK NOUNS.

FIRST DECLENSION.

	Fem.	Masc.	Masc.
Nom.	Ēpītōm-ē, <i>abridg-</i> <i>ment.</i>	Aenē-ās (proper name)	Anchīs-ēs (proper name)
Gen.	Ēpītōm-ēs	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Dat.	Ēpītōm-ae	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Acc.	Ēpītōm-ēn	Aenē-ān (am)	Anchīs-ēn (am)
Voc.	Ēpītōm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ā, ā)
Abl.	Ēpītōm-ē	Aenē-ā.	Anchīs-ē (ā).

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nom.	Orphēus	Orphēus
Gen.	Orphēi, Orphēi	Orphēos
Dat.	Orphēō	Orphēi, Orphēi
Acc.	Orphēum	Orphēa
Voc.	Orphēū	Orphēū.
Abl.	Orphēō.	
Nom.	Dēlōs	Andrōgēōs
Gen.	Dēlī	Andrōgēi, Andrōgēō
Dat.	Dēlō	Andrōgēō
Acc.	Dēlōn, Dēlum	Andrōgēōn, Andrōgēō
Voc.	Dēlē	Andrōgēōs
Abl.	Dēlō.	Andrōgēō.

Obs. Substantives in *ēs* sometimes form their Accusatives in *ōnā* as, *Andrōgēōnā*: so, *Nom.* Athōs, *Acc.* Athōnā.

THIRD DECLENSION.

	Sing.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Pēriclēs	Pallas	chlāmýdēs or -ēs
Gen.	Pēriclīs, Pēricli	Pallādīs, Pallādos	chlāmýdum
Dat.	Pēricli	Pallādi	chlāmýdībūs
Acc.	Pēriclem, Pēricleā	Pallādem, Pallādā	chlāmýdēs, chlāmýdās
Voc.	Pēriclēs, Pēriclēs, Pēricle	Pallas	chlāmýdībūs.
Abl.	Pēriclē.	Palladē.	
Nom.	Pāris	Sapphō	
Gen.	Pāridīs, Pāridōs	Sapphūs, Sapphōnīs	
Dat.	Pāridi	Sapphō, Sapphōni	
Acc.	Pāridem, Pāridā, Pārin	Sapphō, Sapphōnem	
Voc.	Parī	Sapphō	
Abl.	Paridē.	Sapphōnē.	
Nom.	chlāmýs, <i>a cloak.</i>		
Gen.	chlāmýdīs, chlāmýdōs		
Dat.	chlāmýdi		
Acc.	chlāmýdem, chlāmýdā		
Abl.	chlāmýdē.		

PR. L. L.

L

B. THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers, are *Masculine*.

2. Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees, are *Feminine*.

3. Indeclinable Nouns, as, *fās*, *permitted by heaven*, *nēfās*, *not permitted by heaven*, *nīhīl*, *nothing*, are *Neuter*.

4. Nouns denoting both the male and the female, as, *conjux*, *husband or wife*, are *Common*.

SPECIAL RULES RELATING TO THE DECLENSIONS.

I. FIRST DECLENSION.—All Nouns of the First Declension are *Feminine*, unless they designate males: as, *nauta*, *a sailor*.

II. SECOND DECLENSION.—Nouns in *us* and *er* are *Masculine*; those in *um* are *Neuter*.

A few Nouns in *us* are *Feminine*: names of trees, as *mālus*, *an apple-tree*; also, *alvus*, *the belly*; *cōlus*, *a distaff*; *hūmus*, *the ground*; *vannus*, *a winnowing fan*; *arctus*, *the constellation Bear*; *carbāsus*, *fine flax*.

Three Nouns in *us* are *Neuter*: as, *vīrus*, *poison*; *vulgus*, *the multitude*; *pēlāgus*, *the (open) sea*.

III. THIRD DECLENSION.—Nouns of the Third Declension are *Masculine*, *Feminine*, or *Neuter*. Their gender must be learned by practice. But the following terminations indicate genders:—

1. *Masculine*.—(a) Nouns in *or* derived from verbs: as, *ām-or*, *love*, from *āmo*, *I love*.

(b) Nouns in *tor* derived from verbs: as, *āmā-tor*, *a lover*, from *āmo*, *I love*; *vīc-tor*, *a conqueror*, from *vinco*, *I conquer*.

- 2. Feminine.**—(a) Nouns in *io* and *tio* derived from verbs: as, *audi-tio*, *hearing*, from *audio*, *I hear*.
 (b) Nouns in *tūs* derived from Nouns: as, *vir-tus*, *manliness*, from *vir*, *a man*.
 (c) Nouns in *tās* derived from Nouns and Adjectives: as, *civī-tas*, *citizenship*, from *civīs*, *a citizen*; *crūdēlī-tas*, *cruelty*, from *crūdēlis*, *cruel*.
 (d) Nouns in *tūdo* derived from Adjectives: as, *longī-tūdo*, *length*, from *longus*, *long*.
 (e) Nouns in *trix* derived from Nouns in *tor*: as, *vic-trix*, *a female conqueror*, from *vic-tor*.
- 3. Neuter.**—(a) Nouns in *e*: as, *mārē*, *the sea*.
 (b) Nouns in *mēn* derived from Verbs: as, *flū-men*, *a river*, from *flu-ere*, *to flow*.
 (c) Nouns in *ūs* and *ūr*: as, *opus*, *a work*; *fulgur*, *lightning*.

IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.—Nouns in *ūs* are Masculine: those in *u* are Neuter.

A few Nouns in *us* are Feminine: namely, *tribus*, *a tribe* (a division of the Roman people); *ācus*, *a needle*; *porticus*, *a portico*; *dōmus*, *a house*; *nūrus*, *a daughter-in-law*; *ānus*, *an old woman*; *socrus*, *a mother-in-law*; *idūs* (*pl.*), *the Ides* (a division of the Roman month); *mānus*, *a hand*.

V. FIFTH DECLENSION.—All are Feminine except *dīēs* (*day*), which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural; and *mērt-dīēs*, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

C. PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

I. THE FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.

The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in *āvi*, *ātum*: *as*, *āmo*, *āmāvi*, *āmātum*, *āmāre*, *to love*. The following are exceptions:—

Crēpo,	crēpui,	crēpitum,	crēpāre,	<i>to creak.</i>
Cūbo,	cūbui,	cūbītum,	cūbāre,	<i>to lie.</i>
Dōmo,	dōmui,	dōmītum,	dōmāre,	<i>to tame.</i>
Sōno, ¹	sōnui,	sōnītum,	sōnāre,	<i>to sound.</i>
Vēto,	vētui,	vētītum,	vētāre,	<i>to forbid.</i>
Tōno,	tōnui,	—	tōnāre,	<i>to thunder.</i>
Mīco,	mīcui,	—	mīcāre,	<i>to glitter.</i>
Plicō,	plīcui,	{plīcītum, plīcātum,}	plīcāre,	<i>to fold.</i>
Frīco,	frīcui,	frīctum,	frīcāre,	<i>to rub.</i>
Sēcō, ²	sēcui,	sectum,	sēcāre,	<i>to cut.</i>
Jūvo, ³	jūvi,	jūtum,	jūvāre,	<i>to assist.</i>
Lāvo,	lāvi,	{lāvātum, lautum,}	lāvāre,	<i>to wash.</i>
Do,	dēdi,	dātum,	dāre,	<i>to give.</i>
Sto,	stēti,	statum,	stāre,	<i>to stand.</i>

NOTE.—*Future Participles*, as a general rule, are formed from the Supines; but

1. Sōno	<i>has</i>	sōnātūrus.
2. Sēcō	<i>"</i>	sēcātūrus.
3. Jūvo	<i>"</i>	jūvātūrus.

II. THE SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.

The Perfects and Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in *ui* and *itum*: *as*, *mōneo*, *mōnui*, *mōnītum*, *mōnēre*, *to advise*. The following are exceptions:—

1. Perfect—*ui*. Supine—*tum*.

Dōceo,	dōcui,	doctum,	dōcēre,	<i>to teach.</i>
Tēneo,	tēnui,	tentum,	tēnēre,	<i>to hold.</i>
Misceo,	miscui,	{mixtum, mistum,}	miscēre,	<i>to mix.</i>
Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	torrere,	<i>to roast.</i>
Sorbeo,	{sorbui, sorpsi,}	—	sorbēre,	<i>to suck up.</i>
Censeo,	censui,	censum,	censēre,	<i>to assess, think.</i>

2. Perfect—*ēvi*. Supine—*ētum*.

Dēleo,	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	dēlēre,	<i>to blot out, destroy.</i>
Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	flēre,	<i>to weep.</i>
Nec,	nēvi,	nētum,	nēre,	<i>to spin.</i>
{Pleo, only in composition.				
Compleo,	complēvi,	complētum,	complēre,	<i>to fill up.</i>
Abōleo,	abōlēvi,	abōlītum,	abōlēre,	<i>to abolish.</i>

3. Perfect—i (di). Supine—sum.

✓ Prandeo,	prandi,	pransum,	prandēre,	to breakfast.
✓ Sēdeo,	sēdi,	sessum,	sēdēre,	to sit.
✓ Video,	vidi,	visum,	vidēre,	to see.
Strideo,	stridi,	—	stridēre,	to creak.

With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

Mordeo,	mōmordi,	morsum,	mordēre,	to bite.
✓ Pendeo,	pēpendi,	pensum,	pendēre,	to hang.
✓ Spondeo,	spōpondi,	sponsum,	spondēre,	to promise.
✓ Tondeo,	tōtondi,	tonsum,	tondēre,	to shear.

4. Perfect—i (vi). Supine—tum.

Cāveo,	cāvi,	cautum,	cāvēre,	to guard oneself.
Fāveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	fāvēre,	to favour.
Fōveo,	fōvi,	fōtum,	fōvēre,	to cherish.
✓ Mōveo,	mōvi,	mōtum,	mōvēre,	to move.
Vōveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	vōvēre,	to vow.

Without Supine.

Pāveo,	pāvi,	—	pāvēre,	to fear.
Ferveo,	{ fervi, ferbui, }	—	fervēre,	to boil.
Connīveo,	{ connīvi, connivi, }	—	connivēre,	to wink.

5. Perfect—si. Supine—tum and sum.

✓ Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augēre,	to increase.
✓ Indulgeo.	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgēre,	to indulge.
Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquēre,	to twist.
✓ Ardeo,	arsī,	arsum,	ardēre,	to blaze.
✓ Haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	haerēre,	to stick.
✓ Jūbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	jūbēre,	to order.
✓ Māneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mānēre,	to remain.
Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	mulcēre,	to stroke.
✓ Mulgeo,	mulsi,	mulctum,	mulgēre,	to milk.
✓ Rideo,	risi,	rīsum,	ridēre,	to laugh.
Suādeo,	suāsi,	suāsum,	suādēre,	to advise.
Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	to wipe.
Algeo,	alsi,	—	algēre,	} to be cold.
Frigeo,	frixi,	—	frigēre,	
Fulgeo,	fulsi,	—	fulgēre,	to shine.
✓ Lūceo,	luxi,	—	lūcēre,	to be light.
✓ Lūgeo,	luxi,	—	lūgēre,	to grieve.
✓ Turgeo,	(tursi),	—	turgēre,	to swell.
✓ Urgeo,	ursi,	—	urgēre,	to press.

6. The Neuter-Passives.

✓ Audeo,	ausus sum,	—	audēre,	to dare.
✓ Gaudeo,	gāvīsus sum,	—	gaudēre,	to rejoice.
✓ Sōleo,	sōlītus sum,	—	sōlēre,	to be accustomed.

III. THE THIRD (CONSONANT OR U) CONJUGATION.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials B, P.

(a). Perfect—si. Supine—tum.

NOTE.—B becomes p before s and t.

Carpo,	carpsi,	carptum,	carpĕre,	to pluck.
Glūbo,	glupsi,	gluptum,	glūbĕre,	to peel.
Nūbo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbĕre,	to marry.
Rĕpo,	repsi,	reptum,	rĕpĕre,	to creep.
Scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpĕre,	to scratch.
Scribo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scribĕre,	to write.
Serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpĕre,	to crawl.

(b). Perfect—ni. Supine—tum or itum.

Cumbo,				
Incumbo,	incūbui,	incūbītum,	incumbĕre,	to lie upon.
Strĕpo,	strĕpui,	strĕpītum,	strĕpĕre,	to make a noise.

(c). Perfect—i. Supine—tum or wanting.

Rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpĕre,	to burst.
Bĭbo,	bĭbi,	—	bĭbĕre,	to drink.
Lambo,	lambi,	—	lambĕre,	to lick.
Scābo,	scābi,	—	scābĕre,	to scratch.

2. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Gutturals C, G, H, Q, X.

(a). Perfect—si. Supine—tum.

NOTE.—Cs and gs become x. G becomes c before t &

Dīco,	dixi,	dictum,	dicĕre,	to say.
Dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	dūcĕre,	to lead.
Cōquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cōquĕre,	to cook.
Cingo,	cinxi,	cinctum,	cingĕre,	to surround.
(Fligo, not used)		—	—	to strike.)
Affligo,	affixi,	afflictum,	affligĕre,	to strike to the ground.
Frigo,	frixi,	{frictum, frixum,}	frigĕre,	to parch, to fry,
Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungĕre,	to join.
Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingĕre,	to lick.
(Mungo, not used)				
Ēmungo,	ēmunxi,	ēmunctum,	ēmungĕre,	to blow the nose,
Plango,	planxi,	planctum,	plangĕre,	to beat.

✓ Rēgo,	rexī,	rectum,	rēgēre,	<i>to direct, rule.</i>
Sūgo,	suxī,	suctum,	sūgēre,	<i>to suck.</i>
✓ Tēgo,	texī,	tectum,	tēgēre,	<i>to cover.</i>
{ Tingo,	{	{	{	{
{ Tinguo,	{ tinxi,	{ tinctum,	{ tingēre,	{ <i>to dip.</i>
{ Ungo,	{	{	{	{
{ Unguo,	{ unxi,	{ unctum,	{ ungēre,	{ <i>to anoint.</i>
{ Unguere,	{	{	{	{
(Stinguo, not used.)				
✓ Exstinguo,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,	exstinguere,	<i>to extinguish.</i>
✓ Trāho,	traxi,	tractum,	trāhēre,	<i>to drag.</i>
✓ Vēho,	vexi,	vectum,	vēhēre,	<i>to carry, to draw.</i>
Ango,	anxi,	—	angēre,	<i>to vex.</i>
Ningit,	ninxit,	—	ningēre,	<i>to snow.</i>
Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	figēre,	<i>to form, to invent.</i>
Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	pingēre,	<i>to paint.</i>
Stringo,	strinxi,	strictum,	stringēre,	<i>to grasp.</i>

(b). Perfect—si. Supine—sum and xum.

✓ Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	mergēre,	<i>to sink.</i>
✓ Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargēre,	<i>to scatter.</i>
✓ Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	<i>to wipe.</i>
✓ Figo,	fixi,	fixum,	figēre,	<i>to fix.</i>
✓ Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectēre,	<i>to bend.</i>
Necto,	nexi,	nexum,	nectēre,	<i>to bind.</i>
Pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectēre,	<i>to comb.</i>
Plecto,	plexi,	plexum,	plectēre,	<i>to plait.</i>

(c). Perfect—i (with Reduplication). Supine—sum and tum.

Pango,	pēpīgi,	pactum,	pangēre,	<i>to fix.</i>
✓ Parco,	pēperci,	parsum,	parcēre,	<i>to spare.</i>
✓ Pungo,	pīpūgi,	punctum,	pungēre,	<i>to prick.</i>
✓ Tango,	tētīgi,	tactum,	tangēre,	<i>to touch.</i>
✓ Disco,	dīdīci,	—	discēre,	<i>to learn.</i>
✓ Posco,	pōposci,	—	poscēre,	<i>to demand.</i>

(d). Perfect—i (with vowel of Stem lengthened).

✓ Ago,	ēgi,	actum,	āgēre,	<i>to do.</i>
✓ Frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	frangēre,	<i>to break.</i>
✓ Ico,	īci,	ictum,	icēre,	<i>to strike.</i>
✓ Lēgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	lēgēre,	<i>to read.</i>
✓ Linquo,	līqui,	(lictum),	linquere,	<i>to leave.</i>
✓ Vinco,	vīci,	victum,	vincere,	<i>to conquer.</i>

(e). Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.

Texo,	texui,	textum,	texere,	<i>to weave.</i>
-------	--------	---------	---------	------------------

(f). Guttural Stem disguised.

✓ Fluo,	fluxi,	fluctum,	fluere,	<i>to flow.</i>
✓ Struo,	struxi,	structum,	struere,	<i>to pile up.</i>
✓ Vivo,	vixi,	victum,	vivere,	<i>to live.</i>

3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals D, T.*(a). *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*NOTE.—*D* and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *s*.

✓ Claudio,	clausi,	clausum,	claudēre,	<i>to shut.</i>
Divido,	divisi,	divisum,	dividēre,	<i>to divide.</i>
Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedēre,	<i>to strike, to injure.</i>
Lūdo,	lūsi,	lūsum,	lūdēre,	<i>to play.</i>
Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudēre,	<i>to clap the hands.</i>
Rādo,	rāsi,	rāsum,	rādēre,	<i>to scrape.</i>
Rōdo,	rōsi,	rōsum,	rōdēre,	<i>to gnaw.</i>
Trūdo,	trūsi,	trūsum,	trūdēre,	<i>to thrust.</i>
✓ Vādo,	[compounds, -si, -sum]		vādēre,	<i>to go.</i>
✓ Invādo,	invāsi,	invāsum,	invādēre,	<i>to go against</i>
✓ Cēdo,	cessi,	cessum,	cēdēre,	<i>to yield.</i>
✓ Mitto,	mīsi,	missum,	mittēre,	<i>to send.</i>

(b). *Perfect with Reduplication.*

✓ Cādo,	cēcīdi,	casum,	cādēre,	<i>to fall.</i>
✓ Caedo,	cēcīdi,	caesum,	caedēre,	<i>to strike, to cut.</i>
✓ Pendo,	pēpendi,	pensum,	pendēre,	<i>to hang, to weigh.</i>
✓ Tendo,	tētendi,	{ tensum,	{ tendēre,	<i>to stretch.</i>
		{ tentum,		
Tundo,	tūtūdi,	{ tunsum,	{ tundēre,	<i>to beat.</i>
		{ tūsum,		
Do in compos.,				<i>to put.</i>
Abdo,	abdīdi,	abdītum,	abdēre,	<i>to put away, to hide.</i>
Addo,	addīdi,	addītum,	addēre,	<i>to put to, to add.</i>
✓ Condo,	condīdi,	condītum,	condēre,	<i>to put together, to build, conceal.</i>
Dēdo,	dēdīdi,	dēdītum,	dēdēre,	<i>to put down, to surrender.</i>
Ēdo,	ēdīdi,	ēdītum,	ēdēre,	<i>to put forth, to publish.</i>
Indo,	indīdi,	indītum,	indēre,	<i>to put on.</i>
Perdo,	perdīdi,	perdītum,	perdēre,	<i>to ruin, to lose.</i>
Prōdo,	prōdīdi,	prōdītum,	prōdēre,	<i>to betray.</i>
Reddo,	reddīdi,	reddītum,	reddēre,	<i>to put back, to restore.</i>
Subdo,	subdīdi,	subdītum,	subdēre,	<i>to put under, to substitute.</i>
✓ Trādo,	trādīdi,	trādītum,	trādēre,	<i>to put across, to deliver.</i>
Crēdo,	crēdīdi,	crēdītum,	crēdēre,	<i>to believe.</i>
Vendo,	vendīdi,	vendītum,	vendēre,	<i>to sell.</i>
Sisto,	stīti,	stātum,	sistēre,	<i>to cause to stand.</i>

(c). *Perfect—i. Supine—sum.*

Accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accendēre,	<i>to set on fire.</i>
Cūdo,	cūdi,	cūsum,	cūdēre,	<i>to hammer</i>

Ēdo,	ēdi,	ēsum,	ēdere,	<i>to eat.</i>
(Fendo, not used,				<i>to strike.)</i>
Dēfendo,	dēfendi,	dēfensum,	dēfendere,	<i>to ward off, to defend.</i>
Offendo,	offendi,	offensum,	offendere,	<i>to strike against, to assault.</i>
Fundo,	fūdi,	fūsum,	fundere,	<i>to pour.</i>
Incendo,	incendi,	incensum,	incendere,	<i>to burn.</i>
Mando,	mandi (rare),	mansum,	mandere,	<i>to chew.</i>
Pando,	pandi,	{ pansum or passum, }	pandere,	<i>to spread.</i>
Prēhendo,	prēhendi,	prēhensum,	prēhendere,	<i>to grasp.</i>
Scando,	scandi,	scansum,	scandere,	<i>to climb.</i>
(Strido,	stridi,	—	stridere,	<i>to creak.</i>
Strideo,				
Verto,	verti,	versum,	vertere,	<i>to turn.</i>
Findo,	fidi,	fissum,	findere,	<i>to cleave.</i>
Scindo,	scīdi,	scissum,	scindere,	<i>to tear.</i>
Frendo,	—	fressum,	frendere,	<i>to gnash the teeth.</i>
Frendeo,	—	frēsum,		

(d). Other Forms.

Mēto,	messui,	messum,	mētēre,	<i>to mow.</i>
Pēto,	{ pētīvi or pētī, }	pētītum,	pētēre,	<i>to seek.</i>
Sido,	{ sēdi (rarely) sīdi, }	—	sīdere,	<i>to sit down.</i>
Serto,	stertui,	—	stertēre,	<i>to snore.</i>
Fido,	fisus sum,	—	fidere,	<i>to trust.</i>

4. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Liquids L, M, N.

(a). Perfect—ui. Supine—ītum or tum.

Ālo,	ālui,	{ ālītum or altum, }	ālere,	<i>to nourish.</i>
Cōlo,	cōlui,	cultum,	cōlere,	<i>to till.</i>
Consūlo,	consūlui,	consultum,	consūlere,	<i>to consult.</i>
Mōlo,	mōlui,	mōlitum,	mōlere,	<i>to grind.</i>
Ocūlo,	ocūlui,	ocultum,	ocūlere,	<i>to conceal.</i>
Vōlo,	vōlui,	—	velle,	<i>to wish.</i>
Frēmo,	frēmui,	frēmītum,	frēmere,	<i>to roar.</i>
Gēmo,	gēmui,	gēmītum,	gēmere,	<i>to groan.</i>
Trēmo,	trēmui,	—	trēmere,	<i>to tremble.</i>
Vōmo,	vōmui,	vōmītum,	vōmere,	<i>to vomit.</i>
Gigno,	gēnui,	gēnītum,	gignere,	<i>to produce.</i>

(b). Perfect with Reduplication.

Fallo,	fēfelli,	falsum,	fallere,	<i>to deceive.</i>
Pello,	pēpūli,	pulsum,	pellere,	<i>to drive.</i>
Cāno,	cēcīni,	cantum,	cānere,	<i>to sing.</i>

(c). *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

Cōmo,	comp̄si,	comptum,	cōm̄ere,	<i>to adorn.</i>
Dēmo,	dēmp̄si,	demptum,	dēm̄ere,	<i>to take away.</i>
Prōmo,	prōmp̄si,	promptum,	prōm̄ere,	<i>to take forth.</i>
Sūmo,	sum̄ps̄i,	sumptum,	sūm̄ere,	<i>to take up.</i>
Temno,	temp̄si,	temptum,	tem̄n̄ere,	<i>to despise.</i>

(d). *Other Forms.*

Percello,	percūli,	perculsum,	percell̄ere,	<i>to strike down.</i>
Psallo,	psalli,	—	psall̄ere,	<i>to play on a stringed instrument.</i>
Vello,	velli,	vulsum,	vell̄ere,	<i>to pluck.</i>
Tollo,	sustūli,	sublātum,	toll̄ere,	<i>to raise up.</i>
Ēmo,	ēm̄i,	emptum,	ēm̄ere,	<i>to take or buy.</i>
Prēmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prēm̄ere,	<i>to press.</i>
Līno,	lēvi or livi	lītum,	līn̄ere,	<i>to smear.</i>
Sīno,	sivi,	sītum,	sīn̄ere,	<i>to permit.</i>

5. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Liquid R.*

Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cern̄ere,	<i>to sift, to divide.</i>
Sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	sp̄ern̄ere,	<i>to despise.</i>
Sterno,	strāvi,	strātum,	stern̄ere,	<i>to strew.</i>
Gēro,	gessi,	gestum,	gēr̄ere,	<i>to carry.</i>
Ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūr̄ere,	<i>to burn.</i>
Curro,	cūcurri,	cursum,	curr̄ere,	<i>to run.</i>
Fēro,	tūli,	lātum,	fer̄ere,	<i>to bear, carry.</i>
Quaero,	quaesiv̄i,	quaesitum,	quaer̄ere,	<i>to seek.</i>
Sēro,	sērui,	sertum,	sēr̄ere,	<i>to put in rows, to plait.</i>
Sēro,	sēvi,	sātum,	sēr̄ere,	<i>to sow.</i>
Tēro,	triv̄i,	tritum,	tēr̄ere,	<i>to rub.</i>
Verro,	verri,	versum,	verr̄ere,	<i>to sweep.</i>

6. *Verbs the Stems of which end in S, X.*

Depso,	depsui,	depstum,	depēs̄ere,	<i>to knead.</i>
Pinso,	{ pinsui,	{ pinsitum,	{ pins̄ere,	<i>to pound.</i>
	{ pinsi,	{ pinsum,		
Piso,	—	pistum,	pis̄ere,	<i>to pound.</i>
Viso,	visi,	—	vis̄ere,	<i>to visit.</i>
Pōno,	pōsui,	pōsitum,	pōn̄ere,	<i>to place.</i>
Arcesso,	arcessiv̄i,	arcessitum,	arcess̄ere,	<i>to send for.</i>
Cāpesso,	cāpessiv̄i,	cāpessitum,	cāpess̄ere,	<i>to take in hand.</i>
Fācesso,	fācessi,	fācessitum,	fācess̄ere,	<i>to make, to cause.</i>
Lācesso,	lācessiv̄i,	lācessitum,	lācess̄ere,	<i>to provoke.</i>

7. *Verbs the Stems of which end in U, V.**Perfect—i. Supine—tum.*

Acuo,	acui,	acūtum,	acūere,	<i>to sharpen.</i>
Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	argūere,	<i>to prove.</i>

Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuere,	to soak.
Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induere,	to put on.
✓ Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuere,	to put off.
✓ Minuo,	minui,	minūtum,	minuere,	to lessen.
Rūo,*	ruī,	rūtum,	ruere,	to rush.
Spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuere,	to spit.
Stātuo,	stātui,	stātūtum,	stātuere,	to set up.
Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suere,	to sew.
Tribuo,	tribui,	tribūtum,	tribuere,	to distribute.
Lāvo,	lāvi,	lautum,	lavere,	to wash.
(See also 1 Conj.)		lōtum,		
✓ Solvo,	solvi,	sōlūtum,	solvere,	to loosen.
✓ Volvo,	volvi,	vōlūtum,	volvère,	to roll.
Congruo,	congrui,	—	congruere,	to agree.
Luo,†	lui,	—	luere,	to atone.
(Nuo,				to nod.)
Abnuo,	abnui,	—	abnuere,	to refuse.
Annuo,	annui,	—	annuere,	to assent.
Mētuο,	mētui,	—	mētuere,	to fear.
✓ Pluit,	{ pluit or pluivit }	—	pluere,	to rain.
✓ Sternuo,	sternui,	—	sternuere,	to sneeze.

* rūo, *Fut. Participle* ruitūrus.

† lūo, *Fut. Participle* luitūrus.

8. Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in *sco*.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*; that is, denote the beginning of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Nouns, and Adjectives. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines: as, *incālesco*, *incālui*, *incālescere*, to grow warm, from *cāleo*, *cālui*, *cālere*, to be warm. The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines:—

Abōlesco,*	abōlēvi,	abōlītum,	abōlescere,	to grow out of use.
Adōlesco,*	adōlēvi,	adūltum,	adōlescere,	to grow up.
Exōlesco,*	exōlēvi,	exōlītum,	exōlescere,	to grow old.
Cōalesco,	cōālui,	cōālītum,	cōālescere,	to grow together.
(ālo)				
Concūpisco,	concūpīvi,	concūpītum,	concūpiscere,	to desire.
(cūpio)				
Convālesco,	convālui,	convālītum,	convālescere,	to grow strong.
(vāleo)				
Exardesco,	exarsi,	exarsum,	exardescere,	to take fire.
(ardeo)				
Invētērasco,	invētērāvi,	invētērātum,	invētērascere,	to grow old.
(invētēro)				
Rēvivisco,	rēvixi,	rēvictum,	rēviviscere,	to come to life again.
(vivo)				
Scisco,	scīvi,	scītum,	sciscere,	to seek to know, to enact.
(scio)				

* Abōlesco, adōlesco, exōlesco are formed from an obsolete verb *ōleo*, to grow.

Inceptives formed from Nouns and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines : as,

Consēnesco, consēnui, (sēnex)	—	consēnescōre, to grow old.
Ingrāvesco, — (grāvis)	—	ingrāvescōre, to grow heavy.
Jūvenesco, — (jūvēnis)	—	jūvēnescōre, to grow young.
Mātūresco, mātūrui, (mātūrus)	—	mātūrescōre, to grow ripe.
Obmūtesco, obmūtui, (mūtus)	—	obmūtescōre, to grow dumb.

The following Verbs in *sco* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as underived Verbs :—

Cresco,	crēvi,	crētum,	crescōre,	to grow.
Glisco,	—	—	gliscōre,	to swell.
Hisco,	—	—	hiscōre,	to gape.
Nosco,*	nōvi,	nōtum,	noscōre,	to learn, to know.
Pasco,	pāvi,	pastum,	pascōre,	to feed.
Quiesco,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	quiescōre,	to become quiet.
Suesco,	suēvi,	suētum,	suescōre,	to grow accustomed.

* The Present signifies *I learn* ; the Perfect, *I know* ;
the Pluperfect, *I knew*.

THIRD CONJUGATION WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES.

Cāpio,	cēpi,	captum,	cāpēre,	to take.
Fācio,	fēci,	factum,	fācēre,	to make.
Jācio,	jēci,	jactum,	jācēre,	to throw.
Fūgio,	fūgi,	fūgitum,	fūgēre,	to flee.
Fōdio,	fōdi,	fossum,	fōdēre,	to dig.
Rāpio,	rāpui,	raptum,	rāpēre,	to seize.
Pārio,*	pēpēri,	partum,	pārēre,	to bring forth.
Quātio,	(no perfect),	quassum,	quātēre,	to shake.
Cūpio,	cūpīvi,	cūpītum,	cūpēre,	to desire.
Sāpio,	sāpīvi,	—	sāpēre,	to taste.
Lācio,	—	—	lācēre,	{ to draw, } rare, except { entice } in compo- Spēcio, — — spēcēre, { to look } sition.

* pārio, *Future Participle* pāritūrus.

IV. THE FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.

In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in *ivi*, the Supine in *itum* : as, *audio, audīvi, auditum, audire, to hear*. The following are exceptions :—

Fardio,	farsi,	{ fartum, (fartum) }	farcīre,	to cram.
Fulcio,	fulsi,	fultum,	fulcīre,	to prop.

Haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurire,	<i>to draw (water).</i>
Sancio,	sanxi,	{ sancitum or sanctum, }	sancire,	<i>to ratify.</i>
Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcire,	<i>to patch.</i>
Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentire,	<i>to feel, to think.</i>
Saepio,	saepsi,	saepum,	saepire,	<i>to fence in.</i>
Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincire,	<i>to bind.</i>
Ēo,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	<i>to go.</i>
Sālio,	{ sālui or sālī,	} saltum,	sālire,	<i>to leap.</i>
Sēpēlio,	sēpēlivi,	sēpultum,	sēpēlire,	<i>to bury.</i>
Vēnio,	vēni,	ventum,	vēnire,	<i>to come.</i>
Amicio,	{ amīcui or amixi,	} amictum,	amīcīre,	<i>to clothe.</i>
Āpērio,	āpēruī,	āpertum,	āpērire,	<i>to open.</i>
Ōpērio,	ōpēruī,	ōpertum,	ōpērire,	<i>to cover.</i>

V. DEPONENTS.

1. In the First Conjugation the Perfects and Supines are all regular.

2. Second Conjugation :

✓ Fāteor,	fassus sum,	fātēri,	<i>to confess.</i>
✓ Līceor,	līctus sum,	līcēri,	<i>to bid at a sale.</i>
✓ Mēdeor,	—	mēdēri,	<i>to heal.</i>
✓ Mēreor,	mērītus sum,	mērēri,	<i>to earn, to deserve.</i>
✓ Mīsēreor,	{ mīsērītus sum or mīsertus sum,	} mīsērēri,	<i>to take pity on.</i>
✓ Pollīceor,	pollīctus sum,	pollīcēri,	<i>to promise.</i>
✓ Reor,	rātus sum,	rēri,	<i>to think.</i>
✓ Tueor,	tuītus sum,	tuēri,	<i>to protect.</i>
✓ Vēreor,	vērītus sum,	vērēri,	<i>to fear.</i>

3. Third Conjugation :

✓ Fruor,*	{ frūītus sum or fructus sum,	} frui,	<i>to enjoy.</i>
✓ Fungor,	functus sum,	fungi,	<i>to perform.</i>
✓ Grādior,	gressus sum,	grādi,	<i>to step.</i>
✓ Lābor,	lapsus sum,	lābi,	<i>to slip.</i>
✓ Liquor,	—	liqui,	<i>to melt.</i>
✓ Lōquor,	lōcūtus sum,	lōqui,	<i>to speak.</i>
Mōrior,†	mortuus sum,	mōri,	<i>to die.</i>
✓ Nitor,	{ nixus sum or nisus sum,	} nīti,	<i>to strain.</i>
✓ Pātor,	passus sum,	pāti,	<i>to suffer.</i>
✓ Quēror,	questus sum,	quēri,	<i>to complain.</i>

* fruor, Future Participle frūītūrus.
† mōrior, " " mōrītūrus.

Ringor,	—	ringi,	to show the teeth. to snarl.
✓ Sēquor,	sēcūtus sum,	sēqui,	to follow.
✓ Ūtor,	ūsus sum,	ūtī,	to use.
(Verto)			
✓ Rēvertor,	(rēversus sum),	rēverti,	to return.
(Plecto)			
✓ Amplector,	amplexus sum,	amplecti,	to embrace.
✓ Complector,	complexus sum,	complecti,	to embrace.
✓ Apiscor,	aptus sum,	āpisci,	to obtain.
✓ Adīpiscor,	ādeptus sum,	ādīpisci,	to obtain.
✓ Commīniscor,	commentus sum,	commīnisci,	to devise.
✓ Rēmīniscor,	—	rēmīnisci,	to remember.
✓ Dēfētiscor,	dēfessus sum,	dēfētisci,	to grow weary.
✓ Expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	expergisci,	to wake up.
✓ Irascor,	—	irasci,	to be angry.
✓ Nanciscor,	nactus sum,	nancisci,	to obtain by chance.
✓ Nascor,	nātus sum,	nasci,	to be born.
✓ Obliviscor,	oblītus sum,	oblīvisci,	to forget.
✓ Paciscor,	pactus sum,	pācisci,	to make an agreement.
✓ Prōficiscor,	prōfectus sum,	prōficisci,	to set out.
✓ Ulciscor,	ultus sum,	ulcisci,	to avenge.
✓ Vescor,	—	vesci,	to eat.

4. Fourth Conjugation :

Assentior,	assensus sum,	assentīri,	to agree to.
Blandior,	blandītus sum,	blandīri,	to flatter.
Expērior,	expertus sum,	expērīri,	to try.
Largior,	largītus sum,	largīri,	to give bountifully.
Mentior,	mentītus sum,	mentīri,	to lie.
Mētior,	mensus sum,	mētīri,	to measure.
Mōlior,	mōlītus sum,	mōlīri,	to labour.
Oppērior,	{ oppertus sum, oppērītus sum,	{ oppērīri,	to wait for.
✓ Ordior,	orsus sum,	ordīri,	to begin.
✓ Orior,*	ortus sum,	ōrīri,	to rise.
✓ Partior,	partītus sum,	partīri,	to divide.
✓ Pōtior,†	pōtītus sum,	pōtīri,	to obtain possession of.
✓ Sortior,	sortītus sum,	sortīri,	to take by lot.

* *ōrior*, *Future Participle* *ōrītūrus*. In some tenses the forms are borrowed from the 3rd Conjugation : *Pres. Indic.* *ōrērīs* or *ōrīrīs*, *ōrītūr*, *ōrīmur*. In the *Imperf. Subj.* both *ōrērer* and *ōrīrer* are found.

† In the *Imperf. Subj.* both *pōtīrer* and *pōtērer* are found.

D. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

- I. Coepi, *I began.*
 II. Mēmini, *I remember.*
 III. Ōdi, *I hate.*

INDICATIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coepī	Mēmīnī	Ōdī.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coepĕram	Mēmīnĕram	Ōdĕram.
<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	Coepĕro	Mēmīnĕro	Ōdĕro.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coepĕrim	Mēmīnĕrim	Ōdĕrim.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coepissem	Mēmīnissem	Ōdissem.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Future.</i>	(wanting.)	Memento Mementōtē	(wanting.)
----------------	------------	----------------------	------------

INFINITIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coepissē	Mēmīnissē	Ōdisse.
-----------------	----------	-----------	---------

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Future.</i>	Coeptūrus	(wanting.)	Ōsūrus.
----------------	-----------	------------	---------

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coeptus sum.	<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coeptus eram.
	<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	Coeptus ĕro.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coeptus sim.	<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coeptus essem
-----------------	--------------	-----------------	---------------

INFINITIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coeptus essē.
-----------------	---------------

N.B.—The Passive forms are used when the Infinitive which follows is in the Passive voice: as, *Saguntum coeptum est oppugnari.* *Saguntum was begun to be besieged.*

IV. Āio, *I say* :—

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		<i>Present.</i>				<i>Imperfect.</i>	
S.	Āio	—	—	S.	Āiēbam	—	—
	Āis	Āiās	—		Āiēbās	—	—
	Āit	Āiāt	—		Āiēbāt	—	—
P.	—	—	—	P.	Āiēbāmūs	—	—
	—	—	—		Āiēbātīs	—	—
	Āiunt	Āiant	—		Āiēbant.	—	—
PRESENT PARTICIPLE.—Āiens.							

V. Inquam, say I:—

INDICATIVE.		<i>Futura.</i> —	<i>Perfect.</i> —
<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>		
Inquam	Inquēbam	Inquēs	Inquisti
Inquis	Inquēbās	Inquēt	Inquīt
Inquīt	Inquēbat	IMPERATIVE.	
Inquimūs	Inquēbāmūs		
Inquitīs	Inquēbātīs	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Futura.</i>
Inquunt	Inquēbant	Inquē	Inquīto.
		Inquētē	

Obs. Inquam, like the English *say I, says he*, is always used after other words in a sentence.

VI. Fāri, to speak, a Deponent:—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present. S.</i> Fārē	Fārī
Fātur	—	PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Futura.</i>		<i>Present.</i> Fantis, &c. (without a	
Fābōr, fābitūr	—	<i>Nom.</i>)	
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i> Fātus (ā, um)	
Fātus sum, &c.	Fātus sim, &c.	<i>Gerundive.</i> Fandūs (ā, um)	
<i>Pluperfect.</i>		SUPINE—Fātū.	
Fātūs ēram	Fātūs essem	GERUND—Fandī,	
		Fandō.	

VII. THE FOLLOWING IMPERATIVES.

1. Āvē (or hāvē), āvētē, *hail.* INFIN. āvērē
2. Salvē, salvētē, *hail, welcome.* INFIN. salvērē.
3. Cēdō, cēditē (or cettē), *give me.*
4. Āpāgē, āpāgītē, *begone.*

VOCABULARIES.

- m. = masculine.
 f. = feminine.
 n. = neuter.
 c. = common gender, that is, masculine and feminine.

Vocabulary 1.

ala, f.	a wing.
aquila, f.	an eagle.
colonia, f.	a colony.
columba, f.	a dove.
corona, f.	a crown.
femina, f.	a woman.
filia, f.	a daughter.
insula, f.	an island.
mensa, f.	a table.
ora, f.	a coast.
pecunia, f.	money.
porta, f.	a gate.
puerella, f.	a girl.
regina, f.	a queen.
Roma, f.	Rome (the city).
rosa, f.	a rose.

Vocabulary 2.

agricola, m.	a husbandman.
amicitia, f.	friendship.
Britannia, f.	Britain.
causa, f.	a cause.
Euröpa, f.	Europe.
Gallia, f.	Gaul (now France).
gloria, f.	glory.
Græcia, f.	Greece.
incola, c.	an inhabitant.
inimicitia, f.	enmity.
Italia, f.	Italy.
nauta, m.	a sailor.
patria, f.	a native land, country.
pöeta, m.	a poet.
pugna, f.	a battle.
Sicilia, f.	Sicily.
vita, f.	life.

P. L. 1.

Vocabulary 3.

amicus, m.	a friend.
avus, m.	a grandfather.
dominus, m.	a lord, master.
equus, m.	a horse.
filius, m.	a son.
fluvius, m.	a river.
gladius, m.	a sword.
hortus, m.	a garden.
inimicus, m.	an enemy.
Rhenus, m.	the Rhine.
Rhodus, m.	the Rhone.
ripa, f.	a bank.
servus, m.	a slave.
taurus, m.	a bull.

Vocabulary 4.

ager, m.	a field, land.
gener, m.	a son-in-law.
liber, m.	a book.
magister, m.	a master, teacher.
minister, m.	a servant.
puer, m.	a boy.
söcer, m.	a father-in-law.

Note. Minister, liber, äger are declined like magister. Söcer, gener are declined like puer.

Vocabulary 5.

argentum, n.	silver.
aurum, n.	gold.
bellum, n.	war.
coelum, n.	heaven.
diligentia, f.	diligence.
donum, n.	a gift.
gaudium, n.	joy.
metallum, n.	a metal.
oppidum, n.	a town.

M

praemium, <i>n.</i>	<i>a reward.</i>
regnum, <i>n.</i>	<i>a kingdom.</i>
scutum, <i>n.</i>	<i>a shield.</i>
templum, <i>n.</i>	<i>a temple.</i>
*Dēus, <i>m.</i>	<i>a god.</i>
discipulus, <i>m.</i>	<i>a pupil, scholar.</i>
morbis, <i>m.</i>	<i>a disease.</i>
mūrus, <i>m.</i>	<i>a wall.</i>
Rōmānus, <i>m.</i>	<i>a Roman.</i>
terra, <i>f.</i>	<i>the earth, land.</i>

* Vocative Singular same as Nom. :
Dēus: see p. 22.

Vocabulary 6.

ācūtus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>sharp.</i>
albus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>white.</i>
altus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>high, deep.</i>
bellicōsus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>warlike.</i>
bōnus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>good.</i>
grātus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>pleasing.</i>
lātus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>wide, broad.</i>
longus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>long.</i>
magnus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>great.</i>
mālus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>bad, wicked.</i>
mōlestus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>troublesome.</i>
multus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>much, many.</i>
noxius, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>hurtful, inju- rious.</i>
parvus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>small, little.</i>
rāpidus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>rapid.</i>
splendidus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>splendid, bright.</i>
tīmīdus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>timid.</i>
aeger, <i>gra, grum</i>	<i>sick.</i>
miser, <i>ēra, ērum,</i>	<i>wretched.</i>
niger, <i>gra, grum,</i>	<i>black.</i>
pulcher, <i>cra, crum,</i>	<i>beautiful.</i>
sacer, <i>cra, crum,</i>	<i>sacred.</i>
tēner, <i>ēra, ērum,</i>	<i>tender.</i>
exemplum, <i>n.</i>	<i>an example.</i>
hasta, <i>f.</i>	<i>a spear.</i>
nūmērus, <i>m.</i>	<i>a number.</i>
pēricūlum, <i>n.</i>	<i>danger.</i>

Note. Grātus, mōlestus, noxiis are fol-
lowed by the Dative case.

Vocabulary 7.

hiems, <i>hiēmis, f.</i>	<i>winter.</i>
trabs, <i>trābis, f.</i>	<i>a beam.</i>
urbs, <i>urbis, f.</i>	<i>a city.</i>
arx, <i>arcis, f.</i>	<i>a citadel.</i>
dux, <i>dūcis, c.</i>	<i>a leader, general.</i>

pax, <i>pācis, f.</i>	<i>peace.</i>
jūdex, <i>jūdicis, m.</i>	<i>a judge.</i>
lex, <i>lēgis, f.</i>	<i>a law.</i>
rex, <i>rēgis, m.</i>	<i>a king.</i>
bēnignus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>kind.</i>
firmus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>strong.</i>
jūcundus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>pleasant.</i>
justus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>just.</i>
Rōmulus, <i>m.</i>	<i>Romulus.</i>
sēvērus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>severe.</i>

Vocabulary 8.

cōmes, <i>cōmitis, c.</i>	<i>a companion.</i>
custos, <i>custōdis, c.</i>	<i>a guardian.</i>
ēques, <i>ēquitis, m.</i>	<i>a horse-soldier</i>
lāpis, <i>lāpidis, m.</i>	<i>a stone.</i>
miles, <i>militis, m.</i>	<i>a soldier.</i>
mors, <i>mortis, f.</i>	<i>death.</i>
obses, <i>obsidis, c.</i>	<i>a hostage.</i>
pēdes, <i>pēditis, m.</i>	<i>a foot-soldier.</i>
aestas, <i>tātis, f.</i>	<i>a summer.</i>
civitas, <i>tātis, f.</i>	<i>a state, citizen ship.</i>
tempestas, <i>tātis, f.</i>	<i>a tempest.</i>
vōluntas, <i>tātis, f.</i>	<i>a wish, will.</i>
nox, <i>noctis, f.</i>	<i>night.</i>
auctumnus, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>autumn.</i>
nātūra, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>nature.</i>
clārus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>clear, renowned.</i>

Vocabulary 9.

frāter, <i>tris, m.</i>	<i>a brother.</i>
māter, <i>tris, f.</i>	<i>a mother.</i>
pāter, <i>tris, m.</i>	<i>a father.</i>
agger, <i>ēris, m.</i>	<i>a mound.</i>
cālor, <i>ōris, m.</i>	<i>heat.</i>
clāmor, <i>ōris, m.</i>	<i>a shout.</i>
cōlor, <i>ōris, m.</i>	<i>colour.</i>
lābor, <i>ōris, m.</i>	<i>labour, hardship</i>
ōdor, <i>ōris, m.</i>	<i>a smell, scent.</i>
sōror, <i>ōris, f.</i>	<i>a sister.</i>
victor, <i>ōris, m.</i>	<i>a conqueror.</i>
flūs, <i>ōris, m.</i>	<i>a flower.</i>
sōl, <i>sōlis, m.</i>	<i>the sun.</i>
castra, <i>ōrum, n.pl.</i>	<i>a camp.</i>
tōtus, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>whole.</i>
fossa, <i>ac, f.</i>	<i>a ditch.</i>
mūnimentum, <i>i, n.</i>	<i>a fortification.</i>
praeda, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>booty.</i>
vārius, <i>a, um,</i>	<i>different, va- rious.</i>

Vocabulary 10.

lĕo, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>a lion.</i>
Jūno, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>June.</i>
pāvo, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>a peacock.</i>
sermo, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>a discourse.</i>
consuētudo, Inis, <i>f.</i>	<i>habit.</i>
hōmo, Inis, <i>c.</i>	<i>{ a man, a woman.</i>
multitūdo, Inis, <i>f.</i>	<i>a multitude.</i>
virgo, Inis, <i>f.</i>	<i>a maiden.</i>
ōrātor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>an orator.</i>
*alter, ĕra, ĕrum,	<i>second.</i>
certus, a, um,	<i>certain.</i>
dĕa, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>a goddess.</i>
doctus, a, um,	<i>learned.</i>
infinitus, a, um,	<i>unbounded, infinite.</i>
Mīnerva, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Minerva.</i>
vāldus, a, um,	<i>strong.</i>

* The Genitive Singular of *alter* is *altĕrius*, Dat. *altĕri*.

Vocabulary 11.

cīvis, is, <i>a.</i>	<i>a citizen.</i>
classis, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a fleet.</i>
hostis, is, <i>a.</i>	<i>an enemy (public enemy).</i>
turris, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a tower.</i>
vallis, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a valley.</i>
vestis, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a garment.</i>
clādes, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>slaughter.</i>
nūbes, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a cloud.</i>
rūpes, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a rock.</i>
angustus, a, um,	<i>narrow.</i>
āter, atra, atrum,	<i>black.</i>
dūrus, a, um,	<i>hard.</i>
nix, nīvis, <i>f.</i>	<i>snow.</i>
nōtus, a, um,	<i>known.</i>
pĕritus, a, um,	<i>skillful.</i>
Rōmānus, a, um,	<i>Roman.</i>

Vocabulary 12.

grāmen, Inis, <i>n.</i>	<i>grass.</i>
nōmen, Inis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a name.</i>
gĕnus, ĕris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a race, a class.</i>
ŏpus, ĕris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a work.</i>
sīdus, ĕris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a star, constellation.</i>
scĕlus, ĕris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a crime.</i>
dĕous, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>an ornament.</i>
corpus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a body.</i>

frīgus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>cold.</i>
litus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a shore.</i>
tempus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>time.</i>
cāput, Itis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a head.</i>
crūs, crūris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a leg.</i>
fulgur, ūris, <i>n.</i>	<i>lightning.</i>
ŏs, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a mouth.</i>
rĕte, is, <i>n.</i>	<i>a net.</i>
māre, is, <i>n.</i>	<i>the sea.</i>
ānīmāl, ālis, <i>n.</i>	<i>an animal.</i>
calcār, āris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a spur.</i>
vectigāl, ālis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a tax.</i>
annus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>a year.</i>
antiquus, a, um,	<i>ancient.</i>
aurĕus, a, um,	<i>golden.</i>
bālaena, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>a whale.</i>
Carthāgo, Inis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Carthage (a city of Africa).</i>
Cicĕro, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cicero (a celebrated Roman orator).</i>
dŏmīcīlīum, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>abode.</i>
ēlēphantus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>an elephant.</i>
īra, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>anger.</i>
nŏvus, a, um,	<i>new.</i>
ŏculus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>an eye.</i>
piscis, is, <i>m.</i>	<i>a fish.</i>
prŏfundus, a, um,	<i>deep.</i>

Vocabulary 13.

ācer, oris, <i>cre.</i>	<i>keen, sharp.</i>
cĕler, ĕris, ĕre,	<i>swift.</i>
brĕvis, e,	<i>short.</i>
dulcis, e,	<i>sweet.</i>
diffīcilis, e,	<i>difficult.</i>
fācilis, e,	<i>easy.</i>
fīdĕlis, e,	<i>faithful.</i>
lĕvis, e,	<i>light.</i>
omnis, e,	<i>all, every.</i>
ūtilis, e,	<i>useful.</i>
audax, ācis,	<i>bold.</i>
rāpax, ācis,	<i>rapacious.</i>
fĕlix, icis,	<i>fortunate, successful.</i>
vĕlox, ŏcis,	<i>swift.</i>
ingens, entis,	<i>immense.</i>
praesens, entis,	<i>present.</i>
praestans, antis,	<i>excellent.</i>
pŏtens, entis,	<i>powerful.</i>
prūdens, entis,	<i>prudent.</i>
arma, ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i>	<i>arms.</i>
carmen, Inis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a song.</i>

consilium, ii, n.	plan, counsel.
fūror, ōris, m.	madness.
hūmānus, a, um,	human.
initium, ii, n.	a beginning.
nāvis, is, f.	a ship.
Persa, ae, m.	a Persian.
sāgitta, ae, f.	an arrow.
vīa, ae, f.	a way, a road.
vētus, vētēris,	old.
vinum, i, n.	wine.
vulnus, ēris, n.	a wound.

Vocabulary 14.

acus, ūs, f.	a needle.
arcus, ūs, m.	a bow.
auditus, ūs, m.	hearing.
cursus, ūs, m.	running.
equitatus, ūs, m.	cavalry.
exercitus, ūs, m.	an army.
figus, ūs, f.	a fig.
fructus, ūs, m.	fruit.
magistratus, ūs, m.	a magistrate.
manus, ūs, f.	a hand.
peditatus, ūs, m.	infantry.
portus, ūs, m.	a harbour.
quercus, ūs, f.	an oak.
sensus, ūs, m.	a sense.
visus, ūs, m.	seeing.
cornu, ūs, n.	a horn.
genu, ūs, n.	a knee.
auris, is, f.	an ear.
cervus, i, m.	a stag.
coelestis, e,	belonging to the heavens: hence
arcus coelestis,	the rainbow.
instrumentum, i, n.	an instrument.
magnificus, a, um,	magnificent.
tutus, a, um,	safe.
Scythia, ae, m.	a Scythian.
Scythae, arum,	the Scythians.
m. pl.	
sedes, is, f.	a seat.
voluptas, tatis, f.	pleasure.

Vocabulary 15.

acies, ei, f.	a line of battle.
dies, ei, m. & f.	a day.
facies, ei, f.	a countenance.
fides, ei, f.	faith, fidelity.
planities, ei, f.	a plain.
res, ei, f.	a thing.

semitas, ei, f.	slowness, indolence.
spes, ei, f.	hope.
creator, ōris, m.	a creator.
domina, ae, f.	a mistress.
fortuna, ae, f.	a fortune.
rarus, a, um,	rare.
serenus, a, um,	clear.
victoria, ae, f.	a victory.

Vocabulary 16.

arbor, ōris, f.	a tree.
bestia, ae, f.	a beast.
canis, is, c.	a dog.
conscientia, ae, f.	conscience.
debilis, e,	feeble.
divitiae, arum, f.	riches.
(only pl.)	
flumen, inis, n.	a current, river.
fortis, e,	strong, brave.
fulmen, inis, n.	lightning, a thunderbolt.
fūnus, ēris, n.	a funeral.
immortalis, e,	immortal.
jūvenis, is, c.	a young man or woman.
monumentum, i, n.	a monument.
mortalis, e,	mortal.
Neptūnus, i, m.	Neptune.
paucus, a, um,	few.
plenus, a, um,	full.
(with gen.)	
silva, ae, f.	a wood.

Vocabulary 17.

culpa, ae, f.	blame, fault.
Graecus, a, um,	Grecian, Greek.
honor, ōris, m.	an honour.
indoctus, a, um,	unlearned.
inimicus, a, um,	unfriendly.
laus, laudis, f.	praise.
memorabilis, e,	to be remembered, memorable.
verus, a, um,	true.
virtus, ūtis, f.	valour, virtue.

Vocabulary 18.

adulatio, ōnis, f.	flattery.
amabilis, e,	lovely.
amor, ōris, m.	love.

asper, ěra, ěrum,	rough, rugged.
Cāto, ōnis, m.	Cato, a noble Roman.
ferrum, i, n.	iron.
Helvētia, ae, f.	the country of the Helvetii (in Switzerland).
hibernus, a, um,	wintry, of winter.
Imāgo, ĩnis, f.	a likeness, portrait, image.
imprōbus, a, um,	dishonest, wicked.
ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, n.	a journey. [ed.]
lēpus, ōris, m.	a hare.
lūna, ae, f.	the moon.
lux, lūcis, f.	light.
*mĕus, a, um,	my, mine.
mons, montis, m.	a mountain.
nihil, indec. n.	nothing.
nōn, adv.	not.
ōdĭum, ii, n.	hatred.
pernĭcĭōsus, a, um,	destructive.
quam, adv. & conj.	than, as.
rādix, ĩcis, f.	a root.
sāpĭentĭa, ae, f.	wisdom.
semper, adv.	always, ever.
sĭmŭlātĭo, ōnis, f.	a pretence.
sōnĭtus, ūs, m.	a sound.
spĕrātus, a, um,	hoped for.
suāvis, e,	sweet, delightful.
sŭus, a, um,	his, hers, its, their own.
tĕnŭis, e,	slender.
tranquillus, a, um,	calm.
tŭus, a, um,	thy, thine.
vĕr, vĕris, n.	the spring.
vultur, ūris, m.	a vulture.

* The Vocative Sing. Masc. of *meus* is *mi*.

Vocabulary 19.

Ālexander, dri, m.	Alexander, a famous king of Macedonia.
†Augustus, i, m.	Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.
centŭria, ae, f.	a century.
cĕrāsus, i, f.	a cherry-tree.
cĕrāsūm, i, n.	a cherry.

† The month of August, previously called Sextilis, was named after the emperor Augustus.

cōhors, rtis, f.	a cohort.
consul, ūlis, m.	a consul.
injustus, a, um,	unjust.
lēgio, ōnis, f.	a legion.
Mācĕdo, ōnis, m.	a Macedonian.
mālus, i, f.	an apple-tree.
mālūm, i, n.	an apple.
mānĭpŭlus, i, m.	a maniple.
mensis, is, m.	a month.
mĭtis, e,	mild.
ōs, ossis, n.	a bone.
pars, partis, f.	a part.
pĭrus, i, f.	a pear-tree.
pĭrum, i, n.	a pear.
prŭnus, i, f.	a plum-tree.
prŭnum, i, n.	a plum.
sāpĭens, ntis, adj.	wise, a wise-man.
Xerxēs, ĩs, m.	Xerxes, a famous king of Persia.

Vocabulary 20.

attentus, a, um,	attentive.
bĕātus, a, um,	happy.
cārus, a, um,	dear.
contentus, a, um,	contented.
dĭlgens, ntis,	diligent, careful.
dĭves, ĩtis,	rich.
ignāvia, ae, f.	cowardice.
jŭs, jŭris, n.	right, law.
laetus, a, um,	joyful.
liber, ěra, ěrum,	free.
mĕmor, ōris,	mindful.
noster, tra, trum,	our, ours.
nunc, adv.	now.
pauper, ěris,	poor.
praeceptor, ōris, m.	a teacher.
prōbus, a, um,	good, upright.
sālus, ūtis, f.	safety.
sors, rtis, f.	a lot.
Tĭtus, i (T.), m.	Titus, a common Roman fore-sad. [name.]
trĭstis, e,	sad.
vester, tra, trum,	your, yours.
sĭ, conj.	if.

Vocabulary to Ex. 21, 22, 23.

ānĭmus, i, m.	mind, the soul, courage, temper, the feelings.
---------------	--

auctoritas, ātis, <i>f.</i>	authority.
*autem, <i>conj.</i>	but.
auxilium, ii, <i>n.</i>	help, aid.
cupiditas, ātis, <i>f.</i>	desire, passion.
Dēmōsthēnēs, is, <i>m.</i>	Demosthenes, the famous Athenian orator.
industrius, a, um,	industrious, busy.
Iners, rtis,	helpless, sluggish.
liberi, ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	children.
mēmōria, ae, <i>f.</i>	memory.
pārens, entis, <i>c.</i>	a parent.
planta, ae, <i>f.</i>	a sprout, plant.
proclium, ii, <i>n.</i>	a battle.

* The proper position of *autem* is after the first word of the clause to which it belongs.

Vocabulary 24.

addictus, a, um,	devoted.
aeternus, a, um,	eternal.
bellūa, ae, <i>f.</i>	a great beast.
Cimbri, ōrum, <i>m.</i>	the Cimbrians, a formidable Celtic tribe.
cōr, cordis, <i>n.</i>	a heart.
ēlēgans, ntis,	elegant, exquisite.
fīdēlis, e, } fidus, a, um, }	faithful.
fons, ntis, <i>m.</i>	a fountain.
*Līvius, ii, <i>m.</i>	Livy, a Roman historian.
luscīnīa, ae, <i>f.</i>	a nightingale.
mūlier, ēris, <i>f.</i>	a woman, wife.
*Sallustius, ii, <i>m.</i>	Sallust, a Roman historian.
salvus, a, um,	safe.
sanguis, īnis, <i>m.</i>	blood.
scriptor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	a writer, author.

* Proper Names ending in *ius* make *i* in the Vocative: e.g. Voc. *Livi*, *Sallusti*. So also *filius* makes Voc. *fili*, and *gēntis*, a guardian deity, *gēni*.

Vocabulary 25.

(A, B, C.)

aedificō, āvi, ātum, <i>1.</i>	I build.
ambūlo, āvi, ātum,	I walk.
castigo, āvi, ātum,	I chastise.
crēo, āvi, ātum,	I create, make.
cūro, āvi, ātum,	I take care, pains.

do, dēdi, dātum, <i>1.</i>	give.
dāre,	
ēmendo, āvi, ātum,	I improve.
ēmigro, āvi, ātum,	I depart from.
expugno, āvi, ātum,	I take by storm.
fīrmo, āvi, ātum,	I strengthen.
flo, āvi, ātum,	I blow.
hābito, āvi, ātum,	I dwell.
intro, āvi, ātum,	I enter.
jūdico, āvi, ātum,	I judge.
laudo, āvi, ātum,	I praise.
mūto, āvi, ātum,	I change.
oppugno, āvi, ātum,	I attack, assault.
orno, āvi, ātum,	I adorn.
pāro, āvi, ātum,	I prepare, get, gain.
pugno, āvi, ātum,	I fight.
rēcresco, āvi, ātum,	I refresh.
vasto, āvi, ātum,	I lay waste.
vīgilo, āvi, ātum,	I watch, I am awake.
vītūpēro, āvi, ātum,	I blame, find fault with.

aedificium, ii, <i>n.</i>	a building.
Cōrinthus, i, <i>f.</i>	Corinth.
diligenter, <i>adv.</i>	carefully.
dum, <i>conj.</i>	while.
fraus, fraudis, <i>f.</i>	dishonesty.
jam, <i>adv.</i>	now, already.
libertas, tātis, <i>f.</i>	freedom, liberty.
lītēra, ae, <i>f.</i>	a letter of the alphabet.
lītērae, arum, <i>f.</i>	letters, learning; also, an epistle, letter.
mōs, mōris, <i>m.</i>	a manner, custom.
nēmō, īnis, <i>c.</i>	nobody. [tom.]
ōpulentus, a, um,	wealthy.
plācidus, a, um,	quiet.
prōbītas, ātis, <i>f.</i>	honesty, integrity.
quum, <i>adv. & conj.</i>	when. [rity.]
somnus, i, <i>m.</i>	sleep.
tīmor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	fear.
vālētūdo, īnis, <i>f.</i>	health.
ventus, i, <i>m.</i>	wind.

(D, E, F.)

advento, āvi, ātum, <i>1.</i>	I am on the point of arriving.
canto, āvi, ātum,	I ring.

dēlecto, āvi, ātum, *I delight, amuse.*
 dīmīco, āvi, ātum, *I fight (a battle).*
 dubito, āvi, ātum, *I doubt.*
 erro, āvi, ātum, *I err, make a*
mistake.

exhīlāro, āvi, ātum, *I cheer.*
 impēro, āvi, ātum, *I command.*
 (with *dat.*)
 libēro, āvi, ātum, *I free, deliver.*
 occūpo, āvi, ātum, *I seize upon.*
 opto, āvi, ātum, *I wish, desire.*
 porto, āvi, ātum, *I carry.*
 rēdamo, āvi, ātum, *I love in return.*
 rēnovo, āvi, ātum, *I make new*
again, restore.

servo, āvi, ātum, *I preserve, save.*
 supēro, āvi, ātum, *I overcome.*
 tracto, āvi, ātum, *I handle, deal*
with.

ab (ā, abs), *prep. from, by.*
 (with *abl.*)
 dubius, a, um, *doubtful.*
 fortiter, *adv. bravely.*
 fortissimē, *adv. very bravely.*
 Hannibal, ālis, m. *Hannibal, the*
great Cartha-
ginian general.
 hērī, *adv. yesterday.*
 intērītus, ūs, m. *destruction.*
 itā, *adv. (from is, in that way,*
id) thus.
 mājōres, um, m. pl. *ancestors.*
 rectus, a, um, *straight, right.*
 saepē, *adv. often.*
 stātio, ōnis, f. *a post, station.*
 terror, ōris, m. *terror, alarm.*

Vocabulary 26.

oēroco, ūi, itum, 2. *I restrain, curb.*
 dēbeo, ūi, itum, 2. *I owe, ought.*
 dēlēo, ēvi, ētum, 2. *I destroy.*
 displicēo, ūi, itum, *I displease.*
 2. (with *dat.*)
 docēo, docūi, doc- *I teach.*
 tum, 2.
 exercēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I exercise.*
 flēo, flēvi, flētum, 2. *I weep.*
 flōrēo, ūi, 2. *I bloom, flourish.*
 *gaudēo, gāvīsus *I rejoice.*
 sum, 2.

* The Verb *gaudeo* belongs to the class of Neuter-passives. (See p. 85.)

hābēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I have.*
 mērēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I deserve.*
 mōnēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I advise, warn.*
 nōcēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I hurt, harm.*
 (with *dat.*)
 pārēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I obey.*
 (with *dat.*)
 plācēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I please.*
 (with *dat.*)
 praebēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I furnish, af-*
ford, exhibit.
 terrēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I terrify, fright-*
en, alarm.
 vālēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I am strong, in*
good health.

ars, artis, f. *art, handicraft.*
 āvis, is, f. *a bird.*
 Athēniensis, e, *Athenian.*
 bēnē, *adv. well.*
 Caesar, āris, m. *Caesar, a fa-*
mous Roman.
 cantus, ūs, m. *a song.*
 diū, *adv. a long time.*
 divīnus, a, um, *belonging to the*
gods, divine.
 Lātīnus, a, um, *Latin.*
 lingua, ae, f. *tongue, lan-*
guage.
 praeceptum, i, n. *precept, instruc-*
tion, lesson.
 Pompēius, ēii, m. *Pompey, the ri-*
val of Caesar
 quā, } *conj. because.*
 quōd, }
 saepissimē, *adv. very often.*
 sēnectūs, ūtis, f. *old age.*
 Sōlon, ōnis, m. *Solon, the Athe-*
nian law-
giver.
 tēmērītas, ātis, f. *recklessness,*
rashness.

Vocabulary 27.

absūmo, sumpsi, *I consume, eat*
 sumptum, 3. *off.*
 cingo, cinxī, cino- *I surround.*
 tum, 3.
 contemno, tempesi, *I despise.*
 temptum, 3.
 contrāho, traxī, *I draw together.*
 tractum, 3.

convolo, āvi, ātum, *I fly or rush together.*

corrigo, rexi, rec- *I correct.*
tum, 3.

dēfendo, di, sum, 3. *I defend.*

dēsēro, rūi, rtum, 3. *I abandon.*

dētēgo, xi, ctum, 3. *I discover.*

dīco, xi, ctum, 3. *I say, speak.*

disco, dīdici, —, 3. *I learn.*

dūco, xi, ctum, 3. *I lead.*

ēmo, ēmi, emptum, *I buy.*

3.
excōlo, cōlūi, cul- *I cultivate care-*
tum, 3. *fully.*

instītūo, ūi, ūtum, *I appoint, in-*
3. *stitute.*

instrūo, xi, ctum, *I arrange, draw*
3. *up in order.*

jungo, junxi, junc- *I join.*
tum, 3.

lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3. *I gather, read.*

narro, āvi, ātum, 1. *I relate.*

pingo, pinxi, pic- *I paint, em-*
tum, 3. *broider.*

rēgo, rexi, rectum, *I rule.*
3.

scribo, psi, ptum, 3. *I write.*

solvere, vi, ūtum, 3. *I loosen, pay.*

specto, āvi, ātum, *I look at, look on.*
1.

tēgo, texi, tectum, *I cover.*
3.

trāho, traxi, trac- *I draw, drag.*
tum, 3.

*triumpho, āvi, *I triumph.*
ātum, 1.

volo, āvi, ātum, 1. *I fly.*

Cāmillus, i, m. *Camillus, a Ro-*
man general.

Cātīlina, ae, m. *Catiline, a con-*
spirator.

conjūrātio, ōnis, f. *a conspiracy.*

cōpla, ae, f. *plenty.*

cōplae, ārum, f. pl. *forces.*

currus, ūs, m. *a chariot.*

fērē, adv. *almost, com-*
monly.

Hellespontus, i, m. *the Hellespont*
(now the Dar-
danelles).

impērātor, ōris, m. *a military com-*
mander, a
general.

in, prep. (with acc.) *into.*

incendūm, ii, n. *a fire, conflagration.*

innūmērus, a, um, *innumerable.*

lōcus, i, m., pl. -i, *a place.*

m., and -a, n.

mens, mentis, f. *the mind.*

mundus, i, m. *the world.*

obsīdīo, ōnis, f. *a siege, blockade.*

ōrātīo, ōnis, f. *oration, speech.*

pallūm, ii, n. *a cloak.*

*pons, ntis, m. *a bridge.*

sīmūl ac (atque), *as soon as*

or in one word,

sīmūlac, conj.

vix, adv. *scarcely.*

* Observe the phrase *jungere flūmen*
ponte, to throw a bridge over a river.

Vocabulary 28.

custōdīo, īvi, ītum, *I guard, keep*
4. *guard.*

dormīo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I sleep.*

ētrūdīo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I train up, edu-*
cate.

fīnīo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I limit, put an*
end to.

mollīo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I soften, assuage.*

mūnīo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I fortify.*

nescīo, īvi & xi, *I am ignorant*
itum, 4. *of.*

nūtrīo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I nourish, nur-*
ture.

ōbēdīo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I obey.*
(with dat.)

pūnīo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I punish.*

rēpērīo, pēri, per- *I find.*
tum, 4.

scīo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I know.*

sēpēlīo, īvi and } *I bury.*
ii, pultum, 4. }

vēnīo, vēni, ven- *I come.*
tum, 4.

vestīo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I clothe.*

vincīo, vinxi, vinc- *I bind.*
tum, 4.

Alpēs, ium, m. pl. *the Alps.*

* A triumph (*triumphus*) was a grand procession of a Roman general through the streets of Rome.

Cornēlia, ae, f.	Cornelia, a Roman matron.
crūdēlis, e,	cruel.
diligētiſſimē, adv.	most carefully.
dōlor, ōris, m.	pain, grief.
ētiā, conj.	also, even.
finis, is, m.	end, limit, in pl. territories.
gnāvītēr, adv.	actively, vigor-
Lībŷa, ae, f.	Africa. [ously.
lictor, ōris, m.	a lictor (attendant on a magistrate).
longinquus, a, um,	long, distant.
longinquitās, ātis, f.	length, distance.
membrāna, ae, f.	thin skin, membrane.
mollis, e,	soft, mellow.
mortuus, a, um,	dead.
olim, adv.	formerly, once upon a time.
quōquē, conj.	also, even.
tēnūis, e,	thin, delicate.
turpis, e,	base, disgraceful.
vestīmentum, i, n.	clothing.
vinculum, i, n.	a chain, bond.
vox, vōcis, f.	a voice.

Vocabulary 29.

ēdūco, āvi, ātum, 1.	I educate.
ēdūco, xi, ctum, 3.	I lead out.
fūgo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I put to flight.
vulnēro, āvi, ātum, 1.	I wound.

1.

Antīōchus, i, m.	Antiochus, a name of several kings of Syria. [nent.
ēgrēgius, a, um,	excellent, emi-
grāvītēr, adv.	heavily, severely, grievously.
Lŷcorgus, i, m.	Lycurgus, the Spartan legislator.
Trōja, ae, f.	Troy, the city.
Vesta, ae, f.	Vesta, the goddess of fire and the hearth.

Vocabulary 30.

mānēo, mansi, I remain.	
mansum, 2.	
mōvēo, mōvi, I move, disturb.	
mōtum, 2.	
tīmeo, ūi, —, 2. I fear.	
adventus, ūs, m.	arrival.
Nēro, ōnis, m.	Nero, a Roman emperor.
strēnūus, a, um,	vigorous.
strēnūē, adv.	vigorously.
stūdiūm, ii, n.	zeal, pursuit, study.
sūbitus, a, um,	sudden.

Vocabulary 31.

affligo, xi, ctum, 3.	I cast down prostrate.
cōlo, cōlūi, cultum, 3.	I cultivate, cherish, &c.
dīlīgo, lexi, lectum, 3.	I esteem, love.
fingo, finxi, fictum, 3.	I frame, feign, invent.
stūdeō, ūi, —, 2.	I am eager, zealous.
vēho, vexe, vectum, 3.	I carry, in Pass. I ride.
vinco, vīci, victum, 3.	I conquer.
vivo, vixi, victum, 3.	I live.

clādes, is, f.	disaster, defeat.
fābūla, ae, f.	a fable, story.
nōbīlis, e,	distinguished.
perversus, a, um,	wilful, perverse.
Phaëthon, ōntis, m.	Phaëthon, a son of Apollo.
prōbē, adv.	rightly, properly
quīdem, adv.	indeed.
rātiō, ōnis, f.	reason.
Scipio, ōnis, m.	Scipio, a noble Roman.
vēhementēr, adv.	vehemently, warmly.

Vocabulary 32.

cādo, cēcīdi, cāsum, 3.	I fall.
--------------------------------	----------------

<i>āēr, āēris, m.</i>	<i>the air.</i>
<i>Afrīcānus, i, m.</i>	<i>Africanus, a surname of the Scipios.</i>
<i>cognītīo, ōnis, f.</i>	<i>inquiry, knowledge.</i>
<i>ērūdītus, a, um,</i>	<i>trained, educated.</i>
<i>Gracchus, i, m.</i>	<i>Gracchus, a noble Roman.</i>
<i>īnjustē, adv.</i>	<i>unjustly.</i>
<i>justē, adv.</i>	<i>justly.</i>
<i>lāpīdēus, a, um,</i>	<i>of stone.</i>
<i>nēgōtīum, ii, n.</i>	<i>business.</i>
<i>pellis, is, f.</i>	<i>skin (of an animal).</i>
<i>prīus, adv.</i>	<i>sooner, before.</i>
<i>Pūnicus, a, um,</i>	<i>Punic, Carthaginian.</i>
<i>Sōcrātēs, is, m.</i>	<i>Socrates, the sage of Athens.</i>
<i>sōlum, adv.</i>	<i>only.</i>
<i>summus, a, um,</i>	<i>highest, utmost, greatest.</i>
<i>Tībērīus, ii, m. (Ti.)</i>	<i>Tiberius, a common Roman fore-name.</i>

Vocabulary 33.

<i>absurdus, a, um,</i>	<i>absurd.</i>
<i>bōna, ōrum, n. pl.</i>	<i>goods.</i>
<i>celsus, a, um,</i>	<i>lofty, tall.</i>
<i>margārīta, ae, f.</i>	<i>a pearl.</i>
<i>nēcessārius, a, um,</i>	<i>necessary, needful.</i>
<i>nīdus, i, m.</i>	<i>a nest.</i>
<i>versus, ūs, m.</i>	<i>a line, a verse.</i>

Vocabulary 34.

<i>admīror, ātus, 1.</i>	<i>I wonder at, I admire.</i>
<i>asperor, ātus, 1.</i>	<i>I reject, despise.</i>
<i>cōnor, ātus, 1.</i>	<i>I attempt.</i>
<i>contemplor, ātus, 1.</i>	<i>I observe carefully, contemplate.</i>
<i>hortor, ātus, 1.</i>	<i>I urge, exhort, encourage.</i>
<i>mēdītor, ātus, 1.</i>	<i>I meditate on, study.</i>
<i>mīror, ātus, 1.</i>	<i>I wonder at, admire.</i>

<i>vēnēror, ātus, 1.</i>	<i>I reverence, worship.</i>
--------------------------	------------------------------

<i>dēmum, adv.</i>	<i>indeed.*</i>
<i>pōtestas, ātis, f.</i>	} <i>power.†</i>
<i>pōtentia, ae, f.</i>	
<i>quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quīdam,</i>	<i>a certain, certain one.</i>
<i>tum, adv.</i>	<i>then.</i>

* As, *tum dēmum, then indeed; then and not till then.*

† *Potestas* is the regular power of a magistrate; *Potentia*, the power which arises out of personal weight and influence.

Vocabulary 35.

<i>*accīpio, cēpi, cep- tum, 3.</i>	<i>I receive.</i>
<i>*confīteor, fessus, 2.</i>	<i>I confess.</i>
<i>*dēcīpio, cēpi, cep- tum, 3.</i>	<i>I deceive.</i>
<i>*ējīcio, jēcī, jec- tum, 3.</i>	<i>I cast forth.</i>
<i>fātēor, fassus, 2.</i>	<i>I confess.</i>
<i>īmītor, ātus, 1.</i>	<i>I imitate.</i>
<i>īntūēor, ītus, 2.</i>	<i>I look upon, into.</i>
<i>mīsērēor, ītus or rtus, 2.</i>	<i>I pity, have pity on.</i>
<i>pollīcēor, ītus, 2.</i>	<i>I promise.</i>
<i>rēcōrdor, ātus, 1.</i>	<i>I call to mind.</i>
<i>tūēor, ītus, 2.</i>	<i>I gaze, guard, protect.</i>
<i>vērēor, ītus, 2.</i>	<i>I fear, reverence.</i>

* Observe the change of *ā* to *i* when a preposition is prefixed in composition: as, *accīpio* = *ad* + *cāpio*; *confīteor* = *con* + *fātēor*, etc.

<i>Āsia, ae, f.</i>	<i>Asia.</i>
<i>Dārius, ii, m.</i>	<i>Darius, a king of Persia.</i>
<i>ex, ē, prep. (with abl.)</i>	<i>out of.</i>
<i>fācīnus, ōris, n.</i>	<i>bold or daring deed, crime.</i>
<i>Plīnius, ii, m.</i>	<i>Pliny, the name of two Roman authors.</i>

pro-terītus, a, um, *past.*
rēus, i, m. *an accused man,
defendant.*

Vocabulary 36.

abūtor, ūsus, 3. *I abuse.*
adhortor, ātus, 1. *I urge, exhort.*
adīpiscor, ādeptus, *I acquire, at-*
3. *tain to, obtain.*
alloquor, locūtus, *I speak to.*
3.
committo, mīsi, *I send together,*
missum, 3. *join (fight)*
battle.
dēflāgro, āvi, ātum, *to be burnt down.*
1.
fruo, fruītus and *I enjoy.*
fructus, 3.
fungor, functus, 3. *I discharge.*
gēro, gessi, gēstum, *I carry on (war),*
3. *wage (war).*
incūso, āvi, ātum, *I accuse, find*
1. *fault with.*
jūbeo, jussi, jus- *I order, bid.*
sum, 2.
loquor, locūtus, 3. *I speak.*
mōrīor, mortuus } *I die.*
(*fut. part. mōrī-*
tūrus, about to
die), 3.
nascor, nātus, 3. *I am born.*
obliscor, litus, 3. *I forget.*
pātior, passus, 3. *I endure, suffer.*
prōficiscor, fectus, *I set out.*
3.
rēmīniscor, 3. *I remember.*
sequor, cūtus, 3. *I follow.*
utor, ūsus, 3. *I use.*
vescor, —, 3. *I feed, live on.*

ad, *prep. (with acc.) to, at, near.*
aliquando, *adv. sometimes.*
apud, *prep. (with*
acc.) at, near.
benignē, *adv. kindly.*
cāro, carnis, *f. flesh.*
cāsūs, i, m. *cheese.*
consulātus, ūs, m. *office of consul,*
consulate.
cruciātus, ūs, m. *torture.*
Dīana, ae, *f. Diana.*

Eurīpides, is, m. *Euripides, an*
Athenian tra-
gic poet.
immortālitas, ātis, *immortality.*

f.
Labīēnus, i, m. *Labienus, one of*
Caesar's lieu-
tenants.
lac, lactis, n. *milk.*
lācus, ūs, m. *a lake.*
laetitia, ae, *f. joy.*
Mēnāpiī, ōrum, m. *Menapii, a Gal-*
lic tribe.
mox, *adv. soon, shortly.*
mūnus, ēris, n. *a gift, duty,*
function.
nēvē, *conj. (with*
subj.) nor, and lest.
nīmīs, *adv. too, too much.*
pēr, *prep. (with*
acc.) through.
poena, ae, *f. punishment.*
Poenī, ōrum, m. *the Carthagi-*
nians.
pristīnus, a, um, *former, olden.*
rārō, *adv. seldom.*
Rēgulus, i, m. *Regulus, a fa-*
mous Roman.
Sālāmis, īnis, *f. Salamis, an is-*
land near
Athens.
tantum, *adv. only.*
Trāsīmēnus, i, m. *Lake Trasimene,*
in Italy.

Vocabulary 37.

blandīor, itus (with *I flatter, win*
dat.), 4. upon.
expērior, ritus, 4. *I try, experience.*
mētior, mensus, 4. *I measure.*
mentior, itus, 4. *I lie, tell a lie.*
ordior, orsus, 4. *I begin.*
partior, itus, 4. *I share, divide.*
pōtior, itus, 4. *I obtain pos-*
(with abl.) session of.

cīvilis, e, *adj. belonging to a*
citizen, civil.
Ēpāminondas, ae, *Epaminondas,*
m. *a famous The-*
ban.

frons, frontis, *f.* the forehead,
nunquam, *adv.* never. [brow.
vultus, ūs, *m.* a countenance,
looks.

Vocabulary 38.

flūo, fluxi, fluxum, *I flow.*

3.
migro, āvi, ātum, *I migrate, de-*
1. *art.*

mētus, ūs, *m.* fear.
occīdens, ntis, *m.* the west (the set-
ting sun).
permulti, ae, a, very many.
primo, *adv.* at first.
primum, *adv.* first, in the first
place.

Vocabulary 39.

divīdo, vīsi, vīsum, *I divide, sepa-*
3. *rate.*

mitto, mīsi, mis- *I send.*
sum, 3.

cētēri (caet.), cē- the rest.
tērae, cētēra, *pl.*

Germāni, ōrum, *m.* the Germans.
Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian.* (See
Voc. 18.)

lēgātus, i, *m.* ambassador,
lieutenant.

ōcēānus, i, *m.* the ocean.

Vocabulary 40.

fulgēo, lsi, lsum, 2. *I shine.*
prōfēro, tūli, lātum, *I extend.* (See
ferre, 3. v. irr. p. 80.)

Aegyptus, i, *f.* Egypt.
impēriūm, ii, *n.* empire.
Indi, ōrum, *m. pl.* Indians, the peo-
ple of India.

marmor, ōris, *n.* marble.
servitūs, ūtis, *f.* slavery.
tābernāculum, i, *n.* a tent.
uxor, ōris, *f.* a wife.

Vocabulary 41.

accēdo, cessi, ces- *I approach.*
sum, 3.

āgo, ēgi, actum, 3. *I lead, act, do.*
excēdo, cessi, ces- *I depart from.*
sum, 3.

incīpio, cēpi, cep- *I begin.*
tum, 3.

perdo, dīdi, dītum, *I destroy.*
3.

rēsisto, stīti, stī-
tum, 3. (with } *I resist.*
dat.)

atque, ac, *conj.* and.
attentē, *adv.* attentively.
audactēr, *adv.* boldly, daringly.
Hasdrūbal, ālis, *m.* Hasdrubal, the
brother of
Hannibal.

jūventūs, ūtis, *f.* youth.
lātē, *adv.* widely, wide.
longē, *adv.* far.

Roscius, ii, *m.* Roscius, a Ro-
man name.

sātis, *adv.* enough, suffi-
ciently.

tigris, is or Idis, *c.* a tiger, tigress.

Vocabulary 42.

infringo, frēgi, *I break, impair.*
fractum, 3.

obscurō, āvi, ātum, *I darken, ob-*
1. *scure.*

rēlinquo, līqui, *I leave, quit.*
lictum, 3.

aequus, a, um, level, even, just.
cur, *adv.* why?

impētus, ūs, *m.* an onset, attack.

invidiā, ae, *f.* envy, ill-will.

splendor, ōris, *m.* brightness, bril-
liancy.

tȳrannus, i, *m.* a despot, tyrant.

Vocabulary 43.

cōmītor, ātus, 1. *I accompany.*
immōlo, āvi, ātum, *I sacrifice.*
1.

indulgēo, dulsi, *I indulge.*
dultum, 2. (with
dat.)

lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, 3. *I play.*
mētuo, tui, tūtum, 3. *I fear.*

oro, avi, atum, 1. *I entreat, pray.*
salto, avi, atum, 1. *I dance.*
sedeo, sedi, sessum, *I sit.*

2.
videor, visus, 2. *I seem, appear.*

Apollō, inis, m. *Apollo, a Roman divinity.*
hostia, ae, f. *a victim.*
nobilis, e, *distinguished, noble.*

Pythagōras, ae, m. *Pythagoras, a famous Greek philosopher.*

Vocabulary 44.

sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3. *I plant, sow.*

aerumna, ae, f. *trouble, affliction.*
fruges, um, f. pl. *fruits, a crop.*
inops, opis, *destitute.*
onus, eris, n. *a load, burden.*
pātienter, adv. *patiently.*
paupertas, atis, f. *poverty.*
prudentia, ae, f. *knowledge, prudence.*

Phrase:—

Auxilium ferre, *to render assistance.*

Vocabulary 45.

occido, cidi, cisum, 3. *I kill, slay.*
statuo, ti, utum, 3. *I fix, determine.*

atrox, ocis, *stern, sanguinary, cruel.*
facile, adv. *easily.*
famēs, is, f. *hunger.*
hilāris, e, *cheerful.*
ignāve, adv. *indolently.*
oraculum, i, n. *an oracle.*
silentium, ii, n. *silence.*
suprēmus, a, um, *last.*
unquam, adv. *at any time, ever.*

Vocabulary 46.

adjuvo, juvi, jūtum, *I assist.*
1.

nēquē, quīvi and *I am unable,*
nēquē, quīvitum, *nēquire, cannot.*
(like eo,) 4.

cāsus, ūs, m. *chance, accident.*
infectus, a, um, *undone.*
grāvis, e, *heavy, severe.*
noxius, a, um, *guilty.*
socius, ii, m. *a partner, ally, companion.*

Thēmistocles, m. *Themistocles, a famous Athenian.*

Vocabulary 47.

addisco, addidici, *I learn in addition.*
3.
bibō, bibi, bibitum, *I drink.*

3.
conservo, avi, *I preserve,*
atum, 1. *maintain.*
curro, cūcurri, cur- *I run.*
sum, 3.
interficiō, feci, *I put to death,*
fectum, 3. *kill.*

aliquis, quid, pron. *some one, something.*
Carthāgīniensis, e, *Carthaginian*

nāvalis, e, *naval.*
Nīlus, i, m. *the river Nile.*
nonnullus, a, um, *some.*
quōtidie, adv. *every day.*
tam, adv. *so, to such a degree.*

Phrase:—

In legem jurare, *to swear to a law.*

Vocabulary 48.

dēplōro, avi, atum, *I lament over,*
1. *deplore.*
irascor, irātus, 3, *I am angry.*
dep.
tāceo, ti, itum, 2. *I am silent.*
tribuo, ti, utum, 3. *I give, assign.*

Arīōvistus, i, m. *Arriovistus, a German king.*

fortē, *adv.*
infāmia, *ae, f.*
mīnīmē, *adv.*
nec, nēquē, *conj.*
stultitīa, *ae, f.*

by chance.
infamy.
in the least de-
gree.
neither, nor.
folly.

Vocabulary 49.

cunctus, *a, um,*
dissimilis, *e,*
ferox, ōcis,
ignōrātio, ōnis, *f.*
inferior, ius (*comp.*)
mālum, *i, n.*
perfectus, *a, um,*
Phidias, *ae, m.*

all, all together.
unlike.
fierce, spirited.
ignorance.
lower, inferior.
an evil.
finished, perfect.
Phidias, a fa-
mous Athe-
nian sculptor.

praestābilis, *e,*
proximus, *a, um,*
scientia, *ae, f.*
sēd, *conj.*
similis, *e,*
simulacrum, *i, n.*
vilis, *e,*

excellent.
nearest, next.
knowledge.
but.
like.
an image, statue.
cheap, common.

Vocabulary 50.

cognosco, nōvi, nī-
tum, *3.*
comprēhendo, di,
sum, *3.*
conficio, fēci, fec-
tum, *3.*
conscendo, di,
sum, *3.*
contendo, di, sum
and tum, *3.*
convoco, āvi, ātum, *1.*

I learn, ascer-
tain.
I seize.
I finish, accom-
plish.
I mount, go on
board (ship).
I strain, hasten.
I call together.

effloresco, flōrui, *3.*
expōno, pōsi, pō-
situm, *3.*
intumesco, tūmui,
3.

to blossom forth.
I put forth,
disembark
(troops).
I swell.

lābor, lapsus, *3,*
v. dep.
orior, ortus, ōriri,
4, v. dep. : see
p. 122.
perlēgo, lēgi, lec-
tum, *3.*

I glide, pass
away, fall.
I rise.
I read through.

perrumpo, rūpi,
ruptum, *3.*
praemitto, misi,
missum, *3.*
rēcito, āvi, ātum, *1.*
rēcūpero, āvi, ātum, *1.*
regno, āvi, ātum, *1.*
sentio, si, sum, *4.*
subsequor, sēcūtus, *3, v. dep.*
suscipio, cēpi, cep-
tum, *3.*
vexo, āvi, ātum, *1.*

aetas, ātis, *f.*
Arbēla, *ae, f.*
Cassivelaunus, *i, m.*
delectus, ūs, *m.*
hiberna, ōrum, *n.*
infirmus, *a, um,*
Pisistrātus, *i, m.*
sēnātus, ūs, *m.*
stātīm, *adv.*

age, time of life.
Arbela, a town
in Assyria.
Cassivelaunus, a
British chief.
a levy.
winter-quarters.
pl.
infirm, feeble.
Pisistratus, a
despot of
Athens.
the senate.
immediately.

Phrases:—

Delectum habere, *to hold a levy.*
Maxima itinēra, *forced marches.*
Navem (naves) conscendere, *to embark.*

Vocabulary 51.

extrūo, struxi,
structum, *3.*
obsidēo, sēdi, ses-
sum, *2.*
pōno, pōsi, pōsi-
tum, *3.*

I heap up.
I blockade, lay
siege to.
I place.

Āthēnae, ārum, *f.*
bestiola, *ae, f.*
campus, *i, m.*
dōminātus, ūs, *m.*
hōra, *ae, f.*

Athens.
a small animal,
insect.
a plain.
rule, sovereignty
an hour.

Hanno, ōnis, m.	Hanno, a Carthaginian.
Mārathon, ōnis, m.	Marathon, a plain near Athens.
nātus, a, um, part. and adj.	born, aged.
passus, ūs, m.	a pace (about five feet).
Plāto, ōnis, m.	Plato, a famous Greek philosopher.
Sāguntīni, ōrum, m.	Saguntines, the people of Saguntum, in Spain.

Phrases:—

Castra ponere,	to pitch a camp.
Murum, aggerem ducere,	to carry a wall or mound along, i.e. construct.

Vocabulary 52.

cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.	I yield, retire.
confēro, tūli, col-lātum, 3. v. irr.	I bring together, betake.
oppōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3.	I set against, oppose.
pervēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.	I arrive at.
pēto, ivi and īi, itum, 3.	I seek.
revertō, ti, sum, 3. v. dep.	I turn back, return.

Alcibiādes, is, m.	Alcibiades, a celebrated Athenian.
Aeschines, is, m.	Aeschines, an orator.
Cūrius, ī, m.	Curius, a Roman general.
Canusium, ii, n.	Canusium, a town in Apulia.
Capua, ae, f.	Capua, a city of Campania.
Crēta, ae, f.	Crete, an island of Greece.
exilium, ii, n.	banishment, exile.

ibi, adv. (fr. is, id), there.	
Lacedaemon, ōnis, f.	Lacedaemon or Sparta.
Leonidas, ae, m.	Leonidas, a king of Sparta.
Lūcēria, ae, f.	Luceria, a town in Apulia.
Lūcius, ii (L.), m.	Lucius, a Roman fore-name.
mandātum, i, n.	a charge, commission.
perpētūus, a, um,	continual.
Rhōdus, i, f.	Rhodes.
rūs, rūris, n.	the country.
Sparta, ae, f.	Sparta.

Phrase:—

Exilium agere, to live in exile.

Vocabulary 53.

constitūto, ūi, ūtum, 3.	I settle, determine.
consūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3.	I consume, waste away.
expello, pūli, pulsum, 3.	I drive out.
hiemo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I winter.
jācēo, ūi, itum, 2.	I lie.
Apollōnia, ae, f.	Apollonia, a town in Epirus.
Aristides, is, m.	Aristides, a noble Athenian.
Arpinum, i, n.	Arpinum, a town in Latium.
Bābylōn, ōnis, f.	Babylon, a city of Assyria.
Cannae, ārum, f. pl.	Cannae, a village in Apulia.
Cōnōn, ōnis, m.	Conon, an Athenian general.
Cūmae, ārum, f. pl.	Cumae, a city in Campania.
Cyprus, i, f.	Cyprus, an island off Cilicia.
Delphi, ōrum, m. pl.	Delphi, a city in Greece.
Dionysius, ii, m.	Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse.

Dyrrāchium, ii, n.	<i>Dyrrachium, a town in Epirus.</i>
Fabrīcius, ii, m.	<i>Fabrizius, a noble Roman.</i>
Hōrātius, ii, m.	<i>Horace, a Roman poet.</i>
Lesbus, i, f.	<i>Lesbos, an island off Asia Minor.</i>
Mārīus, ii, m.	<i>Marius, a Roman general.</i>
qualis, e, pron. adj.	<i>of what sort, as.</i>
Syrācūsae, ārum, f. pl.	<i>Syracuse.</i>
tālis, e, pron. adj.	<i>of that sort, such.</i>
Tīmōthēus, i, m.	<i>Timotheus, a famous Greek.</i>
Vētūsia, ae, f.	<i>Venusia, a town in Italy.</i>

Phrase:—

Morbo consūmi,	<i>to be carried off by illness.</i>
----------------	--------------------------------------

Vocabulary 54.

advēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.	<i>I arrive.</i>
animadverto, ti, sum, 3.	<i>I observe.</i>
confugio, fugi, 3.	<i>I flee to.</i>
constat, stitit, 1. v. impers.	<i>it is evident, it is agreed, it is certain.</i>
continēo, ūi, tentum, 2.	<i>I hold together.</i>
nēgo, āvi, ātum, 1.	<i>I deny.</i>
pārio, pēperi, partum, 3.	<i>I bring forth.</i>
prōdo, dīdi, dītum, 3.	<i>I hand down, betray.</i>
pūto, āvi, ātum, 1.	<i>I think.</i>
trādo, dīdi, dītum, 3.	<i>I hand down, deliver.</i>
vīdeo, vīdi, visum, 2.	<i>I see.</i>

caecus, a, um,	<i>blind.</i>
causā (abl.),	<i>for the sake of.</i>
credibilis, e,	<i>credible.</i>
Dēlōs, i, f.	<i>Delos, an island of Greece.</i>

Dīāna, ae, f.	<i>Diana, a goddess.</i>
flōrens, entis,	<i>flourishing.</i>
Hōmērus, i, m.	<i>Homer.</i>
imprudentia, ae, f.	<i>ignorance, imprudence.</i>
Lātōna, ae, f.	<i>Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana.</i>
manifestus, a, um,	<i>evident, manifest.</i>
nisi, conj.	<i>unless, except.</i>
quondam, adv.	<i> sometime, formerly.</i>
stella, ae, f.	<i>a star.</i>
Thāles, ētis, m.	<i>Thales, the philosopher.</i>
Trōjānus, a, um,	<i>Trojan, of Troy.</i>
vērisimilis, e,	<i>likely, probable.</i>

Vocabulary 55.

consentio, sensi, sensum, 4.	<i>I agree.</i>
credo, dīdi, dītum, 3.	<i>I believe.</i>
diripio, rīpui, reptum, 3.	<i>I plunder, pil-lage.</i>
intelligo, lexi, lectum, 3.	<i>I understand.</i>
respondēo, di, sum, 2.	<i>I answer.</i>
bēnēvolus, a, um,	<i>well-wishing, benevolent.</i>
bōnum, i, n.	<i>a good, a blessing.</i>
divinus, a, um,	<i>of the gods, divine.</i>
ēlōquens, tis,	<i>eloquent. [fire.</i>
ignēus, a, um,	<i>fiery, made of</i>
Lūcrētius, ii, m.	<i>Lucretius, a Roman poet.</i>
mālēvolus, a, um,	<i>ill-wishing, malevolent.</i>
mendax, ācis,	<i>lying, false. Used as a subst., a liar.</i>
primārius, a, um,	<i>first-rate, emi-</i>
stultus, a, um,	<i>foolish. [nent.</i>
sūperus, a, um,	<i>upper.</i>
(see p. 25)	
turpītudo, inis, f.	<i>disgrace.</i>

Vocabulary 56.

abjēlo, jēci, jec-	<i>I cast away.</i>
tum, 3.	
antēpōno, pōsui, <i>I prefer.</i>	
pōsitum, 3.	
conjiēio, jēci, jec-	<i>I fling (together).</i>
tum, 3.	
ēvēnio, vēni, ven-	<i>I happen.</i>
tum, 4.	
nūmēro, āvi, ātum, <i>I count.</i>	
1.	
quaero, quaesīvi, <i>I seek, enquire.</i>	
sītum, 3.	
rōgo, āvi, ātum, 1. <i>I ask.</i>	
spēcūlor, ātus, 1. <i>I spy out.</i>	
viso, vīsi, visum, 3. <i>I go to see, visit.</i>	
Blaesus, i, m. <i>Blaesus, a Roman name.</i>	
Chaerēphon, on-	<i>Chaerephon, a</i>
tis, m. <i>disciple of So-</i>	<i>crates.</i>
Croesus, i, m. <i>Croesus, a king</i>	<i>of Lydia.</i>
cur, adv. <i>why? to what</i>	<i>end?</i>
fēlicītēr, adv. <i>luckily.</i>	
incertus, a, um, <i>uncertain.</i>	
infāmis, e, <i>infamous.</i>	
injustus, a, um, <i>unjust.</i>	
Laeca, ae, m. <i>Laeca, a Roman.</i>	
mortūus, a, um, <i>dead.</i>	
nōvus, a, um, <i>new.</i>	
philōsōphus, i, m. <i>a philosopher.</i>	
planē, adv. <i>altogether.</i>	
quaestio, ōnis, f. <i>a question.</i>	
quantus, a, um, <i>how great.</i>	
quārē, adv. <i>why, on what</i>	<i>account.</i>
quōt, indec. adj. <i>how many.</i>	
saepēnūmēro, adv. <i>oftentimes.</i>	
subdificilis, e, <i>somewhat diffi-</i>	<i>cult.</i>
tēlum, i, n. <i>a dart, weapon,</i>	<i>missile.</i>
ubi, adv. <i>where.</i>	
Xenōphon, ontis, <i>Xenophon, an</i>	<i>m. Athenian.</i>

Vocabulary 57.

accīdo, īdi, —, 3. <i>to happen.</i>	
cerno, crēvi, crē-	<i>I see, discern.</i>
tum, 3.	

PR. L. I.

cohortor, ātus, 1. <i>I encourage.</i>	
*confido, fīsus	<i>I trust.</i>
sum, 3.	
dēterreo, ūi, ītum, <i>I frighten, de-</i>	<i>ter.</i>
2.	
*diffīdo, fīsus sum, <i>I distrust.</i>	
3.	
dimitto, misi, mis-	<i>I let go, dis-</i>
sum, 3. <i>miss.</i>	
ēnarro, āvi, ātum, 1. <i>I relate.</i>	
ēnītor, nīsus and <i>I strive hard.</i>	
nīsus, 3.	
exclāmo, āvi, ātum, <i>I cry out.</i>	
1.	
intrōdo, īvi & īi, <i>I enter.</i>	
ītum, 4.	
nītor, nīsus & nīsus, <i>I strive.</i>	
3.	
*obsto, stīti, stī-	<i>I oppose, pre-</i>
tum, 1. <i>vent.</i>	
opprīno, pressi, <i>I press upon,</i>	<i>overwhelm,</i>
pressum, 3. <i>crush.</i>	
*persuādēo, suāsi, <i>I persuade.</i>	
suāsūm, 2.	
praevenio, vēni, <i>I anticipate.</i>	
ventum, 4.	
prēmo, pressi, <i>I press.</i>	
pressum, 3.	
prōhibēo, ūi, ītum, <i>I keep off, pro-</i>	<i>hibit.</i>
2.	
rēcūso, āvi, ātum, 1. <i>I object, refuse.</i>	
spēro, āvi, ātum, 1. <i>I hope.</i>	
sto, stēti, stātum, 1. <i>I stand.</i>	
*suādeo, suāsi, <i>I advise.</i>	
suāsūm, 2.	
tēneo, ūi, tentum, 2. <i>I hold, retain.</i>	
transdūco, duxi, <i>I lead across.</i>	
ductum, 3.	
ventīto, āvi, ātum, <i>I come fre-</i>	<i>quently.</i>
1.	

* With Dative.

Bibūlus, i, m. <i>Bibulus, a Roman.</i>	
fōrum, i, n. <i>market-place,</i>	<i>forum.</i>
impērītus, a, um, <i>unskilful.</i>	
impransus, a, um, <i>unbreakjasted.</i>	
infīrmītas, ātis, f. <i>weakness.</i>	
latro, ōnis, m. <i>a robber.</i>	
lūdus, i, m. <i>play, game,</i>	<i>school.</i>

N

inagnōpērē, <i>adv.</i>	greatly, earnestly.
mīrus, <i>a, um,</i>	wonderful.
mōdus, <i>i, m.</i>	a measure, manner.
moenīa, <i>i, um, n. pl.</i>	fortifications.
Nervī, <i>ōrum, m. pl.</i>	the Nervii, a Gallic tribe.
praealtus, <i>a, um,</i>	very high.
Satrius, <i>ii, m.</i>	Satrius, a Roman.
signum, <i>i, n.</i>	a sign, signal.
Trēbōnius, <i>ii, m.</i>	Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Phrases :—

Sēquitur (with *acc.* and *inf.* or *ut* and *subj.*), it follows. Fācērē nōn possum quī, I cannot but. Per me (te) stētīt (quōdāminus), it was owing to me or you (that something did not happen). Minimum ābēst quīn sim, very little is wanting that I should be; I am very near being.

Vocabulary 58.

āquor, ātus, 1.	I fetch water.
bello, āvi, ātum, 1.	I wage war.
consūlo, sūlūi, sultum, 3.	I consult.
convēno, vēni, ventum, 4.	I assemble.
gusto, āvi, ātum, 1.	I taste.
pābūlor, ātus, 1.	I forage.
postūlo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I demand.
progrēdior, gressus, 3.	I advance.
Aedūi, <i>ōrum, m. pl.</i>	the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.
Āgēsīlāus, <i>i, m.</i>	Agesilaus, a king of Sparta.
Divitiācus, <i>i, m.</i>	Divitiacus, a Gaul.
Fābīus, <i>ii, m.</i>	Fabius, a Roman name.
Lācēdaemōnī, <i>ōrum, m. pl.</i>	the Lacedaemonians.
longius, <i>adv.</i>	farther, too far. (<i>comp.</i>)
lūdi, <i>ōrum, m. pl.</i>	games.

Maxīmus, <i>i, m.</i>	Maximus, (the greatest,) a surname of Fabius.
nēfās, <i>n. indec.</i>	wickedness, impiety, impious.
ōpūs, <i>n. indec.</i>	need, necessity.
publicus, <i>a, um,</i>	public.
Vēientes, <i>um, m. pl.</i>	the people of Veii, near Rome.
quisnam, quānam, etc., like quia,	who, what?

Phrases :—

Nēfās est, it is or would be an impiety.
Ōpūs est, there is need of (with *abl.*).

Vocabulary 59.

āctio, <i>ti, ūtum, 3.</i>	I sharpen.
ālo, <i>ti, ūtum</i> and <i>altum, 3.</i>	I nourish.
ardēo, arsi, arsum, 2.	I burn, am on fire.
cōgīto, āvi, ātum, 1.	I think, meditate.
collōquor, cūtus, 3.	I converse.
compāro, āvi, ātum, 1.	I get together.
ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, 3.	I eat.
vēnor, ātus, 1.	I hunt.
bēātē, <i>adv.</i>	happily.
grātīa, <i>ae, f.</i>	favour.
grātīa, <i>abl.</i>	for the sake of.
haud, <i>adv.</i>	not.
libērē, <i>adv.</i>	freely.
mārinus, <i>a, um,</i>	of the sea.
ōpēra, <i>ae, f.</i>	pains, labour.
plūs, ūris, <i>adj. n.</i>	more.
plūres, <i>-a.</i>	
stūdīōsus, <i>a, um,</i>	zealous, eager after.

Phrases :—

Ōpēram dāre, to give one's whole energies to anything; to devote oneself to it. Intō bibendum, &c., whilst drinking, &c.

Vocabulary 60.

ādhyācō, tū, itum, *I employ.*

2.

obseruo, āvi, ātum, *I observe, re-*
spect.

1.

prōvidēo, vīdi, *I foresee, pro-*
vīsum, 2. vide.

ardūus, a, um, *lofty, steep,*
difficult.

Phrase:—

Agere aetatem, *to spend one's life.*

Vocabulary 61.

ingrēdiōr, gressus, *I enter.*

3.

interclūdo, si, sum, *I shut off, inter-*
cept.

3.

obtempēro, āvi, *I obey, comply*
ātum, 1. with.

commēātus, ūs, m. *provisions, sup-*
plies.

commilito, ōlis, m. *a fellow-soldier,*
comrade.

istūc, adv. (*from to-that-place*
isto) (*where you are*).

jūdiūm, ti, n.

judgment.

pārātus, a, um,

prepared, ready

quisque, quaeque,

every one.

quodque & quid-

que, pron.

quō, adv.

whither.

Phrase:—

Fiēri de aliquo, *to become of one; as*
quid factum est de illo, *what has become of*
that man?

Vocabulary 62.

concedō, cessi, ces- *I yield, retire.*
sum, 3.

incendo, di, sum, *I burn.*

3.

percipio, cēpi, *I perceive.*
ceptum, 3.

affectus, a, um,

made, disposed.

Brūtus, i, m.

Brutus, a Ro-
man.

Cassius, ii, m.

Cassius, a Ro-
man.

Campānia, ae, f.

Campania, a
part of Italy

occūpātus, a, um,

engaged, busy.

quāsi, adv.

as if.

Phrases:—

Consilium inire, *to enter on, form, a*
design. in spem venīre, *to conceive a hope*

INDEX I. TO VOCABULARIES.

LATIN WORDS.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	= ablative.	interj.	= Interjection.
acc.	= accusative.	inter.	= Interrogative.
adj.	= adjective.	irr.	= Irregular.
adv.	= adverb.	m.	= masculine.
c. or com.	= common gender.	n.	= neuter.
comp.	= comparative.	p.	= page.
conj.	= conjunction.	part.	= participle.
dat.	= dative.	pl.	= plural.
dep.	= deponent.	prep.	= preposition.
f.	= feminine.	pron.	= pronoun, pronominal.
freq.	= frequentative.	rel.	= relative.
gen.	= genitive.	sing.	= singular.
incep.	= inceptive.	sup.	= superlative.
indec.	= indeclinable.	v.	= verb.
indef.	= indefinite.		

1, 2, 3, 4, indicate the conjugation of a verb.

A.	AERUMNA.	ALIUS.
A		
āb (ā, abe), <i>prep.</i> with <i>abl.</i> , <i>from, by.</i>	ādēo , ūi, Itum, 4, <i>I go to.</i>	Aeschines , is, m., <i>Aeschines, an orator.</i>
ābēo , ūi, Itum, Ire, 4, <i>I go away.</i>	ādhibēo , ūi, Itum, 2, <i>I employ.</i>	aestas , ātis, f., <i>summer.</i>
abiciō , jēci, jectum, 3, <i>I cast away.</i>	ādhortor , ātus, 1, v. <i>dep.</i> , <i>I urge, exhort.</i>	aetas , ātis, f., <i>age, time of life.</i>
absum , abfui, abesse, <i>I am absent.</i>	ādipiscor , eptus, 3, v. <i>dep.</i> , <i>I acquire, attain to, obtain.</i>	aeternus , a, um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>eternal.</i>
absūmo , sumpsī, sump- tum, 3, <i>I consume, cut off.</i>	adiūvo , jūvi, jūtum, 1, <i>I assist.</i>	affectus , a, um, <i>part.</i> , <i>made, disposed.</i>
absurdus , a, um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>absurd.</i>	admiror , ātus, 1, v. <i>dep.</i> , <i>I wonder at, I admire.</i>	affero , attulī, allātum, afferre, 3, v. <i>irr.</i> , <i>I bring to.</i>
abūtor , ūsus, 3, v. <i>dep.</i> , <i>I abuse.</i>	adsum , adfui, adesce, <i>I am present, stand by, side with.</i>	affligo , flixi, flictum, 3, <i>I cast down, prostrate.</i>
accēdo , cessi, cessum, 3, <i>I approach.</i>	ādulatio , ōnis, f., <i>flattery.</i>	Africanus , i, m., <i>Africanus, a surname of the Scipios.</i>
accido , idi (no supine), 3, <i>n. v.</i> , <i>I happen.</i>	advēnio , vēni, ventum, 4, <i>I arrive.</i>	ager , gri, m., <i>a field, land; in pl., territories.</i>
accipio , cēpi, ceptum, 3, <i>I receive.</i>	advento , āvi, ātum, 1, v. <i>freq.</i> , <i>I am on the point of arriving.</i>	Agēsilaus , i, m., <i>Agésilauus, a king of Sparta.</i>
acer , cris, cre, <i>adj.</i> , <i>keen, sharp.</i>	adventus , ūs, m., <i>arrival.</i>	agger , ēris, m., <i>a mound.</i>
acies , ei, f., <i>a line of battle.</i>	adversus or um , <i>prep.</i> with <i>acc.</i> , <i>towards, against.</i>	āgo , ēgi, actum, 3, <i>I lead, act, do. Agere aetatem, to spend one's life.</i>
acūo , ūi, ātum, 3, <i>I sharpen.</i>	aedificium , ii, n., <i>a building.</i>	agricola , ae, m., <i>a husband-āla</i> , ae, f., <i>a wing. [man.]</i>
acus , ūs, f., <i>a needle.</i>	aedifico , āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I build.</i>	albus , a, um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>white.</i>
acūtus , a, um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>sharp.</i>	Aedui , ōrum, m. <i>pl.</i> , <i>the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.</i>	Alcibiādes , is, m., <i>Alcibiades, a celebrated Athenian.</i>
ad , <i>prep.</i> with <i>acc.</i> , <i>to, at, near.</i>	ager , gra, grum, <i>adj.</i> , <i>sick.</i>	Alexander , dri, m., <i>Alexander, a famous king of Macedonia. [times.]</i>
addictus , a, um, <i>part.</i> , <i>devoted.</i>	Aegyptus , i, f., <i>Igypt.</i>	aliquando , <i>adv.</i> , <i>some-</i>
addisco , addidici (no supine), 3, <i>I learn in addition to.</i>	aequus , a, um, <i>adj.</i> , <i>level, even, just.</i>	aliquis , quid, <i>pron.</i> , <i>some one, something.</i>
	aër , āeris, m., <i>the air.</i>	alius , a, ud, <i>irr. adj.</i> ,
	aerumna , ae, f., <i>trouble, affliction.</i>	

ALLOQUOR.

one of any number, one, another.

allōquor, lōcūtus, 3, v. dep., I speak to.

ālō, ālī, ālitum and altum, 3, I nourish.

Alpēs, ium, m. pl., the Alps.

alter, tēra, tērum, adj. (gen. sing. ius, dat. I), one of two, the other, second.

altus, a, um, adj., high, deep.

amābilis, e, adj., lovely.

ambūlo, āvi, ātum, 1, I walk.

amicitia, ae, f., friendship.

amicus, i, m., a friend.

amor, ōris, m., love.

angustus, a, um, adj., narrow.

animadverto, ti, sum, 3, I observe.

animāl, ālis, n., an animal.

animus, i, m., mind, the soul, courage, temper, the feelings.

annus, i, m., a year.

antē, prep. with acc., before.

antēpōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3, I prefer.

Antiochus, i, m., Antiochus, a name of several kings of Syria.

antiquus, a, um, adj., ancient.

Āpollo, Inis, m., Apollo, a Roman divinity.

Āpollōnia, ae, f., Apollonia, a town in Epirus.

apūd, prep. with acc., at, near.

āqua, ae, f., water.

āquila, ae, f., an eagle.

āquor, ātus, 1, v. dep., I fetch water.

Arbēla, ae, f., Arbela, a town in Assyria.

arbor, ōris, f., a tree.

arcus, ūs, m., a bow.

arcus coelestis, m., a rainbow.

ardēo, arsi, arsum, 2, I burn, am on fire.

ardūus, a, um, adj., lofty, steep, difficult.

argentum, i, n., silver.

Ariovistus, i, m., Ariovistus, a German king.

Āristides, is, m., Aristides, an Athenian.

BENEVOLUS.

arma, ōrum, n. pl., arms.

Arpinum, i, n., Arpinum, a town in Latium.

ars, artis, f., art, handicraft.

arx, arcis, f., a citadel.

Āsia, ae, f., Asia.

asper, ēra, ērum, adj., rough, rugged.

aspornor, ātus, 1, v. dep., I reject, despise.

āter, ātra, ātrum, adj., black.

Āthēnae, ārum, f. pl., Athens.

Āthēniensis, e, adj., Athenian.

atque, ac, conj., and.

atrox, ōcis, adj., stern, sanguinary, cruel.

attentē, adv., attentively.

attentus, a, um, adj., attentive.

auctoritas, ātis, f., authority.

auctumnus, i, m., autumn.

audacter, adv., boldly, daringly.

audax, ācis, adj., bold.

audēo, ausus sum, audēre, 2, I dare, venture.

auditus, ūs, m., a hearing.

aufero, abstūli, ablātum, auferre, 3, v. irr., I carry away.

Augustus, i, m., Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.

aurēus, a, um, adj., golden.

auris, is, f., an ear.

aurum, i, n., gold.

autem, conj., but (placed after the first word of the clause to which it belongs).

auxilium, ii, n., help, aid, assistance.

āvis, is, f., bird.

āvus, i, m., a grandfather.

B

Bābylōn, ōnis, f., Babylon, a city of Assyria.

bālaena, ae, f., a whale.

beatē, adv., happily.

beatus, a, um, adj., happy.

bellicosus, a, um, adj., warlike.

bello, āvi, ātum, 1, I wage war.

bellūa, ae, f., a great beast.

bellum, i, n., war.

bēnē, adv., well.

bēnevōlus, a, um, adj., well-wishing, benevolent.

CASTRA.

bēignē, adv., kindly.

bēignus, a, um, adj., kind.

bestia, ae, f., a beast.

bestiola, ae, f., a small animal, insect.

bibo, bibi, bibitum, 3, I drink.

Bibulus, i, m., Bibulus, a Roman.

Blaesus, i, m., Blaesus, a Roman.

blandior, itus, with dat., 4, v. dep., I flatter, win upon.

bōna, ōrum, n. pl., goods.

bōnum, i, n., a good.

bōnus, a, um, adj., good.

brēvis, e, adj., short.

Britannia, ae, f., Britain.

Brutus, i, m., Brutus, a Roman.

C

cādo, cēcidi, cāsum, 3, I fall.

caecus, a, um, adj., blind.

caedes, is, f., slaughter.

Caesar, āris, m., Caesar, a famous Roman.

Cālus (C.), Caius, a Roman praenomen.

calcār, āris, n., a spur.

cālor, ōris, m., heat.

Camillus, i, m., Camillus, a Roman general.

Campānia, ae, f., Campania, a part of Italy.

campus, i, m., a plain.

cānis, is, c., a dog.

Cannae, ārum, f. pl., Cannae, a village in Apulia.

canto, āvi, ātum, 1, I sing.

cantus, ūs, m., a song.

Cānūsium, ii, n., Canusium, a town in Apulia.

Cāpua, ae, f., Capua, a city of Campania.

capūt, itis, n., a head.

carmen, Inis, n., a song.

cāro, carnis, f., flesh.

Carthāginiensis, e, adj., Carthaginian.

Carthāgo, Inis, f., Carthage, a city of Africa.

cārus, a, um, adj., dear.

cāsūs, i, m., cheese.

Cassius, ii, m., Cassius, a Roman.

Cassivelaunus, i, m., Cassivelaunus, a British chief.

castigo, āvi, ātum, 1, I chastise.

castra, ōrum, n. pl., a camp.

CASUS.	CONSTAT.	CUPIDITAS.
cāsus , ūs, m., chance, accident.	cōgīto , āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I think, meditate.</i>	constitūto , ūi, ūtum, 3, <i>I settle, determine, resolve.</i>
Cātilīna , ae, m., Catiline, a conspirator.	cognitio , ōnis, f., knowledge.	consuetudo , ūnis, f., habit.
Cāto , ōnis, m., Cato, a noble Roman.	cognosco , nōvi, nītum, 3, <i>I learn, ascertain.</i>	consul , ūlis, m., a consul.
causa , ae, f., a cause. In abl., on account of.	cōhors , tis, f., a cohort.	consulātus , ūs, m., office of consul, consulate.
cautus , a, um, adj. and part., cautious, secured.	cōhortor , ātus, 1, v. dep., <i>I encourage.</i>	consūlo , lūi, lūtum, 3, <i>I consult.</i>
cēdo , cessi, cessum, 3, <i>I yield, retire.</i>	collōquor , cūtus, 3, v. dep., <i>I converse.</i>	consumo , sumpsi, sump- tum, 3, <i>I consume, waste away.</i>
cēler , ēris, ēre, adj., swift.	cōlo , cōlūi, cultum, 3, <i>I cultivate, cherish, dwell.</i>	contemno , tempai, temp- tum, 3, <i>I despise.</i>
celsus , a, um, adj., lofty, tall.	cōlōnia , ae, f., a colony.	contemplor , ātus, 1, v. dep., <i>I observe carefully, con- template.</i>
centūria , ae, f., a century.	cōlor , ōris, m., colour.	contendo , di, sum and tum, 3, <i>I strain, hasten.</i>
cērāsum , i, n., a cherry.	cōlumba , ae, f., a dove.	contentus , a, um, adj., contented.
cērāsus , i, f., the cherry-tree.	cōmes , itis, com., a companion.	continēo , ūi, tentum, 2, <i>I hold together.</i>
cerno , crēvi, crētum, 3, <i>I see, discern.</i>	cōmītor , ātus, 1, v. dep., <i>I accompany.</i>	contrā , prep. with acc., against, contrary to.
certus , a, um, adj., certain.	commēātus , ūs, m., provisions, supplies.	contrāho , traxi, tractum, 3, <i>I draw together.</i>
cervus , i, m., a stag.	commilito , ōnis, m., fellow-soldier, comrade.	convēnio , vēni, ventum, 4, <i>I assemble.</i>
cēteri (caet.), cēterae, cē- tērā, adj. pl., the rest.	committo , misi, missum, 3, <i>I send together, join (fight) battle.</i>	convōco , āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I call together.</i>
Chaerēphōn , ontis, m., Chaerophon, a disciple of Socrates.	compāro , āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I get together.</i>	cōpia , ae, f., plenty.
Cicēro , ōnis, m., Cicero, a celebrated Roman orator.	comprēhendo , di, sum, 3, <i>I seize.</i>	cōpiāe , ārum, f. pl., forces.
Cimbri , ōrum, m. pl., the Cimbrians, a formidable Celtic tribe.	concedo , cessi, cessum, 3, <i>I yield, retire.</i>	cōr , cordis, n., the heart.
cingo , cinxī, cinctum, 3, <i>I surround.</i>	confēro , tūli, collātum, conferre, 3, v. irr., <i>I bring together, betake.</i>	cōram , prep. with abl., in the presence of.
circā , circum, prep. with acc., around.	conficō , feci, factum, 3, <i>I finish, accomplish.</i>	Cōrīnthus , i, f., Corinth.
circitēr , prep. with acc., about.	confido , isus sum, 3, with dat., <i>I trust.</i> See p. 85.	Cornēlia , ae, f., Cornelia, a Roman matron.
cis , citrā, prep. with acc., on this side of.	confitēor , fessus, 2, v. dep., <i>I confess.</i>	cornu , ūs, n., a horn.
civilis , e, adj., belonging to a citizen, civil.	confūgio , fūgi, 3, <i>I flee to.</i>	cōrona , ae, f., a crown.
civis , is, com., a citizen.	conicio , jeci, jectum, 3, <i>I fling (together).</i>	corpus , ōris, n., a body.
civitas , tātis, f., the state, citizenship.	coniuratio , ōnis, f., a conspiracy.	corrigo , rexi, rectum, 3, <i>I correct.</i>
clades , is, f., slaughter, disaster.	Cōnōn , ōnis, m., Conon, an Athenian general.	crēātor , ōris, m., a creator.
clām , prep. with acc. or abl., secretly, without the knowledge of.	cōnor , ātus, 1, v. dep., <i>I attempt.</i>	credibilis , e, adj., credible.
clāmor , ōris, m., a shout.	conscendo , di, sum, 3, <i>I mount, go on board (ship).</i>	crēdo , didi, ditum, 3, <i>I believe.</i>
clārus , a, um, adj., clear, renowned.	conscientia , ae, f., conscience.	crēo , āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I create, make.</i>
classis , is, f., a fleet.	consentio , nsi, nsum, 4, <i>I agree.</i>	Crēta , ae, f., Crete, an island of Greece.
coelestis , e, adj., belonging to the heavens.	conservo , āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I preserve, maintain.</i>	Croesus , i, m., Croesus, a king of Lydia.
coelum , i, n., heaven.	consilium , i, n., a plan, counsel.	cruciātus , ūs, m., torture.
coeno , āvi and ātus sum, 1, <i>I sup, dine.</i> See p. 85.	constat , stitit, 1, impers. v., <i>it is evident, it is agreed, it is certain.</i>	crūdēlis , e, adj., cruel.
cōeo , ivi or ii, itum, 4, <i>I join together.</i>		crūs , crūris, n., a leg.
cōercēo , ūi, itum, 2, <i>I restrain, curb.</i>		culpa , ae, f., blame, fault.
		cum , prep. with abl., with.
		Cūmae , ārum, f. pl., Cūmae, a city in Campania.
		cunctus , a, um, adj., all, all together.
		cupīditas , ātis, f., desire, passion.

CURIO.

cūpio, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*, 3, *I desire*.
cūr, *adv.*, *why*.
cūro, *avi*, *atum*, 1, *I take care, pains*.
curro, *cūcurri*, *cursum*, 3, *I run*.
currens, *us*, *m.*, *a chariot*.
cursus, *us*, *m.*, *running*.
custōdio, *ivi*, *itum*, 4, *I guard, keep guard*.
custos, *custodis*, *c.*, *a guardian*.
Cyprus, *i. f.*, *Cyprus*, *an island off Cilicia*.

D

Darius, *i. m.*, *Darius*, *a king of Persia*.
dē, *prep.* with *abl.*, *down from, from, concerning*.
dēa, *ae. f.*, *a goddess*.
dēbēo, *ūi*, *itum*, 2, *I owe, ought*.
dēbilis, *e. adj.*, *feeble*.
dēcēt, *dēcūit*, *dēcēre*, 2, *impers. v.*, *it is seemly, becoming*.
dēcipio, *cepi*, *ceptum*, 3, *I receive*.
dēcus, *ōris*, *n.*, *an ornament*.
dēdēcēt, *dēcūit*, *dēcēre*, 2, *v. impers.*, *it is unseemly, unbecoming*.
dēfendo, *di*, *sum*, 3, *I defend*.
dēflāgro, *avi*, *atum*, 1, *to be burnt down*.
dēiicio, *jēci*, *jectum*, 3, *I cast down*.
dēlecto, *avi*, *atum*, 1, *I delight, amuse*.
dēlectus, *us*, *m.*, *a levy*.
dēleo, *ēvi*, *etum*, 2, *I destroy*.
Dēlōs, *i. f.*, *Delos*, *an island of Greece*.
Delphi, *ōrum*, *m. pl.*, *Delphi*, *a city in Greece*.
Dēmōsthēnēs, *is*, *m.*, *Demosthenes*, *the famous Athenian orator*.
dēmum, *adv.*, *indeed*.
dēplōro, *avi*, *atum*, 1, *I lament over, deplore*. [*don.*]
dēsēro, *ūi*, *tum*, 3, *I abandon*.
dēsūm, *fūi*, *esse*, with *dat.*, *I am wanting*.
dētēgo, *texi*, *tectum*, 3, *I discover*.
dētērrō, *ūi*, *itum*, 2, *I frighten, deter*.

DUM.

Dēus, *i. m.*, *God*.
Dīana, *ae. f.*, *Diana*, *a goddess*.
dīco, *dixi*, *dictum*, 3, *I say, speak*.
dies, *ei*, *m.* and *f.*, *day*.
difficilis, *e. adj.*, *difficult*.
diffido, *fisus sum*, 3, with *dat.*, *I distrust*. See p. 85.
diligens, *ntis*, *adj.*, *diligent, careful*.
diligentē, *adv.*, *carefully*.
diligentia, *ae. f.*, *diligence*.
diligentissimē, *adv.*, *most carefully*.
dīligo, *lexi*, *lectum*, 3, *I esteem, love*.
dīmīco, *avi*, *atum*, 1, *I fight (a battle)*.
dīmīto, *misi*, *missum*, 3, *I let go, dismiss*.
Dionysius, *ii*, *m.*, *Dionysius*, *a tyrant of Syracuse*.
dīripio, *ripui*, *reptum*, 3, *I plunder, pillage*.
discipulus, *i. m.*, *a pupil, scholar*.
disco, *dīdici*, 3, *I learn*.
displicēo, *ūi*, *itum* (with *dat.*), 2, *I displease*.
dissimilis, *e. adj.*, *unlike*. See p. 25.
dīū, *adv.*, *a long time*.
dives, *itis*, *adj.*, *rich*.
divido, *visi*, *visum*, 3, *I divide, separate*.
divinus, *a. um, adj.*, *belonging to the Gods, divine*.
Divitiācus, *i. m.*, *Divitiacus*, *a Gaul*.
divitiāe, *arum*, *f. pl.*, *riches*.
dō, *dēdi*, *dātum*, *dāre*, 1, *I give*.
dōcēo, *ūi*, *ctum*, 2, *I teach*.
doctus, *a. um, adj.*, *learned*.
dolor, *ōris*, *m.*, *pain, grief*.
domicilium, *ii*, *n.*, *an abode*.
dōmīna, *ae. f.*, *a mistress*.
dōminātus, *us*, *m.*, *rule, sovereignty*.
dōminus, *i. m.*, *a lord, master*.
dōnum, *i. n.*, *a gift*.
dormio, *ivi*, *itum*, 4, *I sleep*.
dūbīto, *avi*, *atum*, 1, *I doubt*.
dūbūs, *a. um, adj.*, *doubtful*.
dūco, *duxi*, *ductum*, 3, *I lead*.
dulcis, *e. adj.*, *sweet*.
dum, *adv.*, *while*.

EXCEDO.

dūrus, *a. um, adj.*, *hard*.
dux, *dūcis*, *com.*, *a leader, general*.
Dyrrāchium, *ii*, *n.*, *Dyrrachium*, *a town in Epirus*.

E

ē, *ex*, *prep.* with *abl.*, *out of, from*.
ēdo, *ēdi*, *esum*, 3, *I eat*.
ēduco, *avi*, *atum*, 1, *I educate*.
ēduco, *duxi*, *ductum*, 3, *I lead out*.
ēffero, *extūli*, *elātum*, *efferre*, 3, *v. irr.*, *I carry out*.
effloresco, *florui*, 3, *I blossom forth*.
ēgrēgius, *a. um, adj.*, *excellent, eminent*.
ēiicio, *jēci*, *jectum*, 3, *I cast forth*.
ēlēgans, *antis*, *adj.*, *elegant, exquisite*.
ēlēphantus, *i. m.*, *an elephant*.
ēloquens, *entis*, *adj.*, *eloquent*.
ēmendo, *avi*, *atum*, 1, *I improve*.
ēmigro, *avi*, *atum*, 1, *I depart from*.
ēmo, *ēmi*, *emptum*, 3, *I buy*.
ēnarro, *avi*, *atum*, 1, *I relate*.
ēnītor, *nīsus* or *nixus*, 3, *v. dep.*, *I strive hard*.
Epāminondas, *ae. m.*, *Epaminondas*, *a famous Theban*.
ēques, *itis*, *m.*, *a horse-soldier*.
ēquitātus, *us*, *m.*, *cavalry*.
ēquus, *i. m.*, *a horse*.
ergā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *towards (only of the feelings)*.
erro, *avi*, *atum*, 1, *I err, make a mistake*.
ērudio, *ivi* or *ii*, *itum*, 4, *I train up, educate*.
ēruditus, *a. um, adj.*, *trained, educated*.
ētiam, *conj.*, *also, even*.
Euripides, *is*, *m.*, *Euripides*, *an Athenian tragic poet*.
Europā, *ae. f.*, *Europe*.
ēvenio, *vēni*, *ventum*, 4, *I happen*.
ex or **ē**, *prep.* with *abl.*, *out of, from*.
excēdo, *cessi*, *cessum*, 3, *I go out, depart from*.

EXCLAMO.

exclāmo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I cry out.*
excōlo, cōlūi, cultum, 3, *I cultivate carefully.*
exemplum, i, n., *an example.* [go out.
exēo, īvi or īi, itum, 4, *I exercise.*
exercēo, ūi, itum, 2, *I exercise.*
exercitus, ūs, m., *an army.*
exhilaro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I cheer.*
exiliū, ii, n., *banishment, exile.*
expello, pūli, pulsum, 3, *I drive out.*
expērior, pertus, 4, v. dep., *I try, experience.*
expōno, pōsui, pōstūm, 3, *I put forth, disembark (troops).*
expugno, āvi, ātum, 1, *I take by storm.*
extrūo, struxi, structum, 3, *I heap up.*
extra, prep. with acc., *outside of.*

F

Fābius, ii, m., *a Roman name.*
Fabricius, ii, m., *Fabircius, a noble Roman.*
fabūla, ae, f., *a fable, story.*
facies, ei, f., *countenance.*
facile, adv., *easily.*
facilis, e, adj., *easy.*
facinus, ōris, n., *a bold act, daring deed, crime.*
facio, feci, factum, facerē, 3, *I make.*
fāmēs, is, f., *hunger.*
fāteor, fassus, 2, v. dep., *I confess.*
felicitēr, adv., *luckily.*
felix, icis, adj., *fortunate, successful.*
fēmina, ae, f., *a woman.*
ferē, adv., *almost, commonly.*
fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre, 3, v. irreg., *I bear, carry, endure.*
ferox, ōcis, adj., *fierce, spirited.*
ferum, i, n., *iron.*
ferrus, ūs, f., *a fig. fig-tree.*
fidēlis, e, adj., *faithful.*
fides, ei, f., *faith, fidelity.*
fido, fīsus sum, fidere, 3, v. n. (usu. with dat.), *I trust.* See p. 85.
fidus, a, um, adj., *faithful.*
filia, ae, f., *a daughter.*
filius, ii, m., *a son.*

GAUDEO.

finġo, finxi, fīctum, 3, *I frame, feign, invent.*
finio, īvi, itum, 4, *I limit, put an end to.*
finis, is, m., *end, limit* (in pl. territories).
fio, factus sum, fīerī, 3, v. irr., *I become, am made.*
fīrmo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I strengthen, make strong.*
fīrmus, a, um, adj., *strong.*
fīeo, fīēvi, fīētum, 2, *I weep.*
fio, āvi, ātum, 1, *I blow.*
fīrens, ntis, adj., *flourishing.*
fiorēo, ūi, 2, *I bloom, flourish.*
flos, ōris, m., *a flower.*
flūmen, inis, n., *a current, river.*
flūo, fluxi, fluxum, 3, *I flow.*
flūvius, ii, m., *a river.*
fōdio, fōdi, fossum, fōdēre, 3, *I dig.*
fons, ntis, m., *a fountain.*
fortē, adv., *by chance.*
fortis, e, adj., *strong, brave.*
fortissimē, adv., *very bravely.*
fortitēr, adv., *bravely.*
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune.*
fōrum, i, n., *market-place, forum.*
fossa, ae, f., *a ditch.*
frāter, tris, m., *a brother.*
fraus, fraudis, f., *dishonesty.*
frīgus, ōris, n., *cold.*
frons, ntis, f., *the forehead, brow.*
fructus, ūs, m., *fruit.*
frūges, um, f. pl., *fruits, a crop.*
fruo, frūitus and fructus, 3, v. dep., *I enjoy.*
fūgio, fūgi, fūgitum, fūgēre, 3, *I flee, escape.*
fūgo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I put to flight.*
fūlgēo, fulsi, fulsum, 2, *I shine.*
fulgūr, ūris, n., *lightning.*
fungor, functus, 3, v. dep., *I discharge.*
fūnus, ōris, n., *a funeral.*
fūrōr, ōris, m., *madness.*

G

Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul.*
gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre, 2, v. n., *I rejoice.* See p. 85.

HIEMS.

gaudium, ii, n., *joy.*
gēner, ēri, m., *a son-in-law.*
genu, ūs, n., *a knee.*
genus, ēris, n., *a race, class.*
Germani, ōrum, m. pl., *the Germans.*
gēro, gessi, gestum, 3, *I carry on, wage (war).*
glādius, ii, m., *a sword.*
glōria, ae, f., *glory.*
gnāviter, adv., *actively, vigorously.*
Gracchus, i, m., *Gracchus, a noble Roman.*
grācilis, e, adj., *thin.*
Græcia, ae, f., *Greece.*
Græcus, a, um, adj., *Grecian, Greek.*
grāmen, inis, n., *grass.*
grandinat, 1, v. impers., *it hails.*
grātīa, abl. sing., *for the sake of.*
grātus, a, um, adj., *pleasing.*
grāvis, e, adj., *heavy, severe.*
grāviter, adv., *heavily, severely, grievously.*
gusto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I taste.*

H

hābēo, ūi, itum, 2, *I have.*
hābito, āvi, ātum, 1, *I dwell.*
Hannibal, ālis, m., *Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general.*
Hanno, ōnis, m., *Hanno, a Carthaginian.*
Hasdrūbal, ālis, m., *Hasdrubal, the brother of Hannibal.*
hasta, ae, f., *a spear.*
haud, adv., *not.*
Hellespontus, i, m., *the Hellespont (now the Dardanelles).*
Helvētia, ae, f., *the country of the Helvetii (in Switzerland).*
Helvētius, a, um, adj., *Helvetian.*
hērī, adv., *yesterday.*
hiberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.*
hibernus, a, um, adj., *of winter, wintry.*
hiems, hiēmis, f., *winter.*

HIEMO.

hiēmo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I winter.*
hilaris, e, adj., *cheerful.*
Hōmērus, i, m., *Homer, a Greek poet.*
hōmo, inis, com., *a man, woman.*
hōnor, ōris, m., *an honour.*
hōra, ae, f., *an hour.*
Hōrātius, ii, m., *Horatius, a Roman poet.*
hortor, ātus, 1, v. dep., *I urge, exhort, encourage.*
hortus, i, m., *a garden.*
hostia, ae, f., *a victim.*
hostis, is, com., *an enemy, public enemy.*
hūmanus, a, um, adj., *human.*
hūmilis, e, adj., *low.* See p. 25.

I

ibi, adv., *there.*
ignāvē, adv., *indolently.*
ignāvia, ae, f., *cowardice.*
igneus, a, um, adj., *fiery, made of fire.*
ignorātiō, ōnis, f., *ignorance.*
imāgo, inis, f., *a likeness, portrait, image.*
imitor, ātus, 1, v. dep., *I imitate.*
immōlo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I sacrifice.*
immortalis, e, adj., *immortal.*
immortalitas, ātis, f., *immortality.*
impērator, ōris, m., *a military commander, a general.*
impēritus, a, um, adj., *unskilful.*
impērium, ii, n., *empire.*
impēro, āvi, ātum, 1, with dat., *I command.*
impētus, ūs, m., *an attack, onset.*
impransus, a, um, adj., *unbreakfasted.*
imprōbus, a, um, adj., *dishonest, wicked.*
imprudentia, ae, f., *ignorance, imprudence.*
in, prep. with acc., *into; with abl., in.*
incendium, ii, n., *a fire, conflagration.*
incendo, di, sum, 3, *I set fire to, burn.*

INTER.

incertus, a, um, adj., *uncertain.*
incipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *I begin.*
incōla, ae, com., *an inhabitant.*
incūso, āvi, ātum, 1, *I accuse, find fault with.*
Indi, ōrum, m. pl., *Indians, people of India.*
indoctus, a, um, adj., *unlearned.*
indulgēo, dulsi, dultum, 2, with dat., *I indulge.*
industrius, a, um, adj., *industrious, busy.*
inēo, ii, itum, 4, *I go into, enter.*
iners, tis, adj., *helpless, sluggish.*
infāmia, ae, f., *infamy.*
infāmis, e, adj., *infamous.*
infectus, a, um, adj., *undone.*
inferior, ius, comp. of inferior, adj., *lower, inferior.*
infero, intūli, illātum, inferre, 3, v. irr., *I carry into.*
infinitus, a, um, adj., *unbounded, infinite.*
infirmitas, ātis, f., *weakness.*
infirmus, a, um, adj., *weak, infirm, feeble.* [low.]
infrā, prep. with acc., *below.*
infringo, frēgi, fractum, 3, *I break, impair.*
ingens, entis, adj., *immense.*
ingrēdiōr, gressus sum, 3, v. dep., *I enter.*
inimicitia, ae, f., *enmity.*
inimicus, a, um, adj., *unfriendly.*
initium, ii, n., *a beginning.*
injūstē, adv., *unjustly.*
injustus, a, um, adj., *unjust.*
innūmerus, a, um, adj., *innumerable.*
inops, ōpis, adj., *destitute.*
institūo, ūi, ātum, 3, *I appoint, institute.*
instrūmentum, i, n., *an instrument.*
instrūo, xi, ctum, 3, *I arrange, draw up in order.*
insūla, ae, f., *an island.*
insum, fūi, esse, v. irr., with dat., *I am in or upon.*
intelligo, lexi, lectum, 3, *I understand.*
intēr, prep. with acc., *between, among.*

JUXTA.

interolūdo, clūsi, clūsum 3, *I shut off, intercept.*
intērēo, ii, itum, 4, *I perish.*
interficiō, feci, factum, 3, *I put to death, kill.*
intērītus, ūs, m., *destruction.*
intersum, fūi, esse, v. irreg., with dat., *I am among.*
intrā, prep. with acc., *inside of, within.*
intro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I enter.*
intrōēo, ii, itum, 4, *I go into, enter.*
intūēor, itus sum, 2, v. dep., *I look upon, into.*
intūmesco, ūi, 3, v. incep., *I swell.*
invidia, ae, f., *envy, ill-will.*
ira, ae, f., *anger.*
irascor, irātus, 3, v. dep., *I am angry.*
istūc, adv., *to-that-place, thither (where you are).*
itā, adv., *in that way, thus.*
Itālia, ae, f., *Italy.*
īter, itinēris, n., *a journey.*

J

jācēo, ūi, itum, 2, *I lie.*
jācio, jēci, jactum, 3, *I throw.*
jam, adv., *now, already.*
jūbēo, jussī, jussum, 2, *I order, bid.*
jūcundus, a, um, adj., *pleasant.*
jūcundē, adv., *delightfully, pleasantly.*
jūdex, icis, com., *a judge.*
jūdicium, ii, n., *judgment.*
jūdicō, āvi, ātum, 1, *I judge.*
jungo, junxi, junctum, 3, *I join.*
Jūno, ōnis, f., *Juno, a goddess.*
jūro, āvi or ātus sum, 1, *I swear.* See p. 85.
jūs, jūris, n., *right, law.*
jusjurandum, jūrisjūrandi, n., *an oath.*
justē, adv., *justly.*
justus, a, um, adj., *just.*
jūvenis, is, com., *a young man or woman.*
jūventūs, ātis, f., *youth.*
juxtā, prep. with acc., *near, hard by, next to.*

LABIENUS.

L

Labiēnus, i, m., *Labienus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
lābor, ōris, m., *labour*, hardship.
lābor, lapsus, 3, v. dep., *I glide, pass away, fall*.
lac, lactis, n., *milk*.
Lācedaemon, ōnis, f., *Lacedaemon* or *Sparta*.
Lācedaemoni, ōrum, m., *the Lacedaemonians*.
lācio, lācere, 3, *I draw, entice* (rare). See p. 120.
lācus, ūs, m., *a lake*.
Laeca, ae, m., *Laeca*, a Roman.
laetitia, ae, f., *joy*.
laetus, a, um, adj., *joyful*.
lāpis, idis, m., *a stone*.
lāpidēus, a, um, adj., *of stone*.
lātē, adv., *widely, wide*.
Latinus, a, um, adj., *Latin*.
Lātōna, ae, f., *Latona*, mother of *Apollo* and *Diana*.
latro, ōnis, m., *a robber*.
lātus, a, um, adj., *wide, broad*.
laudo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I praise*.
laus, laudis, f., *praise*.
lēgātus, i, m., *ambassador, lieutenant*.
lēgiō, ōnis, f., *a legion*.
lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3, *I gather, read*.
lēo, ōnis, m., *a lion*.
Lēōnidas, ae, m., *Leonidas*, a king of *Sparta*.
lēpus, ōris, m., *a hare*.
Lesbus, i, f., *Lesbos*, an island off *Asia Minor*.
lēvis, e, adj., *light*.
lex, lēgis, f., *a law*.
liber, bri, m., *a book*.
liber, ēra, ōrum, adj., *free*.
libēre, adv., *freely*.
libērī, ōrum, m. pl., *children*.
libēro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I free, deliver*.
libertas, ātis, f., *freedom, liberty*.
libet, libēt and libētum est, libēre, 2, v. impers., with dat., *it pleases*.
Libya, ae, f., *Africa*.
licet, licēt and licitum est, licēre, 2, v. impers., with dat., *it is lawful, allowed*.

MAGNUS.

lictor, ōris, m., *a lictor*.
lingua, ae, f., *tongue, language*.
liquet, liquēre, 2, v. impers., with dat., *it is clear, evident*.
lītēra, ae, f., *a letter of the alphabet*.
lītērae, ārum, f. pl., *letters, learning, also an epistle, letter*.
lītus, ōris, n., *a shore*.
Līvius, ii, m., *Livy*, a Roman historian.
lōcus, i, m., *a place* (in pl. loci, single places; loca, places connected with one another, regions).
longē, adv., *far, far off*.
longinquitas, ātis, f., *length, distance*.
longinquus, a, um, adj., *long, distant*.
longius, adv., *comp. of longē, farther, too far*.
longus, a, um, adj., *long*.
lōquor, lōcūtus, 3, v. dep., *I speak*.
Lūcēria, ae, f., *Luceria*, a town in *Apulia*.
lūcescit, (illuxit), lūcescere, 3, v. impers., *it becomes light*.
Lūciūs, ii, m., *Lucius*, a Roman fore-name.
Lūcrētius, ii, m., *Lucretius*, a Roman poet.
lūdi, ōrum, m. pl., *games*.
lūdo, lūsi, lāsūm, 3, *I play*.
lūdus, i, m., *play, game, school*.
lūna, ae, f., *the moon*.
lusciniā, ae, f., *a nightingale*.
lux, lūcis, f., *light*.
Lycurgus, i, m., *Lycurgus*, the Spartan legislator.

M

Mācēdo, ōnis, m., *a Macedonian*.
māgis, adv. (sup. maxīmē), *rather, in a higher degree*.
māgister, tri, m., *a master, teacher*.
māgistrātus, ūs, m., *a magistrate*.
māgnificus, a, um, adj., *magnificent*. [earnestly].
māgnōpērē, adv., *greatly*.
magnus, a, um, adj., *great*.

MEUS.

mājōres, um, m. pl., *ancestors*.
mālē, adv., *comp. pānus, sup. pessimē, badly, ill*.
mālēvōlus, a, um, adj., *ill-wishing, malevolent*.
mālo, mālui, malle, irr. v., *I am more willing, I prefer, have rather*.
mālum, i, m., *an apple*.
mālum, i, n., *an evil*.
mālnus, i, f., *an apple-tree*.
mālnus, a, um, adj., *bad, wicked, evil*.
mandātum, i, n., *a charge, commission*.
mānēo, mansi, mansum, 2, *I remain*.
mānifestus, a, um, adj., *evident, manifest*.
mānipūlus, i, m., *a maniple*.
mānus, ūs, f., *a hand*.
Mārāthon, ōnis, f., *Marathon*, a plain near *Athens*.
mārē, is, n., *the sea*.
mārgārīta, ae, f., *a pearl*.
mārinus, a, um, adj., *of the sea*.
Mārius, ii, m., *Marius*, a Roman general.
marmor, ōris, n., *marble*.
māter, tris, f., *a mother*.
Maximus, i, m., *Maximus*, (the greatest,) a surname of *Fabius*.
mēdītor, ātus, 1, v. dep., *I meditate on, study*.
membrāna, ae, f., *thin skin, membrane*.
mēmōr, ōris, adj., *mindful*.
mēmōrābilis, e, adj., *to be remembered, memorable*.
mēmōria, ae, f., *memory*.
Mēnāpiī, ōrum, m. pl., *Menapii*, a Gallic tribe.
mendax, ācis, adj. and subs., *lying, false, a liar*.
mens, mentis, f., *mind*.
mensis, is, m., *a month*.
mentior, itus, 4, v. dep., *I lie, tell a lie*.
mērēo, ūi, itum, 2, *I deserve*. Also mērēor, itus, 2, v. dep.
metallum, i, n., *a metal*.
mētior, mensus, 4, v. dep., *I measure*.
mētūo, ūi, ātum, 3, *I fear*.
mētus, ūs, m., *fear*.
mēus, a, um,* *poss. pron. my, mine*.

* Voc. sing. mi.

MIGRO.

migro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I migrate, depart.*
miles, militis, m., a soldier.
Minerva, ae, f., *Minerva.*
minimē, adv., *in the least degree.*
minister, tri, m., a servant.
miror, ātus, 1, v. dep., *I wonder at, admire.*
mirus, a, um, adj., *wonderful.*
miser, ēra, ērum, adj., *wretched.*
misereor, rtus or itus, 2, v. dep., *I pity, have pity on.*
misereor, ūit & misēritum est, misērēre, v. impers., *it excites pity.*
mitis, e, adj., *mild.*
mitto, misi, missum, 3, *I send.*
mōdus, i, m., a measure, manner.
moenia, ium, n. pl., *fortifications.*
molestus, a, um, adj., *troublesome.*
molliō, ivi, itum, 4, *I soften, assuage.*
molliis, e, adj., *soft, mellow.*
monēō, ūi, itum, 2, *I advise, warn.*
mons, tis, m., a mountain.
monumentum, i, n., a monument.
morbus, i, m., a disease.
mōrīor, mōrtūus, 3, v. dep., *I die (fut. part. mōritūrus, about to die).*
mors, tis, f., *death.*
mortalis, e, adj., *mortal.*
mōrtūus, a, um, adj., *dead.*
mōs, mōris, m., *manner, custom.*
mōvēō, mōvi, mōtum, 2, *I move, disturb, trouble.*
mox, adv., *soon, shortly.*
müller, ēris, f., a woman, wife.
multitūdō, inis, f., a multitude.
multus, a, um, adj., *much, many.*
mundus, i, m., *the world.*
mūnimentum, i, n., a fortification. [*if*]
mūniō, ivi, itum, 4, *I furnish.*
mūnus, ēris, n., a gift, duty, function.
mūrus, i, m., a wall.
mūto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I change.*

NONNUMQUAM.

N

narro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I relate.*
nascor, nātus, 3, v. dep., *I am born.*
nātūra, ae, f., *nature.*
nātus, a, um, part. and adj., *born, aged.*
nauta, ae, m., a sailor.
nāvālis, e, adj., *naval.*
nāvis, is, f., a ship.
ne, conj., *not, lest, that not.* See pp. 47, 97.
neq̄, neq̄ue, conj., *neither, nor.*
necessārius, a, um, adj., *necessary, needful.*
nēfas, indecl. n., *wickedness, impiety.*
nēgō, āvi, ātum, 1, *I deny.*
nēgōtium, ii, n., *business.*
nemo, inis, com., *nobody.*
Neptūnus, i, m., *Neptune, the god of the sea.*
nēquam, indecl. adj., *comp. nēquior, sup. nēquissimus, worthless.*
nēquēō, ivi or ii, itum, ire, 4, *I am unable, cannot.*
Nēro, ōnis, m., *Nero, a Roman emperor.*
Nervii, ōrum, m. pl., *the Nervii, a Gallic tribe.*
nesciō, ivi or ii, itum, 4, *I am ignorant of.*
neuter, tra, trum, adj. (gen. sing. ius, dat. i), *neither of two.*
nēve, conj., *and that not, and not, nor.*
nidus, i, m., a nest.
niger, gra, grum, adj., *black.*
nihil, indecl. n., *nothing.*
Nilus, i, m., *the Nile, a river in Egypt.*
nimis, adv., *too, too much.*
ningit, ninxit, ningere, 3, v. impers., *it snows.*
nisi, conj., *unless, except.*
nitor, nisus and nixus, 3, v. dep., *I strive.*
nix, nivis, f., *snow.*
nōbilis, e, adj., *distinguished, noble, celebrated.*
nōcēō, ūi, itum, 2, with dat., *I hurt, harm.*
nōlō, nōlūi, nolle, v. irreg., *I am unwilling, I do not wish.*
nōmen, inis, n., a name.
nōn, adv., *not.*
nonnullus, a, um, adj., *some.*
nonnumquam, adv., *sometimes.*

OMNIS.

noster, tra, trum, poss. pron., *our, ours.*
nōtus, a, um, adj., *known.*
nōvus, a, um, adj., *new.*
nox, noctis, f., *night.*
noxius, a, um, adj., *hurtful, injurious, guilty.*
nūbes, is, f., a cloud.
nullus, a, um, adj. (gen. sing. ius, dat. i), *none.*
nūmēro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I count.*
nūmērus, i, m., a number.
nunc, adv., *now.*
nunquam, adv., *never.*
nūtrio, ivi, itum, 4, *I nourish, nurture.*

O

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of.*
obediō, ivi, itum, 4, with dat., *I obey.*
obdō, ii, itum, 4, *I meet, esp. meet death, I die.*
obliviscor, litus, 3, v. dep., *I forget.*
obscurō, āvi, ātum, 1, *I darken, obscure.*
observo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I observe, respect.*
obses, idis, com., a hostage.
obsidēō, sēdi, sessum, 2, *I blockade, lay siege to.*
obsidiō, ōnis, f., a siege, blockade.
obsto, stitūi, stitum, 1, *I oppose, prevent.*
obsum, obfui or offui, obesse, v. irreg., with dat., *I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.*
obtempēro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I obey, comply with.*
occidens, tis, m., *the west, the setting sun.*
occido, idi, isum, 3, *I slay, kill.*
occūpātus, a, um, adj., *engaged, busy.*
occūpo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I seize upon.*
ocēānus, i, m., *the ocean.*
oculus, i, m., an eye.
odium, ii, n., *hatred.*
odor, ōris, m., a smell, scent.
offero, obtūli, oblātum, offerre, 3, v. irr., *I present.*
olim, adv., *formerly, once upon a time.*
omnis, e, adj., *all, every.*

ONUS.

onus, **eris**, *n.*, a load, burden.
opera, *ae, f.*, pains, labour.
opiram dare, to devote oneself.

oportet, *rit*, 2, *v. impers.*, it behoves, is necessary.

oppidum, *i, n.*, a town.
oppōno, *pōnī, pōsitum*, 3, *I set against, oppose.*

opurimo, *pressi, pressum*, 3, *I press upon, overwhelm.*

oppugno, *avi, atum*, 1, *I attack, assault.*

opto, *avi, atum*, 1, *I wish, desire.*

opulentus, *a, um, adj.*, wealthy.

opus, *eris*, *n.*, a work.

opus, *n.* and *adj.*, *indecl.*, with *abl.*, need, necessity; necessary.

ora, *ae, f.*, the coast.

oraculum, *i, n.*, an oracle.
oratio, *avis, f.*, an oration, speech.

orator, *eris*, *m.*, an orator.
ordior, *orsus*, 4, *v. dep.*, *I begin.*

oriōr, *ortus, oriī*, 4, *v. dep.*, *I rise.* See p. 122.

orno, *avi, atum*, 1, *I adorn.*

oro, *avi, atum*, 1, *I entreat.*

os, *eris*, *n.*, a mouth. [*pray.*]

os, *ossis*, *n.*, a bone.

P

pabūlor, *ātus*, 1, *v. dep.*, *I forage.*

pallium, *ī*, *n.*, a cloak.

pāratus, *a, um, adj.*, prepared, ready.

pārens, *entis*, *c.*, a parent.
pārēo, *ui, itum*, 2, with *dat.*, *I obey.*

pārō, *pēpērī*, and *partum*, 3, *I bring forth.* *Fut. part.*

pārītūrus.

pāro, *avi, atum*, 1, *I prepare, get, gain.*

pars, *tis, f.*, a part.

partior, *itus*, 4, *v. dep.*, *I share, divide.*

parvus, *a, um, adj.*, small, little.

pavus, *us*, *m.*, a pace (about 5 feet).

pāter, *tris*, *m.*, a father.

pātienter, *adv.*, patiently.

pātor, *pavus*, 3, *v. dep.*, *I endure, suffer.*

patria, *ae, f.*, a native land, country.

PLACET.

paucus, *a, um, adj.*, few.

pauper, *eris*, *adj.*, poor.

paupertas, *ātis, f.*, poverty.

pāvo, *ōnis*, *m.*, a peacock.

pax, *pācis, f.*, peace.

pēcūnia, *ae, f.*, money.

pēdes, *itis*, *m.*, a foot-soldier.

pēditātus, *ūs*, *m.*, infantry.

pellis, *is, f.*, a skin, hide (of an animal).

pēnēs, *prep.* with *acc.*, in the power of.

pēr, *prep.* with *acc.*, through.

percipio, *cēpi, ceptum*, 3, *I perceive.*

perdo, *didi, ditum*, 3, *I destroy.*

perō, *ī*, *itum*, 4, *I perish.*

perfectus, *a, um, adj.*, finished, perfect.

perferō, *tūli, lātum, ferre*, 3, *v. irr.*, *I bear through, endure.*

pēricūlum, *i, n.*, danger.

pēritus, *a, um, adj.*, skilful.

perlēgo, *lēgi, lectum*, 3, *I read through.*

permulti, *ae, a, adj.* (*pl.*), very many.

perniciōsus, *a, um, adj.*, destructive.

perpētūus, *a, um, adj.*, continual.

perrumpo, *rūpi, raptum*, 3, *I burst through.*

Persa, *ae, m.*, a Persian.

persuādēo, *āsi, āsum*, 2, with *dat.*, *I persuade.*

pervēnio, *vēni, ventum*, 4, *I arrive at.*

perversus, *a, um, adj.*, wilful, perverse.

pēto, *īvi and īi, itum*, 3, *I seek.*

Phaëthon, *ontis*, *m.*, Phaëthon, a son of Apollo.

Phidias, *ae, m.*, Phidias, a famous Athenian sculptor.

philosophus, *i, m.*, a philosopher.

pigēt, *pīgūt* and *pīgītum* est, *pīgēre*, 2, *v. impers.*, it vexes.

pingo, *pinxi, pictum*, 3, *I paint, embroider.*

pīrum, *i, n.*, a pear.

pīrus, *i, f.*, a pear-tree.

piscis, *is*, *m.*, a fish.

Pisistrātus, *i, m.*, Pisistratus, a despot of Athens.

placō, *ui, itum*, 2, with *dat.*, *I please.*

placet, *uit or itum est, ēre*, 2, *v. impers.*, it pleases.

PRAEO.

placidus, *a, um, adj.*, quiet.

plānē, *adv.*, altogether.

plānitēs, *ei, f.*, a plain.

planta, *ae, f.*, a sprout, plant.

Plātō, *ōnis*, *m.*, Plato, a famous Greek philosopher.

plēnus, *a, um, adj.* with *gen.*, full.

Plīnīus, *īi, m.*, Pliny, the name of two Roman authors.

plūit, *plūit* or *plāvīt*, *plāre*, 3, *v. impers.*, it rains.

plūs, *ūris*, *adj.* (*in pl. plūs, plūra*), more.

poena, *ae, f.*, punishment.

Poeni, *ōrum*, *m. pl.*, the Carthaginians.

poenitet, *nītūt, nītēre*, 2, *v. impers.*, it causes sorrow, repents.

pōēta, *ae, m.*, a poet.

pollicēor, *itus*, 2, *v. dep.*, *I promise.*

Pompēius, *ēīi, m.*, Pompey, the rival of Caesar.

pōnē, *prep.* with *acc.*, behind.

pōno, *pōsi, pōsitum*, 3, *I place.*

pons, *ntis*, *m.*, a bridge.

porta, *ae, f.*, a gate.

porto, *avi, atum*, 1, *I carry.*

portus, *ūs*, *m.*, a harbour.

possum, *pōtūi, posse*, *v. irreg.*, *I am able, can.* See p. 76.

post, *prep.* with *acc.*, after.

postūlo, *avi, atum*, 1, *I demand.*

pōtens, *entis*, *adj.*, powerful.

pōtentia, *ae, f.*, power, i.e. power from personal weight, influence.

pōtestas, *ātis*, *f.*, power, i.e. magisterial power.

pōtior, *itus*, 4, *v. dep.*, with *abl.*, *I take possession of, obtain.*

prae, *prep.* with *abl.*, before, in comparison with.

praealtus, *a, um, adj.*, very high.

praebeō, *ui, itum*, 2, *I furnish, afford, exhibit.*

praeceptor, *eris*, *m.*, a teacher.

praeceptum, *i, n.*, precept, instruction, lesson.

praeda, *ae, f.*, booty.

praeco, *īi, itum*, 4, *I go before.*

PRAEFERO.

praefero, tūli, lātum, 3, v. irreg., *I prefer*.
 praemitto, mīsi, missum, 3, *I send on before*.
 praemium, ii, n., a reward.
 praesens, entis, adj., present.
 praestābilis, e, adj., excellent.
 praestans, autis, adj., excellent.
 praesum, fūi, esse, v. irreg., with dat., *I am before, at the head of*.
 praeter, prep. with acc., beside.
 praeterēo, ii, itum, 4, v. irreg., *I pass by*.
 praetēritus, a, um, adj., past.
 praevēnio, vēni, ventum, 4, *I anticipate*.
 prēmō, pressi, pressum, 3, *I press*.
 primārius, a, um, adj., first-rate, eminent.
 primo, adv., at first.
 primum, adv., first, in the first place.
 pristinus, a, um, adj., former, olden.
 prius, adv., sooner, before.
 prō, prep. with abl., before, for, on behalf of.
 prōbē, adv., rightly, properly.
 prōbitas, ātis, f., honesty, integrity.
 prōbus, a, um, adj., good, upright.
 prōdo, didi, ditum, 3, *I hand down, betray*.
 proelium, ii, n., a battle.
 prōfero, tūli, lātum, ferre, 3, v. irreg., *I extend*.
 prōfisciscor, fectus, 3, v. dep., *I set out*. [deep.
 prōfundus, a, um, adj., deep.
 prōgredior, gressus, 3, v. dep., *I advance*.
 prōhibeo, hī, itum, 2, *I keep off, prohibit*.
 prōpē, prep. with acc., near.
 prōpē, adv., nearly.
 prōpinquus, a, um, adj., near.
 proptēr, prep. with acc., on account of.
 prōsum, fūi, prōdesse, v. irreg., *I am serviceable to, do good to*.
 prōvidēo, vīdi, vīsum, 2, *I foresee, provide*.

QUO.

proximus, a, um, sup. adj., nearest, next.
 prūdēns, ntis, adj., prudent, sagacious.
 prūdētia, ae, f., knowledge, prudence.
 prūnum, i, n., a plum.
 prūnus, i, f., a plum-tree.
 publicus, a, um, adj., public.
 pūdet, sūt or pūdītum est, ēre, 2, v. impers., it shames.
 pūella, ae, f., a girl.
 pūer, ēri, m., a boy.
 pugna, ae, f., a battle.
 pugno, āvi, ātum, 1, *I fight*.
 pulcher, cra, crum, adj., beautiful.
 Pūnicus, a, um, adj., Punic, Carthaginian.
 pūnio, īvi, itum, 4, *I punish*.
 pūto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I think*.
 Pythāgoras, ae, m., Pythagoras, a famous Greek philosopher.

Q

quaero, quaesivī, situm, 3, *I seek, enquire*.
 quaestio, ōnis, f., a question.
 quālis, e, pron. adj., of what sort, as.
 quam, adv. and conj., than, as.
 quantus, a, um, adj., how great.
 quārē, adv., why, on what account.
 quāsī, adv., as if.
 quātio, no perf., quassum, 3, *I shake*.
 quercus, ūs, f., an oak.
 quīā, conj., because.
 quidam, quacdam, quoddam and quiddam, pron. indef., a certain, certain one, somebody.
 quidē, adv., indeed.
 quīn, conj., that not (with subj.). See pp. 48, 97.
 quis, quae, quid, pron. interrog., who, which, what?
 quisnam, quāenam, quidnam, interrog. pron., who, which, what?
 quisquē, quaeque, quodque (and subst. quidque or quicquē, indef. pron., every one, whoever).
 quō, adv., whither.

RESPONDEO.

quō, conj. with subj., in order that. See p. 98.
 quōd, conj., because.
 quōminūs, conj. with subj., that not. See p. 98.
 quondam, adv., some time, formerly.
 quōquē, conj., also, even, too.
 quōt, indecl. adj., how many?
 quōtidīē, adv., every day.
 quum, adv. and conj., when.

R

rādix, icis, f., a root.
 rāpax, ācis, adj., rapacious.
 rāpidus, a, um, adj., rapid.
 rāpio, ūi, raptum, ēre, 3, *I seize*.
 rārō, adv., seldom, rarely.
 rārus, a, um, adj., rare.
 rātio, ōnis, f., reason.
 rēcito, āvi, ātum, 1, *I read aloud*.
 rēcorder, ātus, 1, v. dep., *I call to mind*.
 rēcērō, āvi, ātum, 1, *I refresh*.
 rectus, a, um, adj., straight, right.
 rēcūpēro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I recover, get back*.
 rēcūso, āvi, ātum, 1, *I object, refuse*.
 rēdāmo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I love in return*.
 rēdēo, ii, itum, 4, *I return*.
 rēfēro, rētūli or rettūli, rēlitum, rēferre, 3, v. irreg., *I bring back*.
 rēgina, ae, f., a queen.
 rēgno, āvi, ātum, 1, *I reign, am king*.
 regnum, i, n., a kingdom.
 rēgo, rēxi, rectum, 3, *I rule*.
 Rēgūlus, i, m., Regulus, a famous Roman.
 rēlinquo, liqui, lictum, 3, *I leave, quit*.
 rēmīscor, 3, *I remember*.
 rēnovo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I make new again, restore*.
 rēpērio, pēri, pertum, 4, *I find*.
 rēs, rēi, f., a thing.
 rēsisto, stiti, stitum, 3, with dat., *I resist*.
 respondēo, di, sum, 2, with dat., *I answer*.

RETR.

rēte, is, n., a net.
rēus, i, m., an accused man, defendant.

rēvorto, ti, sum, 3, I turn back, return.

rēvertor, versus, 3, v. dep., I turn back, return.

rex, regis, m., a king.

Rhēnus, i, m., the Rhine.

Rhōdānus, i, m., the Rhone.

Rhōdus, i, f., Rhodes, an island of Greece.

ripa, ae, f., a bank, shore.

rōgo, āvi, ātum, 1, I ask.

Rōma, ae, f., Rome (the city).

Rōmānus, m., a Roman.

Rōmānus, a, um, adj., Roman.

Rōmulus, i, m., Romulus.

rōsa, ae, f., a rose.

Roscius, ii, m., Roscius, a Roman.

rūpes, is, f., a rock.

rūs, rūris, n., the country.

S

sācer, cra, crum, adj., sacred.

saepō, adv., often.

saepēnūmero, adv., often-times.

saepiasimō, adv., very often.

sāgitta, ae, f., an arrow.

Saguntini, ōrum, m. pl., Saguntines, the people of Saguntum in Spain.

Sālāmis, inis, f., Salamis, an island near Athens.

Sallustius, ii, m., Sallust, a Roman historian.

salto, āvi, ātum, 1, I dance.

sālūs, ōtis, f., safety.

salvus, a, um, adj., safe.

sanguis, inis, m., blood.

sāpiens, ntis, adj. and subs., wise, wise-man.

sāpientia, ae, f., wisdom.

sāpio, i, vi or ii, 3, I savour of, taste, am wise.

sātis, adv., enough, sufficiently.

Satrius, ii, m., Satrius, a Roman.

scēlus, ōris, n., a crime.

scientia, ae, f., knowledge.

scio, i, vi, itum, 4, I know.

Scipio, ōnis, m., Scipio, a noble Roman.

SOLBO.

scribo, psi, ptum, 3, I write.
scriptor, ōris, m., a writer, author.

scūtum, i, n., a shield.

Scythae, ārum, m. pl., the Scythians.

secundum, prep. with acc., following, in accordance with.

sēd, conj., but.

sēdēo, sēdi, sessum, 2, I sit.

sēdes, is, f., a seat.

segnities, ōis, f., slothfulness, indolence.

sempēr, adv., always, ever.

sēnātus, ūs, m., the senate.

sēnectūs, ūtis, f., old age.

sensus, ūs, m., a sense.

sentio, si, sum, 4, I feel, perceive.

sēpēllo, i, vi or ii, pultum, 4, I bury.

sēquor, sēcūsus, 3, v. dep., I follow.

serenus, a, um, adj., clear.

sermo, ōnis, m., a discourse.

sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3, I plant, sow.

servitūs, ūtis, f., slavery.

servo, āvi, ātum, 1, I preserve, save.

servus, i, m., a slave.

sēverus, a, um, adj., severe.

sī, conj., if.

Sicilia, ae, f., Sicily.

sidus, ōris, n., a star, constellation.

signum, i, n., a sign, signal.

silentium, ii, n., silence.

silva, ae, f., a wood.

similis, e, adj., like. See pp. 24, 25.

simul, adv., at the same time.

simulāc, simul ac, adv., as soon as.

simulācrum, i, n., an image, statue.

simulatio, ōnis, f., a pretence.

sinē, prep. with abl., without.

sōcer, ōri, m., a father-in-law.

sōcius, ii, m., a partner, ally, companion.

Socrātes, is, m., Socrates, the sage of Athens.

sōl, sōlis, m., the sun.

sōlēo, itus sum, ēre, 2, v. n., I am accustomed. See p. 85.

SUBTER.

Sōlon, ōnis, m., Solon, the Athenian lawgiver.

sōlum, adv., only.

sōlus, a, um, adj. (gen. sing. ūis, dat. i), alone.

solvere, solvi, sōlūtum, 3, I loosen, pay.

somnus, i, m., sleep.

sōnitus, ūs, m., a sound, noise.

sōror, ōris, f., a sister.

sors, tis, f., a lot.

Sparta, ae, f., Sparta.

spēcio, obs., spexi, specēre, 3, I look.

specto, āvi, ātum, 1, I look at, look on, behold.

spēcūlor, ātus, 1, v. dep., I spy out.

spērātus, a, um, adj., hoped for.

spēro, āvi, ātum, 1, I hope.

spes, ōis, f., hope.

splendīdus, a, um, adj., splendid, bright.

splendor, ōris, m., brightness, brilliancy.

stātīm, adv., immediately.

statio, ōnis, f., a post, station.

stātuo, ūi, ūtum, 3, I fix, determine.

stella, ae, f., a star.

sto, stēti, stātum, 1, I stand.

strēnūs, adv., vigorously.

strēnūus, a, um, adj., vigorous.

stūdēo, ūi, 2, I am eager, zealous.

stūdīosus, a, um, adj., zealous, eager after.

stūdium, ii, n., zeal, a pursuit, study.

stulticia, ae, f., folly.

stultus, a, um, adj., foolish.

suādēo, suāsi, suāsūm, 2, with dat., I advise.

suāvis, e, adj., sweet, delightful.

sūb, prep. with abl. or acc., beneath, under, up to; of time, about.

subdifficilis, e, adj., somewhat difficult.

subēo, ii, itum, 4, I go up to, under.

sūbitus, a, um, adj., sudden.

subsequor, cātus, 3, v. dep., I follow up.

subsum, no perf., v. irreg., I am under, amongst.

subter, prep. with acc. or abl., under, beneath.

SUMMUS.

summus, a, um, *superl. adj.*, highest, utmost, greatest.
super, prep. with acc. or abl., over.
superō, āvi, ātum, 1, I overcome.
supersum, fūi, esse, v. irreg., I remain over, survive.
superus, a, um, *adj. (comp.)* superior, *superl.* supremus or summus, upper.
suprā, prep. with acc., above.
supremus, a, um, *adj.*, *superl.* of superus, highest; relat. to time, last.
suscipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3, I undertake.
suis, a, um, *reflec. pron. poss.*, his, hers, its, their own.

T

tābernāculum, i, n., a tent.
tācēō, ūi, itum, 2, I am silent.
taedēt, dūit or pertaesum est, 2, v. *impers.*, it disgusts, wearies.
tālis, e, *pron. adj.*, of that sort, such.
tam, adv., so, to such a degree.
tantum, adv., only.
taurus, i, m., a bull.
tēgo, texi, tectum, 3, I cover.
tēlum, i, n., a dart, weapon, missile.
tēmēritas, ātis, f., recklessness, rashness.
tempestas, ātis, f., a tempest.
templum, i, n., a temple.
tempus, ōris, n., time.
tēnēō, ūi, tentum, 2, I hold, retain.
tēner, ēra, ērum, *adj.*, tender, soft.
tēnuis, e, *adj.*, thin, delicate, slender.
tēnis, prep. with abl., reaching to, as far as.
terra, ae, f., the earth, land.
terrēō, ūi, itum, 2, I terrify, frighten, alarm.
terror, ōris, m., terror, alarm.
Thāles, ētis, m., Thales, the philosopher.
Thēmistōcles, is, m., Themistocles, a famous Athenian.

ULLUS.

Tiberius, ii, m., Tiberius (a common Roman fore-name).
tigris, is or idis, com., a tiger, tigress.
timēō, ūi, 2, I fear.
timidus, a, um, *adj.*, timid.
timor, ōris, m., fear.
Timothēus, ēi, m., Timotheus, a famous Greek.
Titus (T.), i, m., Titus (a common Roman fore-name).
tōnat, ūit, āre, 1, v. *impers.*, it thunders.
tōtus, a, um, *adj.*, whole, all.
trabs, trābis, f., a beam.
tracto, āvi, ātum, 1, I handle, deal with.
trādo, didi, dītum, 3, I hand down, deliver.
trāho, traxi, tractum, 3, I draw, drag.
tranquillus, a, um, *adj.*, calm.
trans, prep. with acc., across.
transādūco, duxi, ductum, 3, I lead across.
transēō, ūi, itum, 4, v. irreg., I cross over.
Trasimēnus, i, m., the lake Trasimene in Italy.
Trebōnius, ii, m., Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
tribūo, ūi, ātum, 3, I give, assign.
tristis, e, *adj.*, sad.
triumpho, āvi, ātum, 1, I triumph. See p. 132.
Troja, ae, f., Troy, a city in Asia Minor.
Trojānus, a, um, *adj.*, Trojan, of Troy.
tūēor, tūtus, 2, v. *dep.*, I gase, guard, protect.
tum, adv. and conj., then.
turpis, e, *adj.*, base, disgraceful.
turpitudo, inis, f., disgrace.
turris, is, f., a tower.
tūtus, a, um, *adj.*, safe.
tūus, a, um, *poss. pron.*, thy, thine.
tyrannus, i, m., a despot, tyrant.

U

ūbi, adv., where.
ullus, a, um, *adj. (gen. sing. iūs, dat. sing. i).*, any.

VESPERASCIT.

ultrā, prep. with acc., on the farther side of, beyond.
unquam, adv., at any time, ever.
ūnus, a, um, *adj. (gen. sing. iūs, dat. sing. i)*, one, alone.
urbis, urbis, f., a city.
ūt, adv. and conj., as; that, in order that. See p. 97.
ūter, rā, rum, *adj. (gen. sing. iūs, dat. sing. i)*, which of two.
ūtīlis, e, *adj.*, useful.
ūtor, ūsus, 3, v. *dep.*, with abl., I use.
uxor, ōris, f., a wife.

V

vālēō, ūi, itum, 2, I am strong, in good health.
vālētudo, inis, f., health.
vālidus, a, um, *adj.*, strong.
vallis, is, f., a valley.
vārius, a, um, *adj.*, different, various.
vasto, āvi, ātum, 1, I lay waste.
vectigāl, ālis, n., a tax.
vēhēmenter, adv., vehemently, warmly.
vēho, vexi, vectum, 4, I carry (in pass., I ride).
Vēientes, um, m. pl., the Veientes, the people of Veii, near Rome.
vēlox, ōdis, *adj.*, swift.
vēnērōr, ātus, 1, v. *dep.*, I reverence, worship.
vēniō, vēni, ventum, 4, I come.
vēnor, ātus, 1, v. *dep.*, I hunt.
ventito, āvi, 1, v. *freq.*, I come frequently.
ventus, i, m., the wind.
Vēnusia, ae, f., Venusia, a town in Italy.
vēr, vēris, n., the spring.
vērēor, itus, 2, v. *dep.*, I fear, reverence.
vērīsīmilis, e, *adj.*, likely, probable.
versus, ūs, m., a line, verse.
versus, prep. with acc., towards (only of place or direction).
vērūs, a, um, *adj.*, true.
vescor, 3, v. *dep.*, with abl., I feed, live on.
vesperascit, āvit, ascēre, v. *impers.*, evening approaches.

VESTA.

Vesta, ae, *f.*, *Vesta*, the goddess of fire and the hearth.
vester, tra, trum, *poss. pron.*, your, yours.
vestimentum, i, n., clothing.
vestiō, ivi, itum, 4, *I clothe*.
vestis, is, *f.*, clothing, a garment.
vētus, vêtēris, *adj.*, old.
vexo, avi, ātum, 1, *I vex, harass*.
via, ae, *f.*, a way, road.
victor, ōris, m., a conqueror.
victōria, ae, *f.*, victory.
vidēo, vidi, visum, 2, *I see*.
videōr, visus, 2, *I seem, appear*.
vigilo, avi, ātum, 1, *I watch, I am awake*.

VIX.

vilis, e, *adj.*, cheap, common.
vincio, vinxi, vinctum, 4, *I bind*.
vinco, vici, victum, 3, *I conquer*.
vinculum, i, n., a chain, bond.
vinum, i, n., wine.
virgo, inis, *f.*, a maiden.
vir, viri, m., a man.
virtūs, ūtis, *f.*, valour, virtue, good quality.
viso, visi, visum, 3, v. *freq.*, *I look at often, view*.
visus, ūs, m., a seeing, looking, look.
vita, ae, *f.*, life.
vitupēro, avi, ātum, 1, *I blame, find fault with*.
vivo, vixi, victum, 3, *I live*.
vix, adv., scarcely.

XERXES.

vōlo, avi, ātum, 1, *I fly*.
vōlo, vōlūi, velle, v. *irreg.*, *I wish, am willing*.
vōluntas, ātis, *f.*, a wish, will.
vōluptas, ātis, *f.*, pleasure.
vox, vōcis, *f.*, a voice.
vulnēro, avi, ātum, 1, *I wound*.
vulnus, ūris, n., a wound.
vultur, ūris, m., a vulture.
vultus, ūs, m., countenance, looks.

X

Xēnōphōn, ontis, m., *Xenophon, an Athenian*.
Xerxēs, is, m., *Xerxes, famous king of Persia*.

INDEX II. TO VOCABULARIES.

ENGLISH WORDS.

ABANDON.

A

abandon, dēsēro, sērūi, sertum, 3.
able, be, possum, p. 76.
abode, dōmicilium, ii, n.
about, circā, circum, circiter, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*
above, supēr, suprà, *prep.* with *acc.*
abuse, ābūtōr, ūsus, 3, v. *dep.*, with *abl.*
accident, cāsus, ūs, m.
accompany, cōmitōr, ātus, 1, v. *dep.*
accomplish, conficō, fēcī, fectum, 3.
accordance, in — with, sēcundum, *prep.* with *acc.*
account of, on, ōb, proptēr, *prep.* with *acc.*
accuse, accūso, avi, ātum, 1.
accused man, rēus, i, m.
accustomed, to be, sōlēo, itus sum, 2, p. 85.
acquire, ādpiscor, eptus, 3, v. *dep.*
across, trans, *prep.* with *acc.*
act, āgo, ēgi, actum, 3.

ALONE.

actively, gnāvītēr, *adv.*
admire, mīrōr, admīrōr, ātus, 1, v. *dep.*
adorn, orno, avi, ātum, 1.
advice, consillium, ii, n.
advise, suādēo, si, sum, 2, with *dat.*; mōnēo, ūi, itum, 2.
affliction, aerumna, ae, *f.*
afford, praebeō, ūi, itum, 2.
after, post, *prep.* with *acc.*
against, adversūs or um, contrā, *preps.* with *acc.*
age, actūs, ātis, *f.*
—, old, sēnectūs, ūtis, *f.*
aged, part. and *adj.*, nātus, a, um.
agree, consensio, si, sum, 4.
agreed, it is, constat, stitit, aid, auxillium, ii, n. [1].
air, āēr, āēris, m.
alarm, to, terrēo, ūi, itum, all, omnis, e, *adj.* [2].
all together, cunctus, a, um, *adj.*
allowed, it is, licet, p. 86.
all —, socius, ii, m.
almost, prōpē, paenē, *adv.*
alone, solus, a, um; ūnus, a, um, *adj.*

APPLE.

Alps, Alpes, ium, m. pl.
already, jam, *adv.*
also, etiā, *adv.*
altogether, plānē, *adv.*
always, sēpēr, *adv.*
ambassador, lēgātus, i, m.
amongst, intēr, *prep.* with *acc.* [p. 31].
—, to be, intersum, amuse, dēlecto, avi, ātum, 1.
ancestors, māiōres, m. pl.
ancient, antiquus, a, um, *adj.*
and, et, atque, ac, quē, *conj.*
anger, ira, ae, *f.*
angry, to be, irascor, irātus, 3, v. *dep.*
animal, ānimal, ālis, n.
—, small, bestiōla, ae, *f.*
another, of several, āllius, ā, ūd, *indef. pron.*
another, of two, altēr, ā, um, *indef. pron.* [2].
answer, respondēo, di, sum, any, ullus, a, um, *indef. pron.*
any time, at, unquam, *adv.*
appear, vidēor, vīus, 2.
apple, mālum, i, n.

APPLE-TREE.

apple-tree, mālus, i, *f.*
appoint, institūo, ōi, ūtum, s; fio, factus sum, 3, v. *irr.*
approach, to, appropinquo, advento, āvi, ātum, 1.
arms, arma, ōrum, *n. pl.*
army, exercitus, ūs, *m.*
around, circā, circum, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*; circiter, *adv.* [3].
arrange, instrūo, xi, ctum.
arrive, advēnio, pervēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.
arrival, adventus, ūs, *m.*
arriving, to be on the point of, advento, āvi, ātum, 1.
arrow, sāgitta, ae, *f.*
art, ars, rtis, *f.*
as, tam, *adv.*
as . . . as, tam . . . quam, *adv.*
as (*conj.*), ut, *conj.*
as if, quāsi, *conj.*
as far as, tēnūs, *prep.* with *abl.*
as soon as, sīmūl, sīmūlac.
ascertain, cognosco, nōvi, nītum, 3.
ask, rōgo, āvi, ātum, 1.
assault, oppugno, āvi, ātum, 1.
assign, tribūo, ūi, ūtum, 3.
assist, adjuvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1.
assistance, auxillium, ii, *n.*
assuage, mollio, ivi, itum, at, ād, *prep.* with *acc.* [4].
Athenian, Athēnensis, e, *adj.*
Athens, Athēnæ, ārum, *f. pl.*
attack, impētus, ūs, *m.*
attack, to, oppugno, āvi, ātum, 1.
attain to, ādīpiscor, eptus, 3, v. *dep.*
attempt, cōnor, ātus, 1, v. *dep.*
attentive, attentus, a, um, *adj.*
attentively, attentē, *adv.*
author, scriptor, ōris, *m.* [*f.*]
authority, auctoritas, ātis.
autumn, auctumnus, i, *m.*
awake, to be, vigilo, āvi, ātum, 1.

B

bad, mālus, a, um, *adj.*
bank, ripa, ae, *f.*
base, turpis, e, *adj.*
battle, pugna, ae, *f.*; proelium, ii, *n.*

PR. L. I.

BRIDGE.

be, to, sum, fui, esse, p. 29.
— in, among, &c. see compounds of sum, p. 31.
beam, trabs, trābis, *f.*
bear, fero, tūli, lātum, p. 80.
— through, perfēro, &c.
beast, bestia, ae, *f.*
—, great, bellūa, ae, *f.*
—, small, bestiōia, ae, *f.*
beautiful, pulcher, cra, crum, *adj.*
because, quā, quōd, *conj.*
because of, ob, propter, *prepp.* with *acc.*
become, fio, p. 84.
becomes, it, decet, p. 86.
before, autē, *prep.* with *acc.*; prae, *prep.* with *abl.*
beg, pēto, ivi and ii, itum, 3.
begin, incipio, cēpi, cep- tum, 3.
beginning, initium, ii, *n.*
behalf of, on, pro, *prep.* with *abl.*
behind, pōnē, *prep.* with *acc.*
behoves, it, oportet, p. 86.
believe, crēdo, didi, ditum, 3.
beneath, sub, subtē, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*
beside, praetēr, *prep.* with *acc.*
besiege, obsidēo, sēdi, ses- sum, 2.
betake, confēro, tūli, col- lātum, ferre, 3, v. *irr.*
between, inter, *prep.* with *acc.* [*acc.*]
beyond, ultrā, *prep.* with *hind*, vincio, xi, nctum, 4.
bird, avis, is, *f.*
black, niger, gra, grum; āter, ātra, ātrum.
blame, culpo, āvi, ātum, 1.
—, subs., culpa, ae, *f.*
blockade, obsidio, ōnis, *f.*
blood, sanguis, inis, *m.*
bloom, floreō, ūi, —, 2.
blossom forth, effloresco, florūi, 3.
blow, flo, āvi, ātum, 1.
body, corpus, ōris, *n.*
bold, audax, ācis, *adj.*
bond, vinculum, i, *n.*
bone, os, ossis, *n.*
book, liber, bri, *m.*
booty, praeda, ae, *f.* [*dep.*]
born, be, nascor, nātus, 3, v.
boundary, finis, is, *m.*
boy, puer, eri, *m.*
bow, arcus, ūs, *m.*
brave, fortis, e, *adj.*
bravely, fortitēr, *adv.*
bridge, pons, tis, *m.*

CAST DOWN.

bright, splendidus, a, um,
bring, fero, p. 80. [*adj.*]
— in, &c. see com- pounds of fero, p. 81.
bring to an end, finio, ivi, itum, 4; conficō, faci, fec- tum, 3.
bring forth, pario, pēperi, partum, 3.
Britain, Britanniā, ae, *f.*
Briton, Britannus, i, *m.*
broad, lātus, a, um, *adj.*
brother, frāter, tris, *m.* [1].
build, aedifico, āvi, ātum,
building, aedificium, ii, *n.*
bull, taurus, i, *m.* [4].
bury, sēpeliō, ivi, pultum,
burden, ōnus, ōris, *n.*
burn, trans, incendio, di, sum, 3.
burn, intrans., ardēo, si, sum, 2.
burnt down, to be, dē- flagro, āvi, ātum, 1.
business, nēgocium, ii, *n.*
busy, occupātus, a, um, *adj.*
but, sēd, autē; see *Vocab.* 21, p. 130.
buy, ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3.
b7, ā, āb, abs, *prep.* with *abl.*

C

call, vōco, āvi, ātum, 1.
— together, convōco, āvi, ātum, 1. [1, v. *dep.*]
call to mind, rēcordor, ātus,
calm, tranquillus, a, um, *adj.*
camp, castra, ōrum, *n. pl.*
can, possum, p. 76.
cannot, nēquēo, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
cannot but, I, facēre nōr possum quā. [1]
care, take, cūro, āvi, ātum,
careful, diligens, ntis, *adj.*
carefully, diligentēr, *adv.*
carry, porto, āvi, ātum, 1.
carry on (war), gēro, gessi, gestum, 3.
carry a wall, mūrūm dūco, xi, ctum, 3.
Carthage, Carthāgo, inis, *f.*
Carthaginian, subs., Poe- nus, i, *m.*
Carthaginian, *adj.*, Car- thāginēnsis, e.
cast away, abjicio, jēci, jectum, 3.
cast down, dējicio, jēci, jectum; affligo, xi, ctum, 3.

CAST FORTH.

cast forth, out, *ēficio, jēci,*
jectum, 3.

catch, *cāpio, cēpi, cap-*
tum, 3.

Catiline, *Cātilīna, ae, m.*

cause, *causa, ae, f.*

cavalry, *equitatus, ūs, m.*

celebrated, *clārus, a, um,*
adj.; nobilis, e, adj.

century, *centūria, ae, f.*

certain, *certus, a, um, adj.*

chain, *vinculum, i, n.*

chance, *cāsus, ūs, m.*

—, *by, fortē, cāsi.*

change, *mūto, āvi, ātum, 1.*

charge, *mando, āvi, ātum, 1.*

chariot, *currus, ūs, m.*

chastise, *castigo, āvi, ātum,*

pl.

cheap, *vilis, e, adj.* [1.]

cheer, *exhilaro, āvi, ātum,*

cheerful, *hilaris, is, c.*

cheese, *cāseus, i, m.*

cherish, *cōlo, ūi, cultum, 3.*

cherry, *cērāsus, i, n.*

cherry-tree, *cērāsus, i, f.*

children, *liberi, ōrum, m.*

pl.

Cimbrians, *Cimbri, ōrum,*

m. pl.

citadel, *arx, arcis, f.*

citizen, *civis, is, c.*

citizenship, *civitas, ātis, f.*

city, *urbs, urbis, f.*

civil, *belonging to a citizen,*

civilis, e, adj.

clear, *clārus, a, um, adj.*

cloak, *pallium, i, n.*

clothe, *vestio, i, v, itum, 4.*

clothing, *vestis, is, f.;*

vestimentum, i, n.

cloud, *nūbēs, is, f.*

coast, *ōra, ae, f.*

cohort, *cōhors, rtis, f.*

cold, *frigus, ōris, n.*

colony, *cōlōnia, ae, f.*

colour, *color, ōris, m.* [4.]

come, *vēnio, vēni, ventum,*

— **frequently,** *ventito,*

i, v, itum, 1.

come to pass, *fio, factus,*

fieri; see p. 84.

commander, *impērātor,*

ōris, m.

commission, *mandātum,*

l, n.

common, *vilis, e; commū-*

nis, e, adj.

commonly, *fērē, adv.*

commonwealth, *repub-*

lica, reipublicae, f.

companion, *comēs, itis, c.*

comparison, *in, prae,*

prep. with acc.

CUT OFF.

comrade, *sōcius, ii, m.*

concerning, *dē, prep. with*
abl.

confess, *fātēor, fassus;*
confitēor, fessus, 2.

conflagration, *incendium,*
ii, n. [tum, 3.]

conquer, *vinco, vici, vic-*
conqueror, victor, ōris, m.

conscience, *conscientia,*
ae, f.

conspiracy, *conjuratio, ō-*
nis, f. [n.]

constellation, *sidus, ōris,*
consul, *consul, ūlis, m.*

—, **office of,** *consulā-*
tus, ūs, m.

consult, *consūlo, lūi,*
ltum, 3.

consume, *absūmo, sumpsi,*
sumptum, 3.

contemplate, *contemplor,*
ātus, 1, v. dep.

contented, *contentus, a,*
um, adj.

continual, *perpētūus, a,*
um, adj.

contrary to, *contrā, prep.*
with acc.

converse, *collōquor, locū-*
tus, 3.

Corinth, *Cōrinthus, i, f.*

correct, *corrigo, rexi, rec-*
tum, 3.

counsel, *consillium, ii, n.*

count, *nūmero, āvi, ātum, 1.*

countenance, *vultus, ūs, m.*

country, *rūs, rūris, n.*

—, **one's,** *patria, ae, f.*

cover, *tēgo, xi, ctum, 3.*

cowardice, *ignavia, ae, f.*

create, *crēo, āvi, ātum, 1.*

creator, *creātor, ōris, m.*

credible, *crēdibilis, e, adj.*

Crete, *Crēta, ae, f.*

crime, *scēlus, ōris, n.*

crop, *messis, is, f.;* *fruges,*
um, f. pl.

cross over, *transēo, 4, p. 83.*

crown, *cōrōna, ae, f.*

cruel, *crūdēlis, e, adj.*

crush, *opprimo, pressi,*
pressum, 3.

cry out, *clāmo, exclāmo,*
āvi, ātum, 1.

cultivate, *cōlo, cōlāi, cul-*
tum, 3.

cultivate carefully, *ex-*
cōlo, cōlāi, cultum, 3.

curb, *cōercēo, ūi, itum, 2.*

current, *flūmen, inis, n.*

custom, *consuetudo, inis, f.*

cut off, *interclūdo, si,*
sum, 3.

DIE.

D

dance, *salto, āvi, ātum, 1.*

danger, *pēriculum, i, n.*

dangerous, *pēriculōsus, a,*
um, adj.

dare, *audēo, ausus sum, 2.*
p. 85.

daring, *audax, ācis, adj.*

daringly, *audactēr, adv.*

darken, *obscurō, āvi, itum,*

dart, *tēlum, i, n.* [1]

daughter, *filia, ae, f.*

day, *dies, ēi, m. and f.*

dead, *mortuus, a, um, adj.*

deal with, *tracto, āvi, ā-*
tum, 1.

dear, *cārus, a, um, adj.*

death, *mors, rtis, f.*

deceive, *decipio, cēpi, cep-*
tum, 3.

deed, a bold, daring, *fāci-*
nus, ōris, n.

deep, *altus, a, um, adj.*

defeat, *clādēs, is, f.*

defend, *dēfendo, i, sum, 3.*

defendant, *rēus, i, m.*

delicate, *tēnuis, e, adj.*

delight, *dēlecto, āvi, ā-*
tum, 1. [e, adj.]

delightful, *dulcis, suāvis,*

delightfully, *jūcundē, adv.*

deliver, *libēro, āvi, ātum, 1.*

demand, *postūlo, āvi, ā-*
tum, 1.

deny, *nēgo, āvi, ātum, 1.*

depart, *excēdo, cessi, ces-*
sum, 3; migro, ēmigro, āvi,
ātum, 1. [tum, 1.]

deplete, *dēplōro, āvi, ā-*

deserve, *mērēor, itus, 2.*

desire, *to, cūpio, i, v, and*
ii, tum, 3.

desire, *stūdium, ii, n.;* *cū-*
peditas, ātis, f.

despise, *contemno, mpsi,*
mptum, 3; aspernor, ātus, 1,
v. dep.

despot, *tyrannus, i, m.*

desstitute, *inops, ōpis, adj.*

destroy, *perdo, didi, dī-*
tum, 3.

destruction, *extīlūm, ii, n.*

destructive, *perniciōsus*
a, um, adj.

deter, *dēterrēo, ūi, itum, 2.*

determine, *constītio, ūi,*
itum, 3.

devote oneself, *ōperān-*
do, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1.

devoted to, *addictus, a,*
um, adj.

die, *mōrior mortuus, 3.*

DIFFICULT.

difficult, difficilis, *e, adj.*
difficult, somewhat, sub-
 difficilis, *e, adj.*
dig, fodio, fodi, fossum, 3.
diligence, diligentia, *ae, f.*
diligent, diligens, ntis, *adj.*
dine, coeno, avi or atus
 sum, atum, 1, p. 85.
disaster, cladēs, *is, f.*
discern, cerno, crēvi, crē-
 tum, 3.
discharge, fungor, nctus, 3,
v. dep. with abl., p. 71.
discourse, sermo, onis, *m.*
discover, detēgo, texi, tec-
 tum, 3.
disease, morbus, 1, *m.*
disembark, *trans.*, expōno,
 pōsui, pōsitum, 3.
disgrace, turpītudo, *inis, f.*
disgraceful, turpis, *e, adj.*
distinguish, it, taedet, 2, p. 86.
dishonest, imprōbus, *a,*
um, adj.
dishonesty, fraus, *dis, f.*
dismiss, dimitto, misi, mis-
 sum, 3.
displease, displicēo, ūi,
 Itum, 2, with *dat.*
disposed, affectus, *a, um,*
adj.
distance, longinquitas, tā-
 tis, *f.*
distant, longinquus, *a, um,*
adj.
distant, to be, absum, p.
 31.
distinguished, insignis, *e;*
 ēgrēgius, *a, um, adj.*
distrust, diffido, isus sum,
 3, p. 85.
disturb, turbo, avi, atum,
 1; mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.
ditch, fossa, *ae, f.*
divide, sēpāro, avi, atum,
 1; divido, isi, isum, 3.
divine, divinus, *a, um, adj.*
do, faciō, feci, factum, 3.
dog, cānis, *is, c.*
doubt, dubito, avi, atum, 1.
doubtful, dubius, *a, um,*
adj.
dove, cōlumba, *ae, f.*
drag, draw, trāho, traxi,
 tractum, 3.
draw together, contrāho,
 traxi, tractum, 3.
draw up in order, in-
 struo, xi, ctum, 3.
drink, bibo, 1, Itum, 3.
drive out, expello, pūli,
 pulsum, 3.
duty, mūnus, *eris, n.*
dwel, habito, avi, atum, 1.

EVERY ONE.

E

eager after, studiōsus, *a,*
um, adj. with gen.
eager, be, studiō, ūi, —, 2.
eagle, āquila, *ae, f.*
ear, auris, *is, f.*
earnestly, vēhementēr,
 magnōpērē, *adv.*
earth, terra, *ae, f.*
easily, facīlē, *adv.*
easy, facīlis, *e, adj.*
eat, ēdo, ēdi, esum, 3.
educate, edūco, avi, atum, 1.
elegant, ēlēgans, ntis, *adj.*
elephant, ēlēphantus, 1, *m.*
eloquent, ēlōquens, ntis,
adj.
embark, nāvem (naves)
 conscendo, di, sum, 3.
embroider, pingo, pinxi,
 pictum, 3.
eminent, exīmius, ēgrē-
 gius, *a, um, adj.*
empire, impēriū, *ti, n.*
employ, adhibēo, ūi, Itum, 2,
v. dep.
end, finis, *is, m.*
—, put an end to, finio,
 ivi, Itum, 4.
endure, pātior, passus, 3;
 fēro, p. 80.
enemy (public), hostis, *is, c.*
— (personal), inimicus,
 1, *m.* [*adj.*]
engaged, occūpātus, *a, um,*
 enjoy, frūor, Itus and ctus,
 3, *v. dep. with abl.*
enmity, inimicitia, *ae, f.*
enough, sātis, *adv.*
enquire, quaero, quaesivi,
 quaesitum, 3.
enter, intro, avi, atum, 1.
entice, lācio, 3 (obs.), p. 120.
entreat, oro, avi, atum, 1.
envy, invidia, *ae, f.*
epistle, epistōla, *ae, f.* [3].
esteem, diligo, lexi, lectum,
eternal, aeternus, *a, um,*
adj.
Europe, Eurōpa, *ae, f.*
even, *adj.*, aequus, *a, um.*
—, conj., etiam.
evening comes on, ves-
 pērascit, 3, *v. impers., p. 87.*
ever = at any time, un-
 quam, *a.*
ever = always, semper,
adv.
every, omnis, *e, adj.*
every day, quōtidie, *adv.*
every one, quisque, quae-

FIGHT.

que, quodque, and *subst.* quic-
 que (quidque), *pron.*
evident, it is, constat, stit-
 tit, .
evil, mālum, 1, *n.*
example, exemplum, 1, *n.*
excellent, praestans, antis;
 praestabilis, *e, adj.*
except, praeter, *prep. with*
acc.
exercise, to, exercēo, ūi,
 Itum, 2. [2].
exhibit, praebēo, ūi, Itum,
exhort, hortor, adhortor,
 atus, 1.
exile, exilium, *ii, n.*
—, live in, exilium
 āgo, ēgi, actum, 3.
experienced, pēritus, *a,*
um, adj.
extend, prōfēro, tūli, lātum,
 ferre, 3.
eye, ōculus, 1, *m.*

F

fable, fābūla, *ae, f.*
fall, cādo, cēcidi, cāsūm, 3.
faith, fides, *ei, f.*
faithful, fidēlis, *e; fidus,*
a, um, adj.
famous, nōbilis, *e, adj.*
far, longē, *adv.*
— and wide, longē
 latēquē.
farther, too far, longius,
adv. comp.
father, pāter, tris, *m.*
father-in-law, sōcer, *eri,*
fault, culpa, *ae, f.* [*m.*]
fault, find, vitūpēro, culpo,
 avi, atum, 1.
favour, grātia, *ae, f.*
fear, mētus, ūs; timor,
 oris, *m.*
fear, to, mētāto, i, atum, 3;
 timēo, ūi, —, 2; vēror, Itus.
feeble, dēbilis, *e, adj.* [2].
feed on, vescor, with *abl.*,
 3, *v. dep.*
feel, sentio, si, sum, 4.
feign, simūlo, avi, atum, 1.
fellow-citizen, civis, *is, c.*
fellow-soldier, commilito,
 onis, *m.*
few, paucus, *a, um, adj.*
fidelity, fides, *ei, f.*
field, āger, gri, *m.*
fierce, fērox, ōcis, *adj.*
fiery, made of fire, ignēus,
a, um, adj.
fig, fig-tree, ficus, 1, *f.*
fight, pugno, avi, atum, 1.

FIGHT.

fight (*a battle*), *committo*, *missi*, *missum*, 3.
find, *reperio*, *perti*, *pertum*, 4; *invenio*, *veni*, *ventum*, 4.
find fault with, *culpo*, *vitupero*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
finish, *conficio*, *feci*, *fecitum*, 3. [*adj.*]
finished, *perfectus*, *a*, *um*, *fire*, *ignis*, *is*, *m*.
 — = *conflagration*, *incendium*, *ii* *n*.
fire, *be on*, *ardēo*, *si*, *sum*, 2.
first (*adv.*), *primo*, *primum*, *adv.* [*um*, *adj.*]
first-rate, *primarius*, *a*, *fish*, *piscis*, *is*, *m*.
fix, *figo*, *fixi*, *fixum*, 3.
flatter, *adulor*, *atus*, 1, *v. dep.*
flattery, *adulatio*, *onis*, *f*.
flee, *fugio*, *fugi*, *fugitum*, 3.
flee to, *confugio*, *fugi*, 3.
fleet, *classis*, *is*, *f*.
flesh, *caro*, *carnis*, *f*.
flower, *flos*, *oris*, *m*. [*v. dep.*]
follow, *sequor*, *secutus*, 3, *follow up*, *subséquor*, *cutus*, 3, *v. dep.*
folly, *stultitia*, *ae*, *f*.
foolish, *stultus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
foot-soldier, *pēdes*, *itis*, *m*.
for (*prep.*), *pro*, *prep.* with *abl.*
for (*conj.*), *nam*, *enim*, *conj.*
forage, *pabulor*, *atus*, 1, *v. dep.*
forced marches, *maxima itinera*, *n*. *pl.*
forces, *cōpiæ*, *arum*, *f*. *pl.*
forehead, *frons*, *tis*, *f*.
foresee, *prōvidēo*, *vidi*, *visum*, 2.
forget, *obliscor*, *litus*, 3, *v. dep.* with *gen.* [*p*. 83.]
form (*a plan*), *inēo*, 4, *irr.*, **former**, *pristinus*, *a*, *um*; *prior*, *us*, *adv.* [*adv.*]
formerly, *olim*, *quondam*, **fortification**, *munitum*, *i*, *n*; *moenia*, *ium*, *n*. *pl.*
fortify, *mūnio*, *ivi*, *itum*, 4.
fortune, *fortūna*, *ae*, *f*.
fortunate, *felix*, *icis*, *adj.*
fountain, *fons*, *ntis*, *m*.
frame, *to*, *fabrico*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
free, *liber*, *era*, *rum*, *adj.*
freedom, *libertas*, *atis*, *f*.
freely, *liberē*, *adv.*
friend, *amicus*, *i*, *m*.
friendship, *amicitia*, *ae*, *f*.
frighten, *terro*, *ui*, *itum*, 2.
from, *ā* (*āb*), *dē*, *prep.* with *abl.*

GRIEVOUSLY.

fruit, *fructus*, *ūs*, *m*.
full, *plenus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
function, *mūnus*, *oris*, *n*.
funeral, *fūnus*, *oris*, *n*.
furnish = *supply*, *præbēo*, *ui*, *itum*, 2.

G

gain = *get*, *obtain*, *pāro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
game, *lūdus*, *i*, *m*.
garden, *hortus*, *i*, *m*.
garment, *vestis*, *is*, *f*; *vestimentum*, *i*, *n*.
gate, *porta*, *ae*, *f*.
gather, *lēgo*, *lēgi*, *lectum*, 3.
 — **together**, *contrāho*, *traxi*, *tractum*, 3.
Gaul, *Gallia*, *ae*, *f*.
gaze, *thēor*, *itus*, 2, *v. dep.*
general, *impērator*, *oris*, *m*.
get, *gain*, *pāro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1; *adipiscor*, *eptus*, 3, *v. dep.*
get back, *recupēro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
get together, *compāro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1; *cōgo*, *cōegi*, *cōactum*, *gift*, *dōnum*, *i*, *n*. [*3*.]
girl, *puella*, *ae*, *f*. [*1*.]
give, *do*, *dēdi*, *dātum*, *dāre*, *glide*, *lābor*, *lapsus*, 3, *v. dep.*
glory, *glōria*, *ae*, *f*.
go, *eo*, *ivi* or *ii*, *irē*, *Itum*, 4, *v. irr.*
go in, out, &c., see *comps.* of *eo*, *p*. 83. [*3*.]
go to see, *viso*, *visi*, *visum*, **God**, *Deus*, *i*, *m*.
goddess, *dēa*, *ae*, *f*.
gods, *of the*, *divinus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
gold, *aurum*, *i*, *n*.
golden, *aurēus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
good, *bōnus*, *prōbus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
good, *subst.*, *bōnum*, *i*, *n*.
good, *do*, *to*, *prōsum*, *p*. 31.
goods, *bōna*, *arum*, *n*. *pl.* [*1*.]
govern, *gubernō*, *avi*, *atum*, **grandfather**, *avus*, *i*, *m*.
grass, *grāmen*, *inis*, *n*.
great, *magnus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
great, *how*, *quantus*, *a*, *um*, *rel. adj.*
greatly, *magnōpērē*, *adv.*
Greece, *Graecia*, *ae*, *f*.
Greek, *Grecian*, *Græcus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
grief, *dōlor*, *oris*, *m*.
grieves, *it*, *pigēt*, *pigūt* & *pigitum* est, *pigere*, 2, *v. impers.*
grievously, *grāvītēr*, *adv.*

HOPE.

ground, *hūmus*, *i*, *f*.
guard, *to*, *custōdio*, *ivi*, *itum*, 1; *thēor*, *itus*, 2, *v. dep.*
guardian, *custos*, *ōdis*, *m*.
guilt, *scelus*, *oris*, *n*.
guilty, *noxius*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

H

habit, *consuetudo*, *inis*, *f*.
hails, *it*, *grandinat*, *avit*, *v. impers.*
hand, *mānus*, *ūs*, *f*.
hand down, *trādo*, *prōdo*, *didi*, *ditum*, 3.
handle, *tracto*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
happen, *fio*, *factus* *sum*, *fieri*, *v. irr.*, *p*. 84.
happy, *beātus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
happily, *beātē*, *adv.*
harass, *vexo*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
harbour, *portus*, *ūs*, *m*.
hard, *dūrus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
hardship, *lābor*, *oris*, *m*.
hare, *lēpus*, *oris*, *m*.
hasten, *contendo*, *di*, *sum* & *tum*, 3.
hatred, *ōdium*, *ii*, *n*.
have, *hābēo*, *ui*, *Itum*, 2.
 — **rather**, *prefer*, *mālo*, *ui*, *malle*, *irr. v.*, *p*. 77.
head, *capūt*, *itis*, *n*.
 — **be at the**, *praesum*, *ful*, with *dat.*, *p*. 31.
health, *valētudo*, *inis*, *f*.
health, *be in*, *valēo*, *ui*, *Itum*, 2. [*3*.]
heap up, *extrūo*, *xi*, *ctum*, **hear**, *audio*, *ivi*, *Itum*, 4.
hearing, *auditus*, *ūs*, *m*.
heart, *cōr*, *cordis*, *n*.
heat, *cālor*, *oris*, *m*.
heaven, *coelum*, *i*, *n*.
heavenly, *coelestis*, *e*, *adj.*
heavily, *grāvītēr*, *adv.*
heavy, *grāvis*, *e*, *adj.* [*1*.]
help, *adiūvo*, *jūvi*, *jūtum*, **helpless**, *iners*, *ertis*, *adj.*
high, *altus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
 — **very**, *præcelsus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
highest, *summus*, *a*, *um*, *adj. sup.*
his, *hers*, *gen.* of *is*, *ea* : when referring to subject, *sūus*, *a*, *um*, *poss. pron.*
hold a levy, *dēlectum* *hābēo*, *ui*, *Itum*, 2.
hold together, *continēo*, *ui*, *entum*, 2.
honesty, *prōbitas*, *atis*, *f*.
honour, *hōnor*, *oris*, *m*.
hope, *to*, *spēro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.

HOPE.

hope, spēs, ēi, *f.*
 hoped for, spērātus, a, um, *adj.*
 horn, cornu, ūs, *n.*
 horse, ēquus, i, *m.*
 horse-soldier, ēquēs, Itis, *m.*
 hostage, obsēs, Idis, *c.*
 hour, hōra, ae, *f.*
 house, dōmus, ūs; see p. 22.
 how great, quantus, a, um, *rel. adj.*
 how many, quōt, *indecl. rel. adj.*
 human, hūmānus, a, um, *adj.*
 hunger, fāmēs, Is, *f.*
 hunt, vēnor, ātus, *l.*
 hurt, harm, nocēo, ūi, itum, 2, with *dat.*; obsum, with *dat.*, p. 31.
 hurtful, noxiūs, a, um, *adj.*
 hurtful, to be, obsum, with *dat.*, p. 31.
 husbandman, agrīcola, ae, *m.*

I

if, si, *conj.*
 if, as, quāsi, *conj.* [*f.*]
 ignorance, ignōrāntia, ōnis, *f.*
 ignorant of (be), ignōro, āvi, ātum, *l.*
 ill, *adj.*, mālus, a, um, *adj.*
 —, *adv.*, malē, *adv.*
 illness, morbus, i, *m.*
 ill-will, invidia, ae, *f.*
 ill-wishing, malēvōlus, a, um, *adj.*
 image, imāgo, inis, *f.*; simūlācrum, i, *n.*
 imitate, imītor, ātus, *l.*, *v. dep.*
 immediately, stātim, *adv.*
 immense, ingens, tis, *adj.*
 immortal, immortālis, e, *adj.*
 immortality, immortālitas, ātis, *f.*
 impair, infringo, frēgi, fractum, 3.
 impiety, impious, nēfās, *n. indecl.*
 improve, ēmendo, āvi, ātum, *l.*
 imprudence, imprudentia, ae, *f.*
 in, into, in, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*
 indeed, quīdem, *conj.*
 indolence, ignāvia, ae; aegritudo, ēi, *f.*
 indolently, ignāvē, *adv.*

KIND.

indulge, indulgēo, si, tum, 2, with *dat.*
 industrious, industrius, a, um, *adj.*
 infamous, infāmis, e, *adj.*
 infamy, infāmia, ae, *f.*
 infantry, pēditātus, ūs, *m.*
 inferior, inferior, ius, *adj. comp.*
 infinite, infinitus, a, um, *adj.*
 infirm, debilis, e, *adj.*
 inhabitant, incolā, ae, *c.*
 injure, obsum, obfūi or offūi, obesse, with *dat.*, p. 31; nocēo, ūi, itum, 2, with *dat.*
 injurious, noxiūs, a, um, *adj.*
 innumerable, innūmērus, a, um, *adj.*
 inquire, rōgo, āvi, ātum, 1;
 inquire, quāsi vi, quāsitum, 3.
 insect, bestiōla, ae, *f.*
 institute, institūo, ūi, ātum, 3.
 instrument, instrūmentum, i, *n.*
 integrity, prōbitas, ātis, *f.*
 intellect, mens, tis, *f.*
 intercept, interclūdo, si, sum, 3.
 invent, repērio, pēri, per-tum, 4; fingō, finxi, fictum, 3.
 iron, ferrum, i, *n.*
 island, insula, ae, *f.*
 Italy, Itālia, ae, *f.*
 its, sūus, a, um; *poss. pron.*

J

join, jungo, xi, ctum, 3.
 — (battle), proelium com-mitto, misi, missum, 3.
 journey, iter, itinēris, *n.*
 joy, gaudium, ii, *n.*
 joyful, laetus, a, um, *adj.*
 judge, iudex, icis, *m.*
 —, to, iudico, āvi, ātum, 1.
 judgment, iudicium, ii, *n.*
 just, justus, a, um, *adj.*
 justly, justē, *adv.*

K

keen, ācer, cris, cre, *adj.*
 keep off, prōhibēo, ūi, itum, 2.
 keep guard, vīgilo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 kill, interficio, feci, factum, 3.
 kind, bēnignus, a, um, *adj.*

LIE.

kindly, bēnignē, *adv.*
 king, rex, rēgis, *m.*
 —, to be, regno, āvi, ātum, 1.
 kingdom, regnum, i, *n.*
 knee, genu, ūs, *m.*
 know, scio, ivi and ii, itum, 4.
 know not, nescio, ivi and ii, itum, 4.
 knowledge, scientia, prū-dentia, ae, *f.*
 knowledge, without, clām, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*
 known, nōtus, a, um, *adj.*

L

labour, lābor, ōris, *m.*
 lake, lacus, ūs, *m.*
 lament over, dēplōro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 land, terra, ae, *f.*; āger, gri, *m.*
 language, lingua, ae, *f.*
 large, magnus, a, um, *adj.*
 last day, supremus diēs, *m.*
 last, at, dēmum, *adv.*
 Latin, Lātinus, a, um, *adj.*
 law, lex, legis, *f.*
 lay waste, vasto, āvi, ātum, 1.
 lay siege to, obsidēo, sēdi, sessum, 2.
 lead, dūco, xi, ctum, 3.
 — across, transdūco, xi, ctum, 3.
 lead out, ēdūco, xi, ctum, 3.
 leader, dux, dūcis, *c.*
 learn, disco, didici, —, 3.
 learn in addition, addisco, didici, 3.
 learn = ascertain, cognos-co, nōvi, nītum, 3.
 learned, doctus, a, um, *adj.*
 leave, relinquo, liqui, lic-tum, 3.
 leg, crūs, ūris, *n.*
 legion, légio, ōnis, *f.*
 length, longitūdo, inis, *f.*
 lest, nē, p. 97.
 lest, and, nēvē.
 letter of the alphabet, litēra, ae, *f.*
 letter (an epistle), litērae, ārum, *f. pl.*; ēpistōla, ae, *f.*
 letters, literature, litē-rae, ārum, *f. pl.*
 levy, dēlectus, ūs, *m.*
 liar, lying, mendax, ācis, *subs.* and *adj.*
 licitor, licitor, ōris, *m.*
 lie (on the ground), iāco ūi, —, 2.

LIE.

lie (*to speak falsely*), *mentior*, *itus*, 4, *v. dep.*
lieutenant, *légatus*, *i*, *m.*
life, *vita*, *ae*, *f.*
light (*adj.*), *lēvis*, *e*, *adj.*
light (*subs.*), *lux*, *lūcis*, *f.*
light, it becomes, *lūcescit*,
 3, *impers. v.*, *p.* 87.
lightning, *fulmen*, *inis*, *n.*
like, *similis*, *e*, *adj.*
likely, *verisimilis*, *e*, *adj.*
likeness, *imāgo*, *inis*, *f.*
limit, *finis*, *m.*
 —, *to*, *finio*, *ivi*, *itum*, 4.
line of battle, *aciēs*, *ēi*, *f.*
lion, *leo*, *ōnis*, *m.*
little, *parvus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
live, *vivo*, *vixi*, *victum*, 3.
live on, *vescor*, *with* *abl.*,
 3, *v. dep.*
live in exile, *exiliū* *āgo*,
ēgi, *actum*, 3.
Livy, *Livius*, *ii*, *m.*
load, *onus*, *ēris*, *n.*
lofty, *celsus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
long (*adj.*), *longus*, *a*, *um*,
long (*adv.*), *dū*, *adv.* [*adj.*]
look at, *specto*, *avi*, *ātum*, 1.
 — *upon or into*, *intueor*,
tultus *and* *tūtus*, 2, *v. dep.*
looks, *vultus*, *ūs*, *m.*
loosen, *solvō*, *solvi*, *sōlū-*
lord, *dōminus*, *i*, *m.* [*tum*, 3.
lot, *sors*, *rtis*, *f.*
love, *āmo*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1;
diligō, *lexi*, *lectum*, 3.
love in return, *rēdāmo*,
āvi, *ātum*, 1.
lovely, *āmābīlis*, *e*, *adj.*
low, *hūmilis*, *e*, *adj.*
lower, *inferior*, *ius*, *adj.*
comp.
luckily, *felicitēr*, *adv.*
lucky, *felix*, *icis*, *adj.*

M

Macedonian, *Mācēdo*, *dō-*
nis, *m.*
made, *factus*, *affectus*, *a*,
um, *part. and* *adj.*
made of fire, *ignēus*, *a*,
um, *adj.*
madness, *fūror*, *ōris*, *m.*
magistrate, *māgistrātus*,
ūs, *m.*
magnificent, *magnificus*,
a, *um*, *adj.*
maiden, *virgo*, *inis*, *f.*
maintain, *servo*, *āvi*, *ā-*
tum, 1.
make, *fācio*, *fēcī*, *factum*, 3.
man, *hōmo*, *inis*, *c.*; *vir*,
virī, *m.*

NARROW.

manage, *gēro*, *gessi*, *ges-*
tum, 3.
manifest, *manifestus*, *a*,
um, *adj.*
maniple, *manīpūlus*, *i*, *m.*
manner, *mos*, *mōris*, *m.*
many, *multus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
many, *how*, *quōt*, *indec.*
rel. adj.
many, *very*, *permulti*, *ae*,
a, *adj.*
marble, *marmōr*, *ōris*, *n.*
market-place, *fōrum*, *i*, *m.*
master, *dominus*, *i*, *m.*; *mā-*
gister, *tri*, *m.*
measure, *to*, *mētior*, *men-*
sus, 4, *v. dep.* [*v. dep.*]
meditate, *mēdītor*, *ātus*, 1.
meet, *to*, *ōbeo*, *ivi* *and* *ii*,
itum, 4.
mellow, *mollis*, *e*, *adj.*
membrane, *membrāna*, *ae*,
f.
memorable, *mēmōrābīlis*,
e, *adj.*
memory, *mēmōria*, *ae*, *f.*
metal, *mētallum*, *i*, *n.* [1.
migrate, *mīgro*, *āvi*, *ātum*,
mild, *mitis*, *e*, *adj.*
milk, *lac*, *lactis*, *n.*
mind, *mens*, *ntis*, *f.*
mindful, *mēmōr*, *ōris*, *adj.*
miserable, *miser*, *ērā*, *ē-*
rum, *adj.*
mistake, *error*, *ōris*, *m.*
 —, *make* *a*, *erro*, *āvi*,
ātum, 1.
mistress, *dōmīna*, *ae*, *f.*
money, *pēcūnia*, *ae*, *f.*
month, *mensis*, *is*, *m.*
monument, *mōnūmentum*,
moon, *lūna*, *ae*, *f.* [*i*, *n.*
more, *plus*, *plūris*, *neut.*
adj.; *in pl.* *plūres*, *a*.
mortal, *mortālis*, *e*, *adj.*
mother, *māter*, *tris*, *f.*
mound, *aggr*, *ērē*, *m.*
mount, *to*, *conscendo*, *di-*
sium, 3.
mountain, *mons*, *ntis*, *m.*
mouth, *ōs*, *ōris*, *n.*
move, *mōveo*, *mōvi*, *mō-*
tum, 2.
much, *multus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
multitude, *multitudo*, *inis*,
f.
my (*mine*), *meus*, *a*, *um*,
poss. pron.

N

name, *nōmen*, *inis*, *n.*
narrow, *angustus*, *a*, *um*,
adj.

OLD.

native-land, *patrīa*, *ae*, *f.*
nature, *nātūra*, *ae*, *f.*
naval, *nāvalis*, *e*, *adj.*
near to (*prep.*), *propē*, *adv.*
near (*adj.*), *prōpinquus*, *a*
um, *adj.*
necessary, *nēcēssārius*, *a*,
um, *adj.*
necessity, *nēcēssitas*, *ātis*,
f.
need, *opus*, *indec. subs.*
with *abl. and* *adj.*
needful, *nēcēssārius*, *a*, *um*,
adj.
needle, *ācus*, *ūs*, *f.*
neither, *neuter*, *tra*, *trum*,
indef. pron.
neither, *nor*, *nēquē*, *nēc.*
conj.
nest, *nidus*, *i*, *m.*
net, *rēte*, *is*, *n.*
never, *nunquam*, *adv.*
new, *nōvus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
next, *proximus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*
sup.
night, *nox*, *noctis*, *f.*
nightingale, *luscīnia*, *ae*,
f.
no, *none*, *nullus*, *a*, *um*,
indef. pron.
noble, *nōbīlis*, *e*, *adj.*
nobody, *no one*, *nēmo*,
inis, *c.*
not, *nōn*, *haud*, *adv.*
nothing, *nihil*, *indec. subs.*
nourish, *nūtrio*, *ivi*, *itum*, 4.
now, *nunc*, *jam*, *adv.*
number, *nūmērus*, *i*, *m.*
nurture, *nutrio*, *ivi*, *itum*,
 4.

O

oak, *quercus*, *ūs*, *f.*
oath, *iurandum*, *iurisjū-*
randi, *n.*
obey, *pāreo*, *īvi*, *itum*, 2;
ōbēdio, *ivi*, *itum*, 4, *with* *dat.*
object, *rēcūso*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1.
obscure, *obscurus*, *a*, *um*,
adj.
observe (*carefully*), *con-*
templor, *ātus*, 1, *v. dep.*
obtain, *pāro*, *āvi*, *ātum*, 1;
ādīpsor, *adeptus*, 3, *v. dep.*
obtain possession of,
pōtor, *itus*, 4, *v. dep.*, *with* *abl.*
ocean, *ōcēānus*, *i*, *m.*
often, *saepe*, *adv.*
 —, *very*, *saeppissimē*, *adv.*
oftentimes, *saeppinūmērō*,
adv.
old, *sēnex*, *sēnis* (*of per-*
sons only); *vētus*, *ēris*, *adj.*

OLD AGE.

old age, senectūs, ūtis, *f.*
olden, antiquus, a, um, *adj.*
one, ūnus, a, um, *adj.*
one of the two, alter, a, um, *indef. pron.*
only, solum, *adv.*
onset, impetus, ūs, *m.*
oppose, resisto, stitī, stitum, 3, with *dat.*; oppugno, avi, ātum, 1.
oracle, oraculum, i, *n.*
oration, oratio, ōnis, *f.*
orator, orator, ōris, *m.*
order, jubeo, jussi, jussum, 2.
ornament, ornāmentum, i, *n.*; decus, ōris, *n.*
other, of two, alter, ā, um, *indef. pron.*
overcome, sup̄ero, avi, ātum, 1.
overwhelm, opprimo, pressi, pressum, 3.
owe, ought, deb̄eo, ūi, itum, 2.
owing, it is, per(te) stat.
ox, bōs, bōvis, *c.*

P

pace, passus, ūs, *m.*
pain, dolor, ōris, *m.*
pains, to take, curo, avi, ātum, 1.
paint, pingo, nxi, ctum, 3.
parent, parens, entis, *c.*
part, pars, tis, *f.*
partner, socius, i, *m.*
pass by, over, praeter̄o, ivi and ii, itum, 4. [*v. dep.*]
pass away, labor, lapsus, 3.
— through, trans̄eo, ivi or ii, itum, 4.
pass (come to), fio, factus, fieri, p. 84.
passion, cupiditas, ātis, *f.*
past, praeter̄itus, a, um, *adj.*
path, via, ae, *f.*
patience, patientia, ae, *f.*
patiently, patient̄er, *adv.*
peace, pax, pācis, *f.*
peacock, pavō, ōnis, *m.*
pear, pirum, i, *n.*
pear-tree, pirus, i, *f.*
pearl, margarita, ae, *f.*
perceive, sentio, si, sum, 4.
perfect, perfectus, a, um, *adj.*
perish, per̄eo, int̄er̄o, ivi and ii, itum, 4.
persuade, persuād̄eo, si, sum, 2, with *dat.* [*adj.*]
perverse, perversus, a, um,

PREVENT.

philosopher, philosophus, i, *m.*
pillage, diripio, ripui, reptum, 3.
pitch a camp, castra pono, posui, positum, 3.
pity, misereor, itus and rtus, 2, *v. dep.*; mis̄eret, mis̄eritum est, *v. impers.*, with
place, locus, i, *m.* [*gen.* —, to, colloc, avi, ātum, 1.
plain, planities, ei, *f.*
plan, consilium, ii, *n.*
plant, planta, ae, *f.*
play, ludo, si, sum, 3. [*adj.*]
pleasant, jucundus, a, um, pleasantly, jucund̄e, *adv.*
please, placeo, ūi, itum, 2, with *dat.*
pleases, it, placet, ult, *v. impers.*, p. 86.
pleasing, gratus, a, um, *adj.*
pleasure, voluptas, ātis, *f.*
plenty, copia, ae, *f.*
plum, prunum, i, *n.*
plum-tree, prunus, i, *f.*
plunder (*subs.*), praeda, ae, *f.* —, to, diripio, ripui, reptum, 3.
poem, carmen, inis, *n.*
poet, pōeta, ae, *m.*
Pompey, Pompēius, ii, *m.*
poor, pauper, ēris, *adj.*
portrait, imago, inis, *f.*
post, statio, ōnis, *f.*
poverty, paupertas, ātis, *f.*
power, pōtentia, ae, *f.*; pōtestas, ātis, *f.*
power of, in the, penēs, *prep.* with *acc.*
powerful, pōtens, tis, *adj.*
praise (*subs.*), laus, dis, *f.* —, to, laudo, avi, ātum, 1.
precious, cārus, a, um, *adj.*
prefer, praef̄ero, tāli, lātum, p. 81; mālō, mālūi, malle, p. 77.
prepare, pārō, avi; ātum, 1.
prepared, parātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*
presence of, in the, cōram, *prep.* with *abl.*
present, praesens, tis, *adj.* —, to be, adsum, affui, adesse, p. 31.
preserve, servo, conservo, avi, ātum, 1. [*sum.* 3.
press, pr̄mo, pressi, press upon, opprimo, pressi, pressum, 3.
pretence, simulatio, ōnis, *f.*
prevent, obsto, stitī, stitum, 1.

REASON.

probable, verisimilis, a, *adj.*
prohibit, prōhib̄eo, ūi, itum, 2.
promise, prōmitto, misi, missum, 3; polliceor, itus, 2, *v. dep.*
properly, prōb̄e, rect̄e, *adv.*
prostrate, to, affligo, flexi, flectum, 3.
protect, tuor, itus and tātus, 2, *v. dep.*
provide, prōvid̄eo, vidi, visum, 2.
provisions, commeātus, ūum, *m. pl.*
prudence, prūdentia, ae, *f.*
prudent, prūdens, tis, *adj.*
public, publicus, a, um, *adj.*
punish, pānio, ivi, itum, 4.
punishment, poena, ae, *f.*
pupil, discipulus, i, *m.*
pursuit, stādium, ii, *n.*
put an end to, finio, ivi, itum, 4.
put to death, interficio, feci, fectum, 3.
put to flight, fūgo, avi, ātum, 1.

Q

quality, good, virtūs, ātis, *f.*
queen, rēgina, ae, *f.*
quiet, tranquillus, a, um, *adj.*
quit, exc̄edo, cessi, cessum, 3.

R

race, gēnus, ēris, *n.*
rainbow, arcus coelestis, *m.*
rains, it pluit, pluit or pluvit, pluere, 3, *v. impers.*
raise (*forces*), compāro, avi, ātum, 1.
rapacious, rapax, ācis, *adj.*
rapid, rap̄idus, a, um, *adj.*
rare, rārus, a, um, *adj.*
rashness, tem̄eritas, ātis, *f.*
rather, have, mālō, ūi, malle, p. 77.
read, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.
read aloud, rec̄ito, avi, ātum, 1.
read through, per̄lego, lēgi, lectum, 3.
ready, pirātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*
reason, ratiō, ōnis, *f.*

RECEIVE.

receive, accipio, cēpi, cep-
tum, 3. [ātis, *f.*]
recklessness, tēmēritas,
recover, recūpero, āvi,
ātum, 1.
refresh, recrēo, āvi, ātum, 1.
refuse, recūso, āvi, ātum, 1.
reign, regno, āvi, ātum, 1.
reject, aspernor, ātus, 1, *v.*
dep.
rejoice, gaudēo, gāvisus
sum, 2, p. 85.
relate, narro, āvi, ātum, 1.
remain, māneo, mansi,
mansum, 2.
remain over, supersum,
fui, esse, p. 31.
remember, reminiscor,
—, 3, *v. dep.*
remembered, to be, mē-
morābilis, *e, adj.*
render assistance, auxi-
lium fero, tūli, lātum, ferre,
3, *irr. v.* [adj.]
renowned, clārus, *a, um,*
repents, it, poenitet, p. 86.
resist, rēsisto, stiti, stitum,
3, with *dat.*
resolve, constitūo, ūi,
ātum, 3.
respect, to, observo, āvi,
ātum, 1.
rest, the, cētēri, trāe, ēra,
adj. pl. [2]
restrain, cōercō, ūi, Itum,
retire, cēdo, concēdo, cessi,
cessum, 3.
return, rēdeo, p. 83; rē-
verto, ti, sum; rēvertor, sus, 3,
v. dep.
reverence, to, vōnēror,
ātus, 1, *v. dep.*
reward, praeſum, *ti, m.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, *i, f.*
Rhodes, Rhōdus, *i, f.*
Rhone, Rhodānus, *i, m.*
rich, dives, itis, *adj.*
riches, divitiāe, ārum, *pl. f.*
ride, to, vēhor, vectus, 3,
v. dep.
right, rectus, *a, um, adj.*
rightly, prōbē, rectē, *adv.*
rise, to, ōrior, ortus, ōriri, 4.
river, flūvius, *i, m.*; flūmen,
inis, n.
robber, lātro, ōnis, *m.*
rock, rūpes, *is, f.*
Roman, Rōmānus, *a, um,*
Rome, Rōma, *ae, f.* [adj.]
root, radix, icis, *f.*
rose, rōsa, *ae, f.*
rough, rugged, asper, trā,
erum, *adj.* [acc.]
round, circum, *prep. with*

SERVICEABLE.

rule, régo, rexi, rectum, 3.
run, curro, cūcurri, cur-
sum, 3.
rush together, convōlo,
āvi, ātum, 1.

S

sacred, sācer, cra, crum, *adj.*
sacrifice, to, immōlo, āvi,
ātum, 1.
sad, tristis, *e, adj.*
safe, tūtus, *a, um, adj.*
safety, sālūs, ūtis, *f.*
sagacious, prūdēs, tis,
adj.
sailor, nauta, *ae, m.*
sake of, for the, grātīā,
causā, *ith *gen.*
Sallust, Sallustius, *ti, m.*
same, Idem, eādem, Idem,
adj. pron.
sanguinary, ātrox, ōcis,
adj.
save, servo, conseruo, āvi,
ātum, 1.
savour of, sāpio, ūi, 3.
say, dico, xi, ctum, 3.
scarcely, vix, *adv.*
scent, ōdor, ōris, *m.*
scholar, discipulus, *i, m.*
school, schōla, *ae, f.*
Scythian, Scythā, *ae, m.*
sea, mārē, *is, n.*
—, of the, mārīnus, *a,*
um, adj.
seat, sēdes, *is, f.*
second, sēcundus, *a, um;*
alter, a, um, adj.
secretly, clam, *adv.*
see, vidēo, vidi, visum, 2;
cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3.
see, go to, viso, visi, visum,
seeing, visus, ūs, *m.* [3]
seek, quaero, quaeivi,
quaesitum, 3.
seem, vidēor, visus, 2, *v. dep.*
seize, comprēhendo, di,
sum, 3; rāpio, ūi, tum, 3.
seize on, arripio, ripui, rep-
tum, 3.
seldom, rāro, *adv.*
senate, senātus, ūs, *m.*
send, mitte, misi, mis-
sum, 3. [etc.]
send on before, praemitto,
— together, committo,
sense, sensus, ūs, *m.* [etc.]
separate, sēpāro, āvi, ātum,
1; divido, visi, visum, 3.
servant, minister, tri, *m.*
serviceable, ūtilis, *e, adj.*
—, to be, prōsum, p. 31.

SOME ONE.

set out, prōficiscor, feo-
tus, 3, *v. dep.*
set (an example), praebeō,
ūi, Itum, 2.
severe, sēvērus, *a, um;*
grāvis, *e, adj.*
severely, grāvītēr, *adv.*
shake, quatō, quassum, 3.
shames, it, pūdet, p. 86.
share, to, partior, Itus, 4,
v. dep.
sharp, āctus, *a, um, adj.*
sharpen, āctō, ūi, ātum, 3.
shield, scūtum, *i, n.*
shine, fulgēo, si, sum, 2.
ship, nāvis, *is, f.*
shore, litus, ōris, *n.*
short, brēvis, *e, adj.*
shortly, mox, *adv.*
shout, clāmō, ōris, *m.* [1]
—, to, clāmo, āvi, ātum,
shut off, intercūdo, si,
Sicily, Siciliā, *ae, f.* [sum, 3]
sick, aeger, gra, grum, *adj.*
side with, adsum, p. 31.
side, on this, cis, citrā,
prep. with acc.
siege, obsēdō, ōnis, *f.*
sign, signum, *i, n.*
silence, silentium, *ti, n.*
silent, to be, taceō, ūi,
Itum, 2.
silver, argentum, *i, n.*
sing, canto, āvi, ātum, 1;
cāno, cēcni, cantum, 3.
sister, sōror, ōris, *f.*
sit, sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, 2.
skilful, skilled in, pēri-
tus, *a, um;* sōlers, rtis, *adj.*
skin (of animal), pellis, *is, f.*
slaughter, caedes, *is, f.*;
clādes, *is, f.*
slave, servus, *i, m.*
slavery, servitūs, ūtis, *f.*
slay, interficio, feci, fectum;
occido, cidi, cism, 3.
sleep (subs.), somnus, *i, m.*
—, to, dormio, Ivi and Iti,
Itum, 4.
slender, tēnūis, *e, adj.* [*f.*]
slowness, segnitiēs, ēi,
sluggish, segnīs, *e;* ignā-
vus, *a, um, adj.*
small, parvus, *a, um, adj.*
smell, ōdor, ōris, *m.*
snow, nix, nivis, *f.*
snows, it, ningit, p. 87.
so, itā, tam, *adv.*
soft, mollis, *e, adj.*
soften, mollo, Ivi, Itum, 4.
soldier, miles, Itis, *c.*
some, nonnullus, *a, um, adj.*
some one, some thing,
Alīquis, Alīquid, *indef. pron.*

SOMETIME.

sometime, quondam, *adv.*
sometimes, nonnunquam, *adv.*
son, filius, *ii, m.*; *voc. fili.*
son-in-law, gener, *eri, m.*
song, carmen, *inis, n.*; *can-*
tus, ūs, m.
soon, mox, *adv.* [*conj.*
soon as, simul, simulac,
sorrow, dolor, *oris, m.*
soul, animus, *i, m.*
sound, sonitus, *ūs, m.*
sovereignty, dominātus,
ūs, m.
sow, sēro, sēvi, sātum, *3.*
speak, loquor, locutus, *3.*
v. dep.
to, allōquor, ūtus, *3.*
speech, oratio, *ōnis, f.*
spend one's life, to, aetā-
tem agere.
spirited, ferox, *ōcis, adj.*
splendid, splendidus, *a,*
um, adj.
spring, vēr, vēris, *n.*
sprout, planta, *ae, f.*
spur, calcā, *aris, n.*
spy out, spēcūlor, ātus, *1.*
v. dep.
stag, cervus, *i, m.*
stand, sto, stēti, stātum, *1.*
star, stella, *ae, f.*
state, civitas, *ātis, f.*
station, statio, *ōnis, f.*
statue, imāgo, *inis, f.*
steep, ardūus, *a, um, adj.*
stern, atrox, *ōcis, adj.*
stone, lāpis, *idis, m.*
stone of, lapidēus, *a, um,*
adj.
storm, tempestas, *ātis, f.*
take by, expugno,
āvi, ātum, 1.
story, fābūla, *ae, f.*
straight, rectus, *a, um, adj.*
strength, vis, *f., p. 22.*
strengthen, firmo, *āvi,*
ātum, 1.
strive, nitor, nixus, *3, v. dep.*
hard, enitor, *3, v. dep.*
strong, vālidus, *a, um, adj.*
strong, make, firmo, *āvi,*
ātum, 1.
study, stūdiū, *ii, n.*
to, studeō, *ūi, —, 2.*
with dat.
successful, felix, *icis, adj.*
sudden, subitū, *a, um, adj.*
suddenly, subito, *adv.*
suffer, pātior, passus, *3, v.*
dep.
sufficiently, sātis, *adv.*
summer, aestas, *ātis, f.*
sun, sol, solis, *m.*

PR. L. 1.

TONGUE.

sup, coeno, *āvi, and coe-*
nātus sum, 1: see p. 85.
supplies, commeātūs, *ūm,*
m. pl.
surround, cingo, *xi, ctum, 3.*
survive, supersum, *p. 31.*
swear, jūro, *āvi, ātum, 1:*
see p. 85.
sweet, dulcis, suāvis, *e, adj.*
swell, intumesco, tūmū, *3.*
swift, celer, *ēris, ēre, adj.*
sword, glādius, *i, m.*
Syracuse, Syracūsae, *arum,*
f. pl.

T

table, mensa, *ae, f.*
take, capio, cēpi, captum, *3.*
by storm, expugno,
āvi, ātum, 1.
tall, celsus, *a, um, adj.* [1.
taste, to, gusto, *āvi, ātum,*
tax, vectigal, ālis, n.
teach, doceō, *ūi, ctum, 2.*
teacher, māgister, *tri, m.*
tell, dico, *xi, ctum, 3.*
tempest, tempestas, *ātis, f.*
temple, templum, *i, n.*
tender, tēder, *a, um, adj.*
tent, tābernāculum, *i, n.*
terrify, terrēo, *ūi, ctum, 2.*
territories, fines, *iūm, m.*
terror, terror, *ōris, m.*
that (pron.), istē, illē, *is,*
pp. 34, 35.
that (conj.), ūt, *p. 97.*
not, nē, quin, *p. 97.*
their own, *gen. pl. of is, ēa,*
Id; when referring to subject,
sūs, a, um, poss. pron.
then, tum, *adv.*
then indeed, tum dēnum.
there, ibi, *adv.*
thin, tēnuis, *e, adj.*
thing, rēs, *ei, f.*
think, pūto, cōgīto, *āvi,*
ātum, 1.
thither, ēd, *adv.*
through, pēr, *prep. with acc.*
throw, jacio, jēci, jactum,
conjicio, jēci, jectum, 3.
throw a bridge over a
river, flūmen ponte jungo,
juxi, nectum, 3. [n.
thunderbolt, fulmen, *inis,*
thunders, it, tōnāt, *p. 87.*
thus, itā, *adv.*
tiger, tigris, *is and idis, c.*
time, tempus, *ōris, n.*
timid, timidus, *a, um, adj.*
to, ad, *prep. with acc.*
too, too much, nimis, *adv.*
tongue, lingua, *ae, f.*

UPRIGHT.

torture, cruciātus, *ūs, m.*
towards, versus, adversus,
prep. with acc.
tower, turris, *is, f.*
town, oppidum, *i, n.* [4.
train up, erūdīo, *ivi, itum,*
trained, erūdītus, *a, um,*
part. and adj.
tree, arbor, *ōris, f.*
triumph, triumpho, *āvi,*
ātum, 1.
trouble, to, mōvēo, mōvi,
mōtum, 2.
trouble (subs.), aerumna,
ae, f.
troublesome, molestus, *a,*
um, adj.
Tro, Trōja, *ae, f.*
true, vērus, *a, um, adj.*
trust, fido, fisis sum, *p. 85.*
try, expōr, rtus, *4, v. dep.*
turn back, rēvorto, *ti, sum,*
and tor, sus, 3, v. dep.
tyrant, tyrannus, *i, m.*

U

unable, to be, nēquō,
ivi and ii, itum, 4.
unbecoming, it is, dēac-
cēt, p. 86.
unbounded, infinitus, *a,*
um, adj.
unbreakfasted, impran-
sus, a, um, adj.
uncertain, incertus, *a, um,*
adj.
under, sub, subtēr, *prep.*
with acc. and abl.
undergo, subēo, *ivi and ii,*
itum, 4.
understand, intelligo, *lexi,*
lectum, 3.
undertake, suscipio, cēpi,
ceptum, 3.
undone, infectus, *a, um,*
adj.
unfriendly, inimicus, *a,*
um, adj.
unjust, injustus, *a, um, adj.*
unjustly, injuste, *adv.*
unlearned, indoctus, *a,*
um, adj.
unless, nisi, *conj.*
unlike, dissimilis, *e, adj.*
unskilful, impēritus, *a,*
um, adj. [77.
unwilling, to be, nōle, *p.*
upper, supērior, ius, adj.
comp.
upright, prōbus, *a, um,*
adj.

P

CSE.

nse, to, ūtor, ūsus, 3, v.
dep., with *abl.*
 useful, ūtilis, e, *adj.*
 utmost, summus, a, um,
sup. adj.

V

valley, vallis, is, *f.*
 va. our, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
 various, varius, a, um, *adj.*
 vehemently, vchēmentēr,
adv.
 verse, versus, ūs, *m.*
 vex, vexo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 vexes, it, piget, p. 86. [*f.*
 victim, hostia, victima, ac,
 victory, victōria, ae, *f.*
 vigorous, strenuus, a, um,
adj.
 vigorously, strēnuē, *adv.*
 virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
 visit, to, viso, ei, sum, 3.
 voice, vox, vocis, *f.*
 vulture, vultūr, ūris, *m.*

W

wage (war), to, gēro, gessi,
 gestum, 3.
 wake (*intrans.*), vigillo, āvi,
 ātum, 1.
 walk, take a walk, am-
 būlo, āvi, ātum, 1.
 wall, mūrus, i, *m.* [p. 31.
 wanting, to be, desum,
 war, bellum, i, *n.* [*adj.*
 warlike, bellicōsus, a, um,
 warm, cālidus, a, um, *adj.*
 warn, mōnēo, ūi, itum, 2.
 waste, to lay, vasto, āvi,
 ātum, 1. [1.
 watch, to, vīgilo, āvi, ātum,
 water, aqua, ae, *f.*
 —, to fetch, āquor, ātus,
 1, v. *dep.*
 way, in that, tā, *adv.*
 —, to be in the, obsum,
 p. 31. [*f.*
 weakness, infirmitas, ātis,

WINTER.

wealthy, ōpulentus, a, um,
 weapon, tēlum, i, *n.* [*adj.*
 wearies, it, taedet, p. 86.
 weep, fleo, ēvi, ētum, 2.
 well, bēnē, *adv.* [2.
 —, to be, valēo, ūi, itum,
 wellwishing, bēnēvolus,
 a, um, *adj.*
 west, occidens, entis, *m.*
 whale, bālæna, ae, *f.*
 what, quis, quæ, quid and
 quod, *interrog.* and *indef.*
pron.
 what sort, of, quālis, e,
rel. adj.
 when, quando, *interr. adv.*;
 quum, *adv.* and *conj.*
 whether, utrum, *conj.*
 which of two, ūter, tra,
 trum, *adj. pron.*
 while, dum, *adv.*
 whilst drinking, inter
 bibendum.
 white, albus, a, um, *adj.*
 whitner, quō, *rel. adv.*
 who, qui, quæ, quod, *rel.*
pron.; quis, quæ, quid or quōd,
inter. pron.
 whole, tōtus, a, um, *adj.*
 why, cūr, quārē, *adv.*
 wicked, imprōbus, a, um;
 nēquam, *indec. adj.*
 wickedness, scelus, ēris *n.*
 wide, lātus, a, um, *adj.*
 widely, lātē, *adv.*
 wife, uxor, ōris, *f.*; mūliēr,
 ēris, *f.*
 wilful, perversus, a, um,
adj.
 willing, to be, vōlo, p. 77.
 —, to be more, mālo,
 p. 77.
 win, ādīpiscor, adeptus, 3,
 v. *dep.*; pāro, āvi, ātum, 1.
 win upon, blandior, itus, 4,
 wind, ventus, i, *m.* [v. *dep.*
 wine, vinum, i, *n.*
 wing, āla, ae, *f.*
 winter, hiems, ēmis, *f.*
 —, of, hibernus, a, um,
adj.

ZEALOUS.

winter, to, hiemo, āvi,
 ātum, 1.
 winter quarters, hiberna
 ōrum, *n. pl.*
 wisdom, sāpientia, ae, *f.*
 wise, sāpiens, entis, *adj.*
 wish, voluntās, ātis, *f.*
 wish, to, opto, āvi, ātum,
 1; vōlo, p. 77.
 within, intrā, *prep.* with
acc.
 woman, fēmina, ae, *f.*;
 mūlier, ēris, *f.* [*v. dep.*
 wonder at, miror, ātus, 1,
 wonderful, mirus, mirā-
 bilis, e, *adj.*
 wood, silva, ae, *f.*
 work, ōpus, ēris, *n.*
 world, mundus, i, *m.*
 worship, to, vērōr, ātus,
 1, v. *dep.*
 wound, vulnus, ēris, *n.*
 —, to, vulnēro, āvi,
 ātum, 1.
 wretched, misēr, ērā, ē-
 rum, *adj.*
 write, to, scribo, scripsi,
 scriptum, 3.
 writer, scriptor, ōris, *m.*

Y

year, annus, i, *m.*
 yesterday, hērī, *adv.*
 yield, cedo, cessi, cessum, 3.
 your, tūus, a, um; vester,
 tra, trum, *poss. pron.*
 youth, jāventūs, tūtis, *f.*
 — (a young man or
 woman), jāvenis, is, *c.*

Z

zeal, stūdiūm, ūi, *n.*
 zealous, stūdiōsus, a, um,
adj.
 zealous, to be, stūdeō, ūi,
 2, with *dat.*



AUG 26 1931

